

**DRAFT SCOPING REPORT**  
**FOR**  
**THE PROPOSED RIVER VIEW SOLAR PLANT**

**Location**

Remaining Extent Portion 3 of the Farm Riet Puts 15-Kimberly Rd, Magareng Local Municipality, Northern Cape Province

**Department of Environment, Nature and Conservation (Northern Cape)**

**Applicant: Ikomkhulu Solar (Pty) Ltd**

**Prepared by**



**Tholoana Environmental Consulting CC**

Physical Address:

Unit 9, Building 1b.  
Northgate Office Park  
Aureole Ave, Northworld  
Johannesburg  
2162

**Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP) Contact Person Details**

Mr Vusmuzi Hlatshwayo

Tel: +27 11 704 5071

Cell: 078 6390 199

Fax: +27 11 704 5130

Email: [vusi@tholoanaconsulting.co.za](mailto:vusi@tholoanaconsulting.co.za)

URL: [www.tholoanaconsulting.co.za](http://www.tholoanaconsulting.co.za)

**COPYRIGHT WARNING**

Copyright in all text and other matter, including the manner of presentation, is the exclusive property of the author. It is a criminal offence to reproduce and/or use, without written consent, any matter, technical procedure and/or technique contained in this document. Criminal and civil proceedings will be taken as a matter of strict routine against any person and/or institution infringing the copyright of the author and/or proprietors.

## DOCUMENT CONTROL

<b>Report Title</b>	<b>Proposed River View Solar Plant</b>
<b>Report Current Version</b>	Scoping Report (Environmental Impact Assessment) (January 2023)
<b>Report Author /EAP</b>	Simon Vusmuzi Hlatshwayo
<b>Firm</b>	Tholoana Environmental Consulting CC

DRAFT

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

---

The proposed River View Solar Plant entails the construction of a Solar Plant on the Remaining Extent of Portion 3 of the Farm Riet Puts 15, Kimberly Rd. The activities for the proposed development are as follows:

- Installation of Solar Photovoltaic Panels (PV), with associated infrastructure i.e. the operations and maintenance centre that consists of a transformer, a smart cloud centre (energy control system) and dc energy storage system (batteries). The operation of the solar PV plant is a process where radiation from the sun is harnessed by the solar panels, from which, through an array of converters, the energy goes to the storage system (batteries), then converted to alternating current for distribution to the transformer (sub-station), then to the grid line (Eskom Pylon).

The additional activities associated with the solar plant includes bulk services i.e. water use, sewage and electricity. Note: the plant will be self sustainable in terms of electricity supply. In consideration of the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA) No.107 of 1998, as amended, Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations 2014, as amended, the National Water Act No.36 of 1998, the proposed development requires both an Environmental Authorisation and Water Use Licence before the activities as proposed can be implemented within the study area.

## EAP EXPERTISE

---

Tholoana Environmental Consulting CC (herein referred to as Tholoana Environmental Consulting-TEC) is appointed by Ikomkhulu Solar (Pty) Ltd, to carry out the Environmental Authorisation (EA) application process for the proposed River View Solar Plant on the Remaining Extent of Portion 3 of the Farm Riet Puts 15, Kimberly Rd.

The appointment is as per the EIA regulations 2014 (as amended), Regulation 12(1), as a result Tholoana Environmental Consulting acts as an independent environmental consulting firm in accordance with Regulation 13(1).

**Declaration:** TEC has no vested interest in the proposed development other than the activities for appointment, which are project management and undertake the Environmental Authorisation application process in accordance with the EIA regulations 2014 (as amended).

Tholoana Environmental Consulting brings together a team of dedicated professionals scientists, environmental managers and practitioners who have many years of combined experience in environmental services, which includes Environmental Management (Environmental Impact Assessment) and Waste Management (including authorisation processes). In addition to the services above, other related project experience in relation to the proposed development includes waste to energy (waste tyre-pyrolysis to petroleum). We provide comprehensive

Integrated Environmental Management Services to a broad range of clients throughout the African continent and other international countries.

Details of the EAP managing the waste management license application for the proposed development are as below:

**Mr. Vusmuzi Hlatshwayo:** has a National Diploma in Environmental Sciences obtained from Tshwane University of Technology in Pretoria. He is also a full member of the International Association for Impact Assessment (South Africa), Environmental Assessment Practitioners Association South Africa (membership no: 2020/350) and an Environmental Assessment Practitioner within Tholoana Environmental Consulting.

In addition to the above as an EAP, he has been involved in the following projects:

➤ **Environmental Impact Assessment :**

- Madiba Heights (Mixed Land Use Development), Msibi Bio-Plant (waste management application, and a Basic Assessment Report), Ridge Road Upgrade, Barry Marais Road Upgrade, Nokuthula Special School.

➤ **Environmental Management Programmes**

- Refilwe Hostel Development and Tarlton Road upgrade (Environmental Management Programme Report). Section 102 mining application.

➤ **Water Use License application**

- Pam Brink feeder line (General Authorisation)
- Ridge Road and Barry Marais Road upgrades.
- Mahumas Farms : Eight Chicken Broiler houses

For a more detailed project experience refer to the attached curriculum vitae attached as Appendix C.



## CONTACT DETAILS

---

### EAP DETAILS

<b>Project applicant:</b>	Tholoana Environmental Consulting CC		
<b>Registration no (if any):</b>	2006/186236/23		
<b>Trading name (if any):</b>	Tholoana Environmental Consulting		
<b>Responsible position, e.g. Director, CEO, etc.:</b>	Director		
<b>Contact person:</b>	Mr Vusmuzi Hlatshwayo		
<b>Postal address:</b>	PO Box 1549, Honeydew		
<b>Postal code:</b>	2040	<b>Cell:</b>	078 6390 199

### APPLICANT DETAILS

<b>Project applicant:</b>	Ikomkhulu Solar (Pty) Ltd		
<b>Registration no (if any):</b>	2016/410749/07		
<b>Trading name (if any):</b>	N/A		
<b>Responsible position, e.g. Director, CEO, etc.:</b>	Director		
<b>Contact person:</b>	Ms Zodwa J Visser		
<b>Physical address:</b>	2020 Lang Street, Kimberley		
<b>Postal address:</b>	2020 Lang Street, Kimberley		
<b>Postal code:</b>	8301	<b>Cell:</b>	076 101 6655

## OUTLINE OF THE SCOPING REPORT

The scoping report structure is in accordance with the NEMA No.107 of 1998 (as amended), EIA regulations 2014 (as amended), Appendix 2 and is as follows:

Requirements	Page reference
<b>Content of Scoping Report</b>	
A scoping report must contain the information that is necessary for a proper understanding of the process, informing all preferred alternatives, including location alternatives, the scope of the assessment, and the consultation process to be undertaken through the environmental impact assessment process, and must include— details of—	lii iv
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ the EAP who prepared the report; and</li> </ul>	
the expertise of the EAP, including a curriculum vitae;	Appendix C
the location of the activity, including— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ the 21 digit Surveyor General code of each cadastral land parcel;</li> <li>○ where available, the physical address and farm name;</li> <li>○ where the required information in items (i) and (ii) is not available, the coordinates of the boundary of the property or properties;</li> </ul>	5
a plan which locates the proposed activity or activities applied for at an appropriate scale, or, if it is— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ a linear activity, a description and coordinates of the corridor in which the proposed activity or activities is to be undertaken; or</li> <li>○ on land where the property has not been defined, the coordinates within which the activity is to be undertaken;</li> </ul>	Appendix B
a description of the scope of the proposed activity, including— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ all listed and specified activities triggered</li> </ul>	7-13
a description of the activities to be undertaken, including associated structures and infrastructure	1-4
a description of the policy and legislative context within which the development is proposed including an identification of all legislation, policies, plans, guidelines, spatial tools, municipal development planning frameworks and instruments that are applicable to this activity and are to be considered in the assessment process;	7

Requirements	Page reference
a motivation for the need and desirability for the proposed development including the need and desirability of the activity in the context of the preferred location;	6
a full description of the process followed to reach the proposed preferred activity, site and location of the development footprint within the site, including— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ details of all the alternatives considered;</li> </ul>	17-21
details of the public participation process undertaken in terms of regulation 41 of the Regulations, including copies of the supporting documents and inputs;	68-70
a summary of the issues raised by interested and affected parties, and an indication of the manner in which the issues were incorporated, or the reasons for not including them;	68-70
the environmental attributes associated with the alternatives focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects;	22-31
the impacts and risks which have informed the identification of each alternative, including the nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration and probability of such identified impacts, including the degree to which these impacts— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(aa).can be reversed;</li> <li>(bb) may cause irreplaceable loss of resources; and</li> <li>(cc) can be avoided, managed or mitigated;</li> </ul>	37-68
the methodology used in identifying and ranking the nature, significance, consequences, extent, duration and probability of potential environmental impacts and risks associated with the alternatives;	37
positive and negative impacts that the proposed activity and alternatives will have on the environment and on the community that may be affected focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects;	37-68
the possible mitigation measures that could be applied and level of residual risk;	37-68
the outcome of the site selection matrix;	37-68
if no alternatives, including alternative locations for the activity were investigated, the motivation for not considering such; and	17-21
a concluding statement indicating the preferred alternatives, including preferred location of the activity;	16-17

Requirements	Page reference
a plan of study for undertaking the environmental impact assessment process to be undertaken, including	70
—a description of the alternatives to be considered and assessed within the preferred site, including the option of not proceeding with the activity;	17-21
a description of the aspects to be assessed as part of the environmental impact assessment process;	70
aspects to be assessed by specialists;	72
a description of the proposed method of assessing the environmental aspects, including aspects to be assessed by specialists;	70-71
a description of the proposed method of assessing duration and significance;	33
an indication of the stages at which the competent authority (CA) will be consulted;	21
particulars of the public participation process that will be conducted during the environmental impact assessment process; and	71-72
a description of the tasks that will be undertaken as part of the environmental impact assessment process;	70
identify suitable measures to avoid, reverse, mitigate or manage identified impacts and to determine the extent of the residual risks that need to be managed and monitored.	37-68
<p>an undertaking under oath or affirmation by the EAP in relation to—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ the correctness of the information provided in the report;</li> <li>○ the inclusion of comments and inputs from stakeholders and interested and affected parties; and</li> <li>○ any information provided by the EAP to interested and affected parties and any responses by the EAP to comments or inputs made by interested or affected parties;</li> </ul>	Appendix D
an undertaking under oath or affirmation by the EAP in relation to the level of agreement between the EAP and interested and affected parties on the plan of study for undertaking the environmental impact assessment;	N/A
where applicable, any specific information required by the competent authority; and any other matter required in terms of section 24(4)(a) and (b) of the Act	N/A

## GLOSSARY OF TERMS

Term	Definition
<b>Alternatives</b>	The different means of meeting the general purpose and requirements of the activity, which may include alternatives to property, activity, design or technology.
<b>Applicant</b>	The person, company, organization or institution (including juristic person) who has submitted or intends to submit an application for authorisation.
<b>Cumulative impact</b>	The impact resulting from an activity that in itself may not be significant but may become significant when added to the existing and potential impacts eventuating from similar or diverse activities or undertakings in the area.
<b>Environmental Impact Assessment</b>	In relation to an application to which scoping must be applied, means the process of collecting, organizing, analyzing, interpreting and communicating environmental information that is relevant for consideration of that application. An Environmental Impact Assessment is most often used within an Integrated Environmental Management (IEM) planning process, as a decision support tool for new developments pursuant Environmental Authorisation or Waste Management license.
<b>Environmental management plan</b>	An environmental management plan, acts as a monitoring tool for determined environmental impacts and it further provides actions and measures to be implemented to either avoid, minimize adverse environmental impacts that may arise from implementing project specific activities.
<b>Guidelines</b>	Refers to a set of documents series emanating from policies, regulations and acts, which provides a narrative or simplified interpretation of the laws.
<b>Hazardous waste</b>	Any waste that contains organic or inorganic elements or compounds that may, owing to the inherent physical, chemical or toxicological of that waste, have a detrimental impact on health and the environment.
<b>Interested and/or Affected Party</b>	An interested and/or affected party contemplated in section 24(4) (d) of the Act, and which in terms of that section includes - a) any person, group of persons or organization interested in or affected by an activity; and

Term	Definition
	b) any organ of state that may have jurisdiction over any aspect of the activity;
<b>Public Participation Process</b>	A process in which potential interested and/or affected parties as defined above are given an opportunity to comment on, or raise issues relevant to, specific matters;
<b>Registered Interested and Affected Party</b>	In relation to an application, means an interested and affected party whose name is recorded in the register opened for that application in terms of regulation 57.
<b>Significant impact</b>	An impact that by its magnitude, duration, intensity or probability of occurrence may have a notable effect on one or more aspects of the environment;
<b>Stakeholder</b>	to a group of the public whose interests may be positively or negatively affected by a proposal or activity and/or who are concerned with a proposal or activity and its consequences. The term therefore includes the proponent, authorities and all I&APs.
<b>The Act</b>	In this context refers to the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998, as amended).
<b>Authority</b>	Refers to the national, provincial or local spheres of government that have a decision-making role or interest in the project proposal or activity. The term includes the lead authority, as well as other authorities.
<b>Waste treatment facility</b>	Any site that is used to accumulate waste for the purpose of storage, recovery, treatment, reprocessing, recycling or sorting of that waste.
<b>Recycle</b>	Means processing of used materials into new products, so as to, reduce the consumption of fresh raw materials, reduce energy usage, and reduce air pollution (from incineration). The process involves the collection of used materials i.e. plastics, which are then taken to a recycling facility for further sorting and bailing where required to the tertiary industry where the waste if further processed for use by the end user.
<b>Landfill</b>	Landfill refers to the process wherein waste as collected by either the responsible organ of state (municipality) is buried as part of disposal.

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

Abbreviation	Expansion
AIA	Archaeological Impact Assessment
BAR	Basic Assessment Report
CLO	Community Liaison Officer
C-PLAN	Conservation Plan
CBA	Critical Biodiversity Area
DENC	Department of Environment and Nature Conservation
DFFE	Department of Forestry, Fisheries and Environment
DWS	Department of Water Sanitation
EAP	Environmental Assessment Practitioner
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
ESA	Ecological Support Areas
EMF	Environmental Management Framework
EMPr	Environmental Management Programme as per the EIA Regulations, 2014
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
I&AP	Interested and Affected Party
NFEPA	National Freshwater Priority Area
NCPHA	Northern Cape Provincial Heritage Agency
GHG	Greenhouse Gas
Ha	Hectare
HGM	Hydro-geomorphic
kWh	kilowatt hours
NWA	National Water Act 36 of 1998
PIA	Palaeontological Impact Assessment
PPP	Public Participation Process
PV	Photovoltaic
Rd	Road
SAHRA	South African Heritage Agency
SUDS	Sustainable Urban Drainage Systems
TEC	Tholoana Environmental Consulting CC

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

DOCUMENT CONTROL.....	i
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY .....	ii
EAP EXPERTISE.....	ii
CONTACT DETAILS.....	iv
EAP DETAILS .....	iv
APPLICANT DETAILS .....	iv
OUTLINE OF THE SCOPING REPORT .....	v
GLOSSARY OF TERMS.....	viii
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS .....	x
TABLE OF CONTENTS.....	xi
APPENDIXES .....	xiv
1. INTRODUCTION .....	1
1.1 Site Location.....	5
1.2 Need and Desirability of Development.....	6
1.2.1 Employment opportunities .....	6
2. LEGAL AND OTHER REQUIREMENTS .....	7
2.1 TRIGGERED LISTED ACTIVITIES IN TERMS OF THE EIA REGULATIONS 2014 (AS AMENDED) .....	12
2.2 TRIGGERED LISTED ACTIVITIES IN TERMS OF THE NWA 36 OF 1998.....	13
3. PURPOSE OF DRAFT SCOPING REPORT.....	14
4. PROPOSED SCOPE OF WORK .....	15
4.1 Project schedule.....	15
4.2 Preferred alternative (Solar Plant Operations).....	16
4.3 Existing Solar Plants .....	17
4.4 Description of Alternatives .....	17
4.4.1. Alternative site on property or properties.....	18
4.4.2. Alternative activity .....	18
4.4.3. Alternative site.....	18
4.4.4. Design alternative .....	19
4.4.5. Alternative technology.....	20
4.4.6. Alternative operational aspects of activity .....	21
5. DESCRIPTION OF THE RECEIVING ENVIRONMENT.....	22
5.1. Geology, Topography and Soil .....	22
5.2. Climate .....	23
5.3. Surface and Ground Water .....	25
5.4. Ecological Characteristics.....	26
5.4.1. Fauna.....	27
5.4.2. Flora .....	27
5.5. Cultural & Heritage Resources .....	28
5.6. Zoning.....	28
5.7. Surrounding Land Uses .....	29
5.8. Agricultural Potential .....	29
5.9. Socio-Economic Environment .....	30
5.9.1. Demographics .....	30
5.9.2. Economic.....	31
5.9.3. Education .....	31
6. SCOPING ASSESSMENT OF IMPACTS .....	32
6.1. Impact Assessment methodology and Alternatives .....	33
6.2. Method of assessment for alternatives .....	35



6.3. Risk Assessment Criteria .....	35
7. DESCRIPTION/ASSESSMENT OF POTENTIAL IMPACTS.....	37
7.1. POTENTIAL IMPACTS.....	37
7.2. Cumulative Impacts .....	68
8. PUBLIC PARTICIPATION.....	68
8.1. Objectives.....	68
8.2. Stakeholder and Public Engagement.....	69
8.3. Comments Received on BID.....	70
8.4. Summary of Key Issues received on Scoping Report .....	70
9. PROPOSED PLAN OF STUDY FOR EIA .....	70
9.1. Method of assessing environmental aspects.....	70
9.2. Consultation with the Competent Authority .....	71
9.3. Proposed Public Participation for Scoping/EIA phase.....	72
9.4. Proposed EIA specialist studies.....	73
9.4.1. Detail on specialist studies.....	73
10. CONCLUSION.....	75
REFERENCES .....	76
SECTION F: APPENDIXES .....	77

**LIST OF FIGURES****Page**

Figure 1 : Site Layout River View.....	1
Figure 2 : Typical Solar Plant .....	2
Figure 3 : Operations and Maintenance centre.....	3
Figure 4 : Example of a fixed tilt mountings.....	3
Figure 5 : Access to site.....	5
Figure 6: Waste Management Hierarchy .....	8
Figure 7 : Single Axis tracking System (the preferred option is the single axis tracking on a horizontal axis. .....	19
Figure 8 : mono-crystalline panels.....	19
Figure 9 : Hydro power schematic .....	20
Figure 10 : Wind energy schematic.....	21
Figure 11 : Site area .....	22
Figure 12 : Elevation of the site .....	23
Figure 13 : Kimberly: Temperature data.....	24
Figure 14 : Rainfall data .....	24
Figure 15 : Catchment regions explained .....	25
Figure 16 : Water Cycle: source <a href="https://gpm.nasa.gov/education/articles/nasa-earth-science-water-cycle">https://gpm.nasa.gov/education/articles/nasa-earth-science-water-cycle</a> .....	25
Figure 17 : Map showing CBA1 and ESA: source Ecological Assessment by Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd.....	26
Figure 18 : Heritage Buffer Area .....	28
Figure 19 : Population distribution Ward 5 (Magareng Local Municipality): source - <a href="https://wazimap.co.za/profiles/ward-30903005-magareng-ward-5-30903005/#demographics">https://wazimap.co.za/profiles/ward-30903005-magareng-ward-5-30903005/#demographics</a> .....	30
Figure 20 : Employment stats: source <a href="https://wazimap.co.za/profiles/ward-30903005-magareng-ward-5-30903005/#economics">https://wazimap.co.za/profiles/ward-30903005-magareng-ward-5-30903005/#economics</a> , accessed: 11/01/2023 .....	31
Figure 21 : Educational level .....	32

**LIST OF TABLES**

**Page**

Table 1: Legal Framework ..... 7

Table 2: Trigger EIA Listed Activities..... 12

Table 3: Triggered NWA Listed Activities..... 13

Table 4: – Timeframes..... 15

Table 5: - The significance ratings: ..... 33

Table 6: Nature of the Impact – ..... 33

Table 7 : Extent of the Impact (E) – ..... 33

Table 8 : Duration of the Impact (D) ..... 34

Table 9 :Probability (P) ..... 34

Table 10 :Severity/Magnitude (M)..... 34

Table 11: Risk matrix..... 36

Table 12: Planning and Design phase..... 37

Table 13: Construction phase..... 39

Table 14: Post-Construction phase..... 62

Table 15: Operational Phase..... 64

DRAFT

## APPENDIXES

---

- APPENDIX A - DETEA REFERENCE LETTER
- APPENDIX B - LOCALITY MAP
- APPENDIX C - EAP CURRICULUM VITAE
- APPENDIX D - EAP DECLARATION
- APPENDIX E - FACILITY ILLUSTRATIONS
- APPENDIX F - SITE PHOTOGRAPHS
- APPENDIX G - DRAFT EMP<sub>r</sub>
- APPENDIX H - SPECIALIST STUDIES**
  - DESKTOP HERITAGE IMPACT STUDY
  - ECOLOGICAL ASSESSMENT
  - WETLAND IMPACT ASSESSMENT

DRAFT

# 1. INTRODUCTION

The proposed River View Solar Plant project entails the construction of Solar Photovoltaic (PV) power plant to feed into the National Grid (Eskom), at the Remaining Extent of Portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15 Kimberly Rd, where the size of the property is approximately 300 Ha, however the footprint for the plant is approximately 182Ha (Section A-107Ha and Section B-75Ha, refer to figure 1 below). The site area falls within ward 4, Magareng Local Municipality, Frances Baard District Municipality in the Northern Cape Province, country South Africa. Refer to Figure 1, below.



Figure 1 : Site Layout River View

The anticipated construction period for the proposed activities is approximately 10 months, whereas in terms of operation the anticipated energy output is approximately 90.5 million kilowatt hours per year over a 20year period. The energy is capable of supplying 16 500 households. Once the project is complete, it is anticipated that the energy from the plant will be supplied to another stakeholder (ESKOM), which will then undertake its own distribution to its clients.

**SOLAR PLANT SETUP:** the solar plant operational activities are outlined below:-

- Solar PV panels receive radiation energy from the sun, from which the Direct Current (DC) energy goes through a combiner box, which combines the outputs of the different strings of PV modules to the inverter. Batteries are used for the storage of energy before the conversion takes place using the inverter to Alternating Current (AC).
  - As part of the process, once the conversion to AC is done, through the operations, equipment and maintenance centre (OEMC), the next phase includes control of the energy for transfer to the transformer station facility, from which the distribution goes to the Eskom (Pylon) for external distribution to its own clients. Refer to figure 2, below.

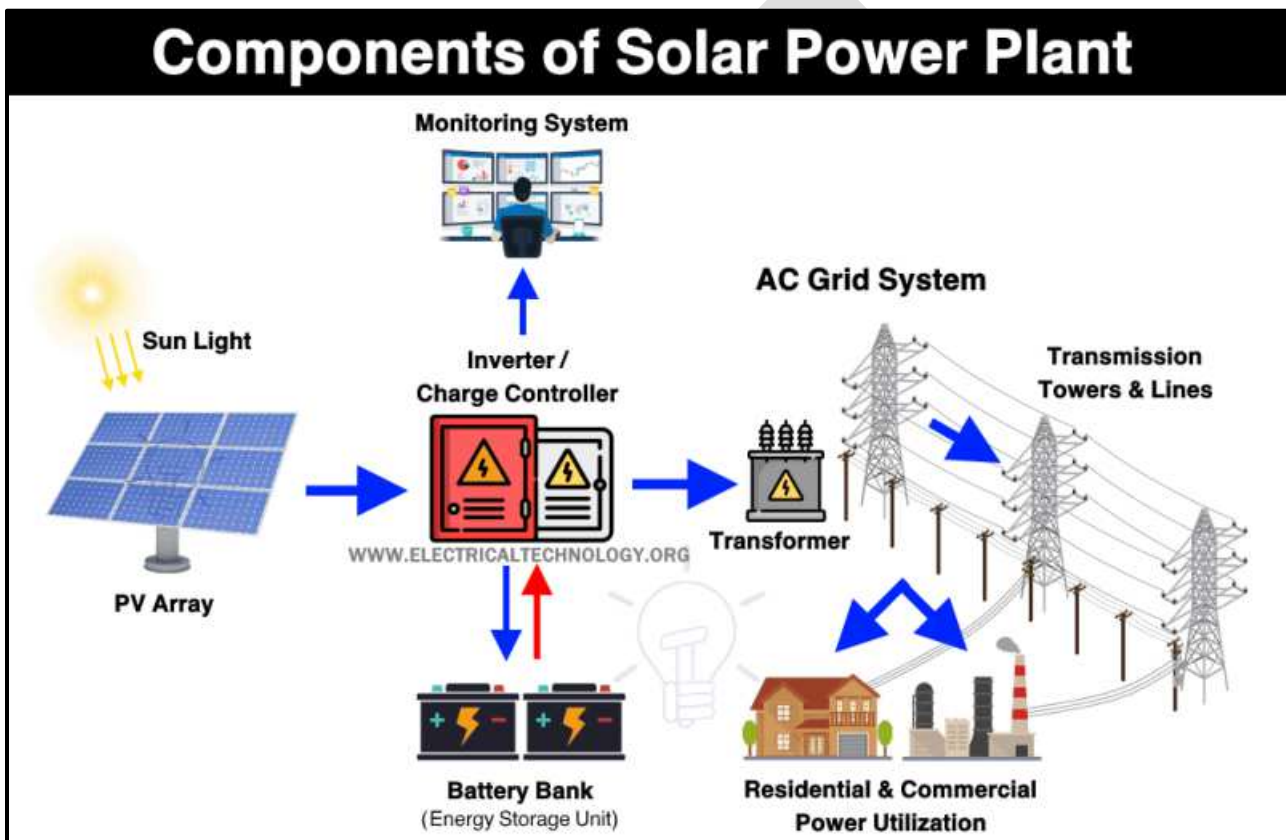


Figure 2 : Typical Solar Plant

**BUILDING DESIGN FEATURE:** Other key features for the solar plant, includes but not limited to Materials and equipment storage areas, security areas (access control). Refer to Figure 3 below.



Figure 3 : Operations and Maintenance centre

The proposed design for the OEMC includes the use of various materials i.e. glass, in other sections brick and mortar where applicable, this not excluding retrofitting, with an eco-friendly type of roofing.

### INSTALLATION PARAMETERS

- **Mounting:** The proposed system for mounting the solar panels is the fixed tilt systems, which are rack mounted at 30° degrees for capturing the energy from the sun. As compared to the single axis tracking systems the fixed tilt mountings has the following advantages and disadvantages, although best suited for the proposed development on the basis of the energy from the sun (Location setting):
  - Less weight and cost.
  - The only disadvantage is the less energy production.

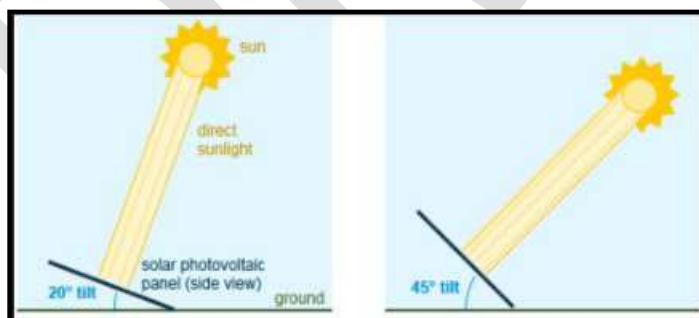


Figure 4 : Example of a fixed tilt mountings

- **PV Panels:** There are generally two types of panel system in the market, which are mono-crystalline and polycrystalline solar panels. The difference between the two panels is mainly the materials i.e. the silicon ratio. Other than the silicon ratio, other factors includes but not limited to availability on the market, maintenance costs and the amount of energy the panel can produce. The polycrystalline panels are the preferred option for the proposed development, as they would supplement the type of

mounting proposed in order to get more energy output, additionally the panels require less maintenance and do not degrade easily.

#### **OTHER SPECIFICATIONS:**

- The surface area for the panels is approximately 1.752m<sup>2</sup>, with an estimated energy output of 250W (each).
- A total number of 628 320 panels is proposed on the land for the proposed development, wherein the total land for consideration is approximately 300Ha, this will accommodate the associated infrastructure i.e. inverter, the smart tanks (acting as reservoirs), the existing substation and control room.
- The given recommendation as per the feasibility study area for land allocation within the 300Ha is an allocation of 2Ha per MW.

#### **ASSOCIATED INFRASTRUCTURE/SERVICES:**

The following infrastructure/services will be required for the proposed development:

- **Water supply:** a borehole will be used as the main source for water supply for drinking, other domestic use, this can be supplemented by the additional rain water harvesting measures to be integrated with the water use system. The number of employment opportunities to be created during the construction phase is approximately 125, wherein an average water usage level for one person is approximately 50litres (according to the World Health Organisation), thus with an estimated construction phase (10 months), the required water for human use is (50 x 125= 6 250 litres/day), then ( 6 250 litres x 300 days= 1 875 000 litres), this amounts to approximately 1 875.00 m<sup>3</sup> for 10 months can be allocated for the construction phase, this excluding water for i.e. dust suppression and cement mixing, inclusive of other construction related activities the total water requirements to be allocated for this phase can be approximately 2 906.25 m<sup>3</sup> for 10 months.
- The operational phase water usage will be for the staff, ablution facilities, irrigation of landscaped areas, and maintenance of the solar panels and this can be estimated to approximately 7 520.80m<sup>3</sup> for a 20 year period. The proposed methods for storage of portable water is the 250 000 litres smart tanks can be considered as an option, and installation of grey water systems is recommended for use on irrigation activities.
- **Electricity:** The electricity required for the operations of the proposed development will be supplied internally from the generated solar energy.
- **Roads:** Internal roads will form part of the development, specifications on the type of roads will be determined, it is however a recommendation that the roads should be paved.



**N:B** - There are no sewer services on site, as such septic tank systems can be used as this would only be for the employees, visitors to the site, including normal household sewage. Technologies such as Bio-rock septic systems may be used for the sewage systems, however more research on the type of technologies should be explored.

## 1.1 Site Location

The proposed land for the proposed development is at the Remaining Extent of Portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15 Kimberly Rd. The footprint for the development is approximately 300Ha in size. The site falls under the Magareng Local Municipality, the District municipality being Frances Baard, within the Northern Cape Province. The centre point GPS coordinates for the land are as follows 28°20'2.19"S; 24°44'55.36"E. The surveyor general 21 digit code for the property is as follows: C0370000000001500003. Refer to figure 5, below:



**Figure 5 : Access to site**

The site can be accessed via N12, turning right into R374 from Warrenton or left from Kimberly (coordinates - 28°20'2.19"S; 24°44'55.36"E), approximately 7Km towards Windsorton, the site will be on right (landmarks-Eskom Sub-station and the Boskop Ridge).



## **1.2 Need and Desirability of Development**

Energy supply in South Africa has been a common challenge as a result of the following:-

- Insufficient supply of coal, including but not limited to other factors such as financial provision.
- Failure of equipment and resources by Eskom (Ailing infrastructure).

Most importantly the increase in developments and industrialisation, which leads to a high demand for electricity vs. the available capacity. The proposed development is important as it will add to the current electricity supply shortfalls, additionally the energy will be produced from a renewable resource (radiation-energy from the sun) as compared to a non-renewable resource (i.e. coal), this in turn results in less environmental impacts as compared to the use of coal. The proposed development will be able add energy to grid (Eskom supply) which can supply energy to approximately 33 000 households, this will improve the energy supply for the residents within the Magareng and Dikgatlong Local Municipality, not leaving out the direct and indirect job opportunities which will be created during the construction and operational phases of the proposed development. The proposed developments contributes to the current sustainability goals, gearing towards the circular economy, in that the use of renewable energy as compared to non-renewable energy achieves the objectives of reducing the country's carbon footprint, and preserving the country's resources for the future generation.

### **1.2.1 Employment opportunities**


The proposed project will create approximately 125 temporary labour jobs during the construction phase, with approximately 12 opportunities with fixed term contracts over a 5 year period for the local community.

## 2. LEGAL AND OTHER REQUIREMENTS

The proposed development triggers the following legal provisions (outlined in Table 1 below), this includes but not limited to the National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998 (as amended), its regulations and other policies and guidelines.

**Table 1: Legal Framework**

Title of legislation, policy or guideline	Applicability to the project	Administering authority	Date
Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act No. 43 of 1983 as amended in 2001)	As specified in the Act, is the list of invasive weed and plant species, including prescribed actions to combat the spread thereof. Applicable to the study area, is category 1b invasive plant species, which requires control by an invasive species management programme.	National and Provincial	27 April 1983
National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998 as amended).	Section 28 of the act applies to the activities to be undertaken by the Applicant. The Applicant has a duty to ensure that any activities that cause or may cause environmental degradation are assessed and measures for prevention, avoidance or minimization of such impacts from occurring are in place for all phases of the proposed development.	National & Provincial	27 November 1998
The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (Act No. 108 of 1996, as amended).	Section 24 of the constitution stipulates that everyone has the right — to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being; and to have the environment protected, for the benefit of	National	18 December 1996

Title of legislation, policy or guideline	Applicability to the project	Administering authority	Date
	<p>present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that — prevent pollution and ecological degradation; promote conservation; and secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development. The applicant has the responsibility to ensure that project activities are undertaken in a manner that does not cause environmental degradation, whilst ensuring the principle of sustainable development is adhered to. This should be achieved through implementation and adherence to the EMP at all phases of the proposed activities.</p>		
<p>National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act 59 of 2008, as amended)</p>	<p>The Applicant should adhere to the following waste management practices:</p>  <p><b>Figure 6: Waste Management Hierarchy</b> (Source: <a href="https://www.mdpi.com/2079-276/7/1/21/htm">https://www.mdpi.com/2079-276/7/1/21/htm</a>)</p>	<p>National &amp; Provincial</p>	<p>10 March 2009</p>

Title of legislation, policy or guideline	Applicability to the project	Administering authority	Date
	The waste management mitigation measures as provided within the EMPr should be adhered to achieve compliance with the requirements of this act.		
National Heritage Resources, 1999 (Act No. 25 of 1999)	The Applicant should ensure compliance to Section 38 of this Act, thus ensuring that the Heritage Resources Agency is notified and provides comments on the proposed activities. Based on the conducted Heritage Desktop Assessment by Millenium Heritage Group (Pty) Ltd: A historical site was geo-referenced near the hill slope area (Boskop), with features such as rectangular house foundations, ash midden with broken porcelain, rusted iron pieces and stone walled enclosures. The area was determined of high sensitivity.	National & Provincial	28 April 1999
National Water Act, 1989 (Act No. 36 of 1998, as amended - NWA)	In line with this act, the proposed project activities should ensure compliance to section 19 of the NWA, thus putting in place measures that prevent pollution and/degradation on water resources. Additionally, a Water Use License is required for Section 21 (a) – Taking water from a water-resource (in this instance this refers to the abstraction of water from the borehole).	National & Provincial	26 August 1998
National Environmental Biodiversity, 2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004)	This Act requires that any red data and sensitive species within the site development should be conserved during the project	National & Provincial	7 June 2004

Title of legislation, policy or guideline	Applicability to the project	Administering authority	Date
	implementation phases. Although no Threatened species were encountered during the field survey, recommendation in the EMPr and ecological assessment should be adhered to on implementation of the proposed project activities.		
Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act No. 85 of 1993)	All persons at work are entitled to a healthy and safe working environment while undertaking their respective activities. The Applicant has a responsibility to ensure that this requirement is adhered to.	National & Provincial	23 June 1993
National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act No. 39 of 2004)	Project activities should be undertaken in manner which does not because air pollution, through implementation of mitigation measures as per the EMPr on air quality related impacts.	National & Provincial	24 February 2005
Hazardous Substances amendment Act, 1992 (Act No.53 of 1992) (as amended)	To provide for the control of substances which may cause injury or ill-health to or death of human beings by reason of their toxic, corrosive, irritant, strongly sensitizing or flammable nature or the generation of pressure thereby in certain circumstances, and for the control of certain electronic products; to provide for the division of such substances or products into groups in relation to the degree of danger; to provide for the prohibition and control of the importation, manufacture, sale, use, operation, application,	National	4 April 1973

Title of legislation, policy or guideline	Applicability to the project	Administering authority	Date
	modification, disposal or dumping of such substances and products; and to provide for matters connected therewith.		
Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000 (Act No. 2 of 2000)	All documents relating to the project should be accessible to the Public. In line with the environmental impact assessment process all documents for review by the public should be made available on written request.	National	2 February 2000
National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act: Alien and Invasive Species Regulations R 598 of 2014	Regulations should be complied with for the removal and controlling of alien and invasive species within the proposed project area.	National	1 August 2014
National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act no.107 of 1998, as amended): Publication of Public Participation Guideline	This guideline is used for the Public Participation process undertaken as part of the Basic Assessment application process. The main objective is to ensure that the Public Participation requirements are complied with and the process is undertaken in a fair, unbiased and reasonable manner.	National	10 October 2012
Northern Cape Nature Conservation Act (Act No. 9 of 2009)	The act provides for the conservation of indigenous, red-data listed plant and animals, including the control for sustainable use where applicable. In relation to the proposed project, any red data listed plant and animal species protected in terms of this act, including aquatic habitats may be damaged and/or destroyed.	Provincial	21 January 2010

## 2.1 TRIGGERED LISTED ACTIVITIES IN TERMS OF THE EIA REGULATIONS 2014 (AS AMENDED)

Based on the requirements from the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations 2014 (as amended), an environmental authorisation is required for the following listed activities prior to the implementation of the proposed activities. The following are the listed activities applied for to the CA for a decision on the environmental authorisation application:

**Table 2: Trigger EIA Listed Activities**

Indicate the number and date of the relevant notice:	Activity No (s) and Activity Description (in terms of the relevant notice)	Describe each listed activity as per project description
GN.R. 325, 7 April 2017: Listing Notice 2.	Activity 1 -: “The development of facilities or infrastructure for the generation of electricity from a renewable resource where the electricity output is 20 megawatts or more”	The proposed development entails the establishment of a Solar PV plant which will generate 75 MW of energy to feed into the national grid to increase capacity for electricity supply within the Magareng Local Municipality. The estimated energy to be generated from the proposed development is approximately 90.5 million kilowatt hours per year over a 20 year period, which can supply approximately 16 500 households.
GN.R. 325, 7 April 2017: Listing Notice 2.	Activity 15 -: “The clearance of an area of 20 hectares or more of indigenous vegetation”	The land where the development will be located is currently vacant, however it cannot be classified as a greenfield as it has been previously disturbed by mining activities, there are however certain sections within the property which were not impacted on by the mining activities i.e. the North Eastern section of the property.

Indicate the number and date of the relevant notice:	Activity No (s) and Activity Description (in terms of the relevant notice)	Describe each listed activity as per project description
		The estimated land required for the proposed development is approximately 182Ha (2Ha per 1MW) to produce the targeted 75MW, including the associated infrastructure i.e. substation, invertor and the control room.

## 2.2 TRIGGERED LISTED ACTIVITIES IN TERMS OF THE NWA 36 OF 1998.

Table 3: Triggered NWA Listed Activities

Indicate the number and date of the relevant notice:	Activity No (s) and Activity Description (in terms of the relevant notice)	Describe each listed activity as per project description
National Water Act No.36 of 1998	Section 21 (a) “ Taking water from a water resource”	The proposed development will require water for both the construction and operational phases, with the proposed water source as borehole, thus a Water Use License should be attained prior to executing the water use.



### 3. PURPOSE OF DRAFT SCOPING REPORT

---

The process for the application of an EA follows the NEMA No.107 of 1998 (as amended), EIA Regulations 2014 (as amended) requirements. As part of the process steps, the scoping phase forms part of the initial step after submission of the application for EA to the CA. The Scoping phase is a critical step in preparation for the Environmental Impact Assessment. The following are the major aspects that the Scoping phase aims to identify:

- Important issues to be considered in the EIA,
- The timeframe and boundaries of the EIA study,
- Important/significant factors and effects to be studied in detail during the EIA phase,
- The necessary information required for decision-making purposes,
- The scope of the proposed project in terms of the EIA requirements,
- Identify possible feasible and reasonable alternatives to the proposed Solar Plant development,
- Gather background information regarding the location, local conditions and the environmental requirements of the proposed development,
- Identify interested and affected parties (I&APs),
- Provide I&APs with information regarding the proposed development,
- Identify the issues, concerns and information requirements of I&APs.

The Scoping report will be provided to the public for comments before submission to the CA, who will make a decision based on the final Scoping report.

## 4. PROPOSED SCOPE OF WORK

This section of the report highlights the activities that will be undertaken during the phases of the Scoping and EIA process for the proposed River View Solar Plant.

### 4.1 Project schedule

The proposed schedule for the Scoping and EIA process is summarised in the table below. The anticipated timeframes are as according to the NEMA No.107 (as amended), EIA regulations 2014 (as amended).

**Table 4:** – Timeframes.

ACTIVITIES	DESCRIPTION	TIMEFRAME	DURATION	STATUS
<b>Application</b>	Environmental Authorisation Application Submission.	29 November 2022	10 days	Completed
<b>1<sup>st</sup> Public Participation</b>	I&APs + Stakeholder Identification	26 January 2023 ending 27 February 2023.	30 Days	Current
<b>Draft Scoping Report compilation.</b>	Draft Scoping Report compilation for Public Review before submission to CA	26 January 2023 ending 27 February 2023.	30 Days	Current
<b>Draft Scoping Report Amendment/Final Scoping Report</b>	Pending	Pending	Pending	Pending
<b>EIA and EMP submission/ amendments</b>	Provision of information in terms of studies, impacts, mitigation measures and recommendations	CA dependent	CA dependent +/- 120 days	To be completed
<b>Record of decision</b>	Granting or refusal of Waste Management License based on	CA dependent		

ACTIVITIES	DESCRIPTION	TIMEFRAME	DURATION	STATUS
	information provided and studies conducted.			
<b>Appeal Process</b>	Notifying I&APs , including stakeholders on Environmental Authorisation from CA	+ - 35 days	CA dependent	CA dependent
<b>Construction, operation and Closure phase</b>	Commencement of project activities. Due to challenges in terms of the Waste Management License, the initial project timelines have changed. The closure phase will be at the end life of the landfill site, as calculated 20 years.	The timeframe will depend on the final outcome from CA. Timeframes will be further looked at during the EIA phase.	Duration will depend on the outcomes from CA, to be determined by the applicant and implementer.	To be determined by project implementer
<b>Water Use License Application</b>	To be confirmed during the pre-consultation with the DWS and site visits	CA dependent	CA dependent	CA dependent

## 4.2 Preferred alternative (Solar Plant Operations)

The description of the project as provided under heading 1-Introduction, provides the detail on certain operational aspects of the Solar Plant, however in isolation, the overall operations of the activities within the solar plant as proposed are as follows (post the construction phase):

- Installed PV solar panels, mounted on a fixed tilt axis system which remains at an angle of 30<sup>o</sup>, facing upwards.
- Electrons are activated within the panels and starts moving in a series, with the connected electrical cables in the panels, energy is drawn, which then goes to a combiner box.
- The combiner box acts as the central point for the concentration of the energy, from which then there energy is stored in DC form in batteries.

- Post the storage step, there are a series of inverters which converts the DC energy to AC, this linked with the Operations, Equipment and maintenance centre, where through a smart cloud process, the monitoring of the energy and transfer to the transformer occurs, then distribution to the grid line (Eskom Pylon).

The process purely uses energy as harnessed from the sun, for conversion and transmission to the grid line, as a result there are no other additional process steps. The preferred alternative of the proposed development is the construction and installation of a Poly-crystalline panels (made up of multiple crystals), mounted on a tilt axis system. The selected panels are preferred as the cost less in the market and do not degrade easily, thus require less maintenance, however with the type of mountings, this increases the energy output, thus the Polycrystalline panels work more efficiently with the tilt mounted systems, thus remain the preferred option as a combination for the proposed development.

### **4.3 Existing Solar Plants**

The Northern Cape Province as a whole is seen as an area where there is a huge potential for solar energy activities, this mainly due to the high radiation energy the province receives. At a local scale, some individuals and businesses have invested in solar energy for operations, security and basic household activities (observations as done during the site visit conducted on the 12 November 2022).

In close proximity to the study area for the proposed development, there are currently approximately 11 approved (in terms of the Environmental Authorisation, detail as sourced from the DFFE National Screening tool results) Solar PV plants, however the implementation status of the projects is unknown.

### **4.4 Description of Alternatives**

In accordance with Appendix 2: point 2, under content of scoping report, outlines the need for information and understanding in line with considered the preferred and alternative options applicable to the proposed development. The alternatives should be in line with the following requirements and/or set options for assessment:

- Alternative site on property, properties.
- Alternative activity
- Alternative design
- Alternative technology
- Alternative operational aspects of the activity

Below is the analysis of identified alternatives, which includes the No-Go alternative.

#### **4.4.1. Alternative site on property or properties**

The alternative site on the property or properties refers to a different location, excluding the preferred site, where the proposed activities can be undertaken. Alternative sites and/or properties for the proposed development were not considered based on the state of environment for the preferred site. Additionally, the receiving environment has been previously disturbed due to anthropogenic activities i.e. mining and grazing, thus the site is of low sensitivity, and in turn the proposed activities are determined as having a low risk of causing environmental impacts on the receiving environment. The proposed development remains the preferred activity (with consideration of the receiving environment) on the preferred site, as an alternative activity post the mining and agricultural activities that were undertaken on site.

#### **4.4.2. Alternative activity**

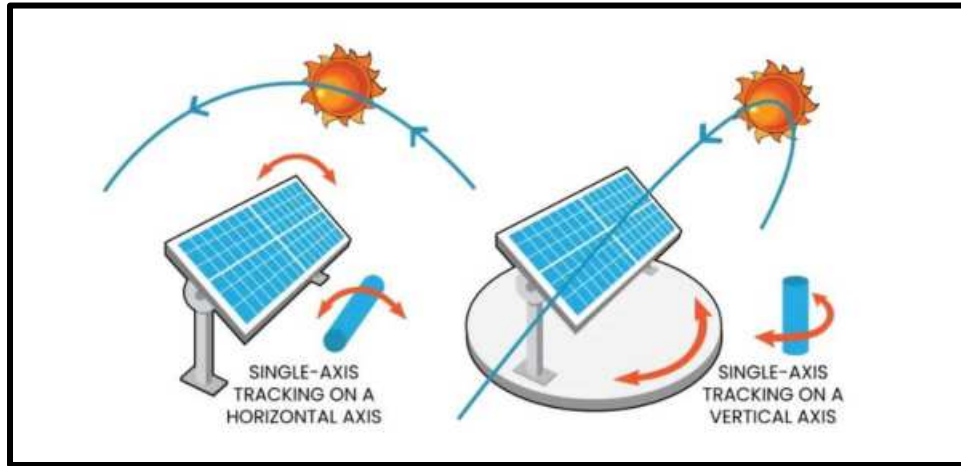
The alternative as an activity refers to a different activity option that can be undertaken within the study area, excluding the proposed preferred solar energy development. In consideration with the previous anthropogenic activities i.e. mining and agricultural, the other activity that can be considered within the study area is agricultural activities, which includes but not limited to grazing and/or stock farming.

#### **4.4.3. Alternative site**

The alternative as an activity refers to a different activity option that can be undertaken within the study area, excluding the proposed preferred solar energy development. In consideration with the previous anthropogenic activities i.e. mining, the other activity that can be considered within the study area is agricultural activities, which includes but not limited to grazing and/or stock farming.

#### 4.4.4. Design alternative

**Type of mountings:** The alternative mounting design as compared to the fixed tilt mounting system the single axis tracking system. The panels are mounted on an axis, which aids in the rotation of the panels throughout the day (refer to figure 7, below).



**Figure 7 : Single Axis tracking System (the preferred option is the single axis tracking on a horizontal axis).**

The single axis tracking systems tracks and/or follows the movement of the sun during the day, in an easterly to west direction

**PV Panels:** The alternative to polycrystalline panels is mono-crystalline panels. The mono-crystalline panels are made up of single silicon crystals, which allows electrons to move efficiently. Based on the silicon ratio, mono-crystalline panels are more efficient as compared to polycrystalline panels and are made up of a black texture (refer to figure 8, below).



**Figure 8 : mono-crystalline panels.**

The mono-crystalline panels have a higher maintenance as compared to the polycrystalline panels, cost more, and thus are not the preferred option for the proposed development.

#### 4.4.5. Alternative technology

The alternative in terms of technology refers to the different application, which can still achieve the intended outcome of the activity i.e. an alternative technological application which can generate electricity from a renewable resource. The following options have been explored:

**Hydro Energy:** - The Hydro energy process entails harnessing energy from movement of water, where the water flows from a higher level to the lowest point, or through a channel constructed at the lowest point of the dam (reservoir). The water goes pass a turbo generator with a turbine, that rotates (fitted with an electric cable), energy is generated which is then transferred to the substation (or mini transfer station). The energy in the substation is then distributed to the grid lines (pylons), further distribution to the end user. Refer to figure 9, below:

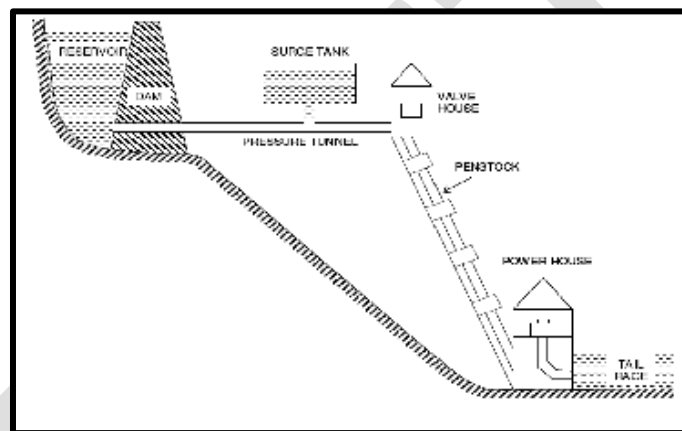
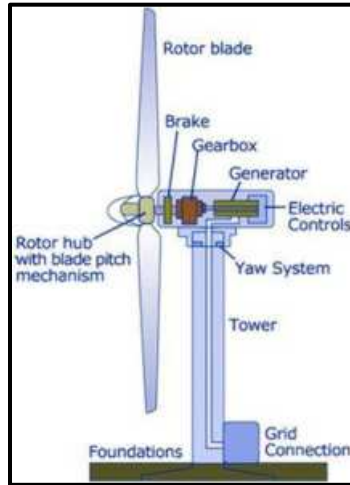


Figure 9 : Hydro power schematic

The hydro power energy is suitable in an area or environment where there is sufficient and/or large volumes of water, i.e. the reservoir as mentioned in the description. In comparison, hydro power is not an option for the current study area, as there is no reservoir (or sufficient water). Additionally, the terrain is flat, which makes the Solar PV a preferred option.

**Wind Energy:** The other alternative as compared to Hydro power and Solar PV is Wind energy. The wind energy technology entails installation of wind turbines (the turbine is mounted on a tower fitted with electric cables from the generator), wherein energy is generated through windblown action. The turbine is fitted with rotor blade, which is mounted to a gear box linked with a generator. As wind blows, the rotor blades starts to rotate (slow rotation), this changes the gearbox rotation to a faster speed within the generator, which then generates energy. The generator is fitted with power cables, which transfers the energy to the transformer and or power station, from the transformer the energy goes to the grid lines (Pylons) for further distribution to the end user. Refer to figure 10, below:



**Figure 10 : Wind energy schematic**

The wind energy production requires large piece of land and an area where there is sufficient wind. In comparison to the Solar PV and Hydro energy, the solar energy is the most reliable and cost efficient option, thus the Solar PV remains a preferred option for the study area, because is it best suited for the receiving environment (high solar radiation).

#### **4.4.6. Alternative operational aspects of activity**

The no-go alternative entails, the option at which the proposed development does not go ahead and/or an option which should not be applied to the proposed development. The no go alternative explored for this assessment, is the proposed development not going ahead, this will result in a loss of the local socio-economic boost i.e. loss of job and skills development opportunities, cumulatively, a loss in the investment opportunity that will be created by the proposed project. An option wherein the proposed development cannot proceed due to the state of the receiving environment is null, mainly due to the fact that the current state of the receiving environment is of a low sensitivity.



## 5. DESCRIPTION OF THE RECEIVING ENVIRONMENT

The section on the receiving environment focuses on the outline of the various environmental themes that exists within the proposed site (part of the Remaining Extent, Portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15, Kimberly Rd-refer to figure 11 below) for the solar plant project.



Figure 11 : Site area

### 5.1. Geology, Topography and Soil

**Geology:** The site is underlain by various geological forms, with hills forming part of the outstanding features, located on the eastern side of the site. The main stratigraphic unit associated with the site is the Karoo Supergroup, linked to southern portion of the Kalahari Desert. In terms of associated networks, there are mainly dolerite sills, sheets and dykes, which cause intrusions into the Karoo Supergroup. Additionally, there is existence of the following formations:

- Calcrete
- Calcified Pandune and
- Surface Limestone

The alluvial diamondiferous gravels are located towards the Vaal River, which is approximately 3.8 Km North West, West and South West of the study area. The structural geology within the site mainly comprises of dolerite and Calcrete, calcified Pandune and surface limestone.

**Topography:** The site has a gentle flat terrain and irregular plains with a low relief towards the Vaal River. The site is approximately 1124 metres above sea level, with the maximum feature (Boskop), being approximately 1212 metres above sea level. The gentle flat terrain rises at an average 4.6% from the Western boarder of the site towards hill, where the hill has the highest peak of a 40% rise and a drop of -49%, from which towards the eastern boarder of the site, the undulating hills rise from 0% to approximately 2.5%. Refer to figure 12.



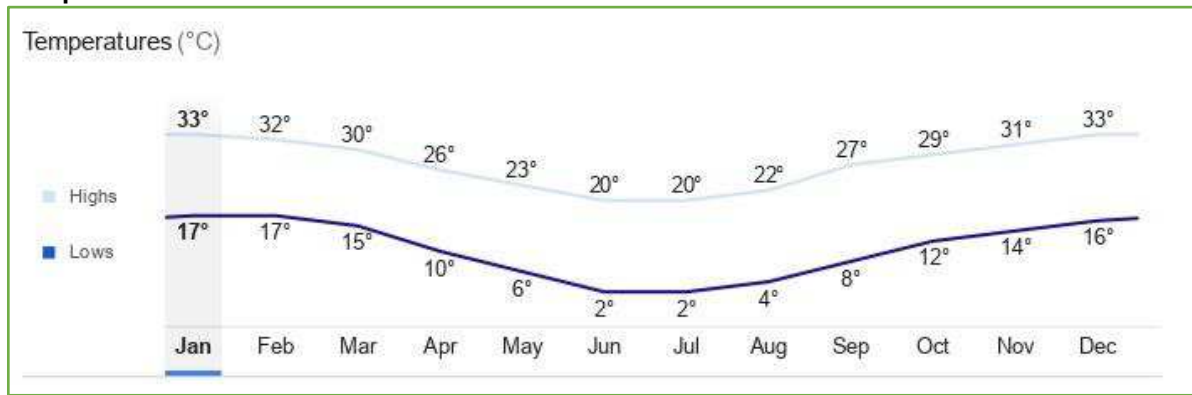
**Figure 12 : Elevation of the site**

**Soil:** The study area is characterised by shallow, red-yellow, red freely drained soils. The type of soils have low erodability capability, with the common soil on site being the Coega form (hardpan carbonate).

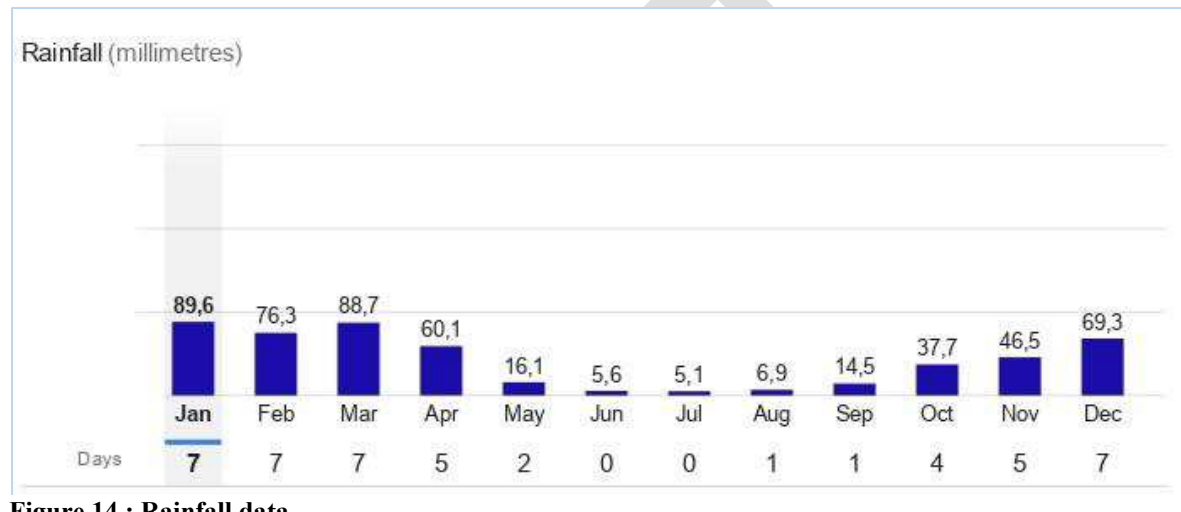
## 5.2. Climate

The study area, on a regional level is characterised by semi-arid climate conditions, where it's normally hot during the summer months (December to March), influenced by showers and thunders, the average rainfall ranges between 300mm (South-west Boundaries) to approximately 500mm (North-east boundaries). The annual rainfall as a result of climate changes can be estimated to approximately 400mm, with the first rains in October, continuously through November and February, and the peak rainfall in March.

**Temperature:**



**Figure 13 : Kimberley: Temperature data**



**Figure 14 : Rainfall data**

In average temperatures range from the minimum 16<sup>0</sup>C to maximum 33<sup>0</sup>C during the summer months, with temperatures changing from the minimum 2<sup>0</sup>C to a maximum of 20<sup>0</sup>C. In consideration of previous literature, the mean monthly maximum temperatures is estimated to approximately 37.5<sup>0</sup>C (January), whereas the minimum is can be -4.1<sup>0</sup>C (July). In addition to the above, the other natural phenomena which is common within the area is occurrence of droughts. (Ecological Assessment by Maanakana Projects and Consulting Pty Ltd; <https://www.ncdc.noaa.gov/> : accessed 10 January 2023, time 18:01).

### 5.3. Surface and Ground Water

The water resource management, classification and detail system adopted in South Africa is represented below: - figure 15

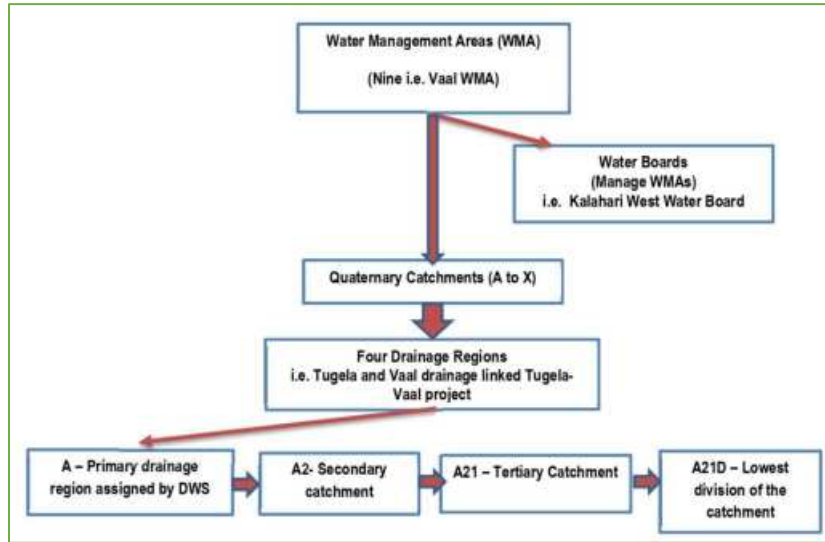


Figure 15 : Catchment regions explained

The different catchments within the various WMA's are assigned based on sizes of the drainage basins, this aids in the prioritization and management of the water resources found within the catchment. The most important aspect of understanding the surface and groundwater parameters, is understanding the water flow (Cycle) system within the country. Figure 16, provides a depiction of the water systems within South Africa.

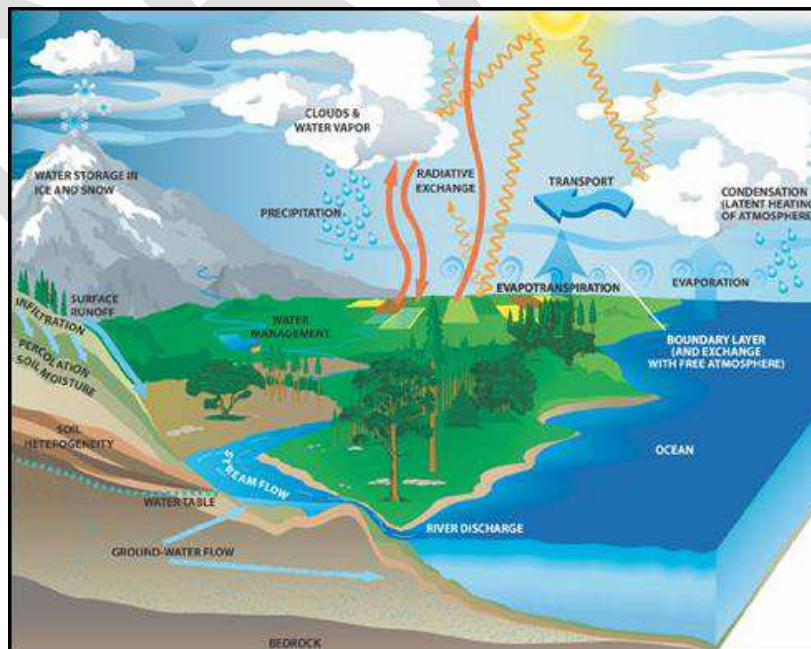


Figure 16 : Water Cycle: source <https://gpm.nasa.gov/education/articles/nasa-earth-science-water-cycle>



The study falls within the lower Vaal Water Catchment C91D quaternary catchment area, with the major river system being the Vaal River, situated North-West, West and South West of the site. The river system is falls within category D, thus largely modified due to anthropogenic activities i.e. mining and agricultural activities. On groundwater aspects, the site falls within an area where the aquifer system is classified as minor, thus it is a moderately-yielding aquifer system, and with an anticipated slightly salty water quality taste (Geo-hydrological investigations will be undertaken as part of this assessment to further investigate the aquifer system).

## 5.4. Ecological Characteristics

The study area falls within an area characterised by three sensitivity categories, the section on the South East (Critical Biodiversity Area 1-CBA1, Ecological Support Area-ESA-Very high sensitivity), the North West, West and South West boundary has a section of CBA1, ESA-very high sensitivity), whereas the centre section comprises of low sensitivity. Refer to figure 17 below.

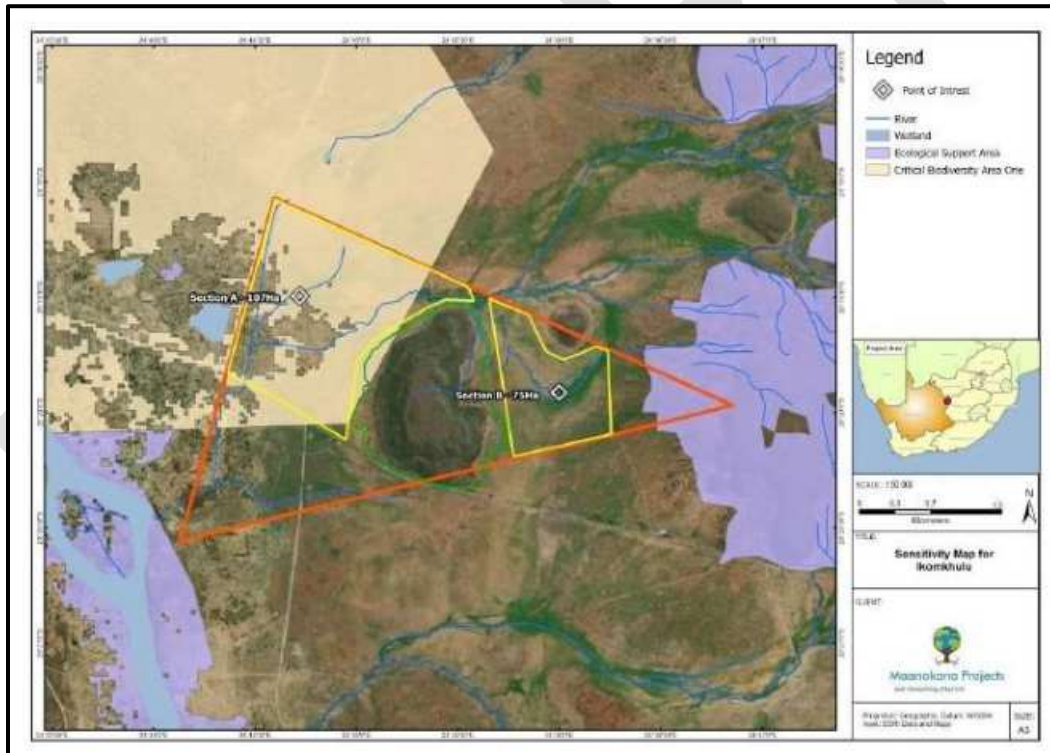


Figure 17 : Map showing CBA1 and ESA: source Ecological Assessment by Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd.

### 5.4.1. Fauna

According to the Ecological Assessment conducted by Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd, there are no faunal species that were classified as red listed, threatened or Vulnerable. The following species recorded on site during the field survey are as follows:

- Birds: Speckled pigeon (*Columba guinea*), Euplectes oris (*Southern Red Bishop*) and Crithagra atrogularis (*Black-Throated Canary*).
- Mammals: *Potamochoerus larvatus* (Bushpig) and *Tragelaphus strepsiceros* (Kudu).
- Invertebrates: *Truxaloides braziliensis* (grasshopper) and *Colitis equipped*.

In addition to the above, the list of other possible faunal species that may frequent the site is specified in the Ecological Assessment by Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd, under Appendix 4. The report is attached as Appendix H.

### 5.4.2. Flora

The vegetation on site falls under the Kimberly Thornville (SVk4) and Schimtdsdrif Thornveld (SVk6) grasslands (Ecological Assessment by Maanakana Projects and Consulting Pty Ltd). On site, the following floral species were found *Acacia mellifera* (*Black thorn*), *Boerhavia diffusa*, *Acacia tortilis*, *Eragrostis racemosa*, *Cyperus prolifer*, *Opuntia robusta*, *Typha capensis*, *Tamarix ramosissima*, *Ailanthus altissima*, *Eragrostis spp.*, *Searsia lancea*, *Arundo donax*, *Ziziphus mucronata* and *Argemone ochroleuca*. According to the field survey conducted on the 12 November 2022, no red data listed and/or protected species were discovered on site. The full list of species that may be applicable to the study area are listed within the Ecological Assessment by Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd, Appendix 1 and 3. The Ecological Assessment report is attached as Appendix H.

## 5.5. Cultural & Heritage Resources

A Desktop Heritage Assessment was conducted by Millenium Heritage Group (Pty) Ltd, on the 12 November 2022. The following findings were made:

- A historical site was geo-referenced near the hill slope area (Boskop), with features such as rectangular house foundations, ash midden with broken porcelain, rusted iron pieces and stone walled enclosures. The area was determined of high sensitivity. Refer to figure 18, below.



**Figure 18 : Heritage Buffer Area**

In terms of the legal requirements, the removal of any heritage artefacts or resources older than 60 years requires a permit, however in this instance as a mitigation, the recommendation is preservation of the highly sensitive area. The proposed mitigation entails implementing a 50 metres buffer from the hill slope towards the development area. A fence can be installed between the buffer and the area where the development can be placed.

## 5.6. Zoning

The study is zoned for agricultural land use, as a result a rezoning application is required for the proposed project activities (Solar plant). The required zoning for the Solar Plant is Utility II, an application for rezoning should be lodged with the local authority (Magareng Local Municipality), which will further confirm the required land use change for the proposed solar plant.

## 5.7. Surrounding Land Uses

The site is currently vacant, with a spread of floral species and faunal species as outlined at point 5.4.1 and 5.4.2. The surrounding land uses from the site within a radius of 6Km area as follows:

- West of the site is the Windsorton town (made up of business areas, farms, and a location).
- The Vaal River is 3.21 Km from the site towards the North West, West and South West.
- The Northern section of the side mainly comprises of farms with individual households.
- North West of the site before and after the Vaal River is vacant land, with individual households.
- Southern West section mainly comprises of the Vaal River and vacant previously mined areas
- The Southern section mainly comprises of vacant land, a sand mining area, and a previously mined vacant farm.
- South East of the site across the R374 is vacant land.
- East of the site is vacant land with hills.
- North East of the site is a farm with game, and hills.

The area surrounding area is mainly constituted by previously mined areas, hills (rock outcrops), and individual residential areas.

## 5.8. Agricultural Potential

The agricultural potential for site is of high sensitivity, thus the area has potential for agricultural activities i.e. annual crop production, including but not limited to grazing. Based on the previous mining activities undertaken on site, for some areas the opportunity for crop production is less, the land can only support grazing, thus for crop production other measures based on the production would have to be implemented to prepare the land for the specific activities.

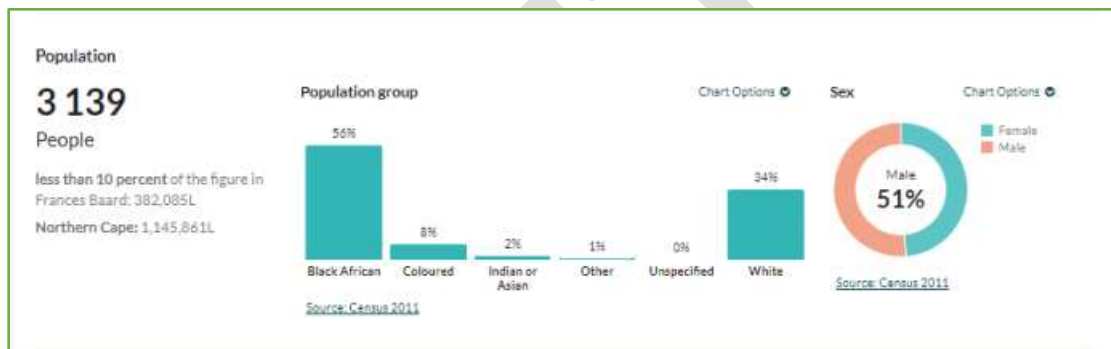


## 5.9. Socio-Economic Environment

### 5.9.1. Demographics

**Population size and growth:** The study areas falls within the Magareng Local Municipality (Ward5), with a population size of approximately 3139. The population group's distribution in percentages based on the total population size estimates are as follows: Refer to the figure below:

- Black African: 56%.
- Coloured: 8%.
- Indian or Asian: 2%.
- Other: 1%.
- White: 34%.



**Figure 19 : Population distribution Ward 5 (Magareng Local Municipality): source - <https://wazimap.co.za/profiles/ward-30903005-magareng-ward-5-30903005/#demographics>**

The annual population growth rate within the Magareng Local Municipality is estimated to -0.14% annually. The annual growth as mentioned above was for the period 2011 → 2016. The change is mainly contributed to by lack of job opportunities, which then forces people to migrate to other areas where there are opportunities. (Census 2011).

## 5.9.2. Economic

The employment rate within ward 5, Magareng Local Municipality is approximately 49.1% of the total population and approximately 75% is in the formal sector, the informal sector accounting for 7%, with 15% employed in the private household, whereas the remaining 2% is unknown. The current youth unemployment rate within the Magareng Local Municipality as a whole is estimated to 51.8%, whereas approximately 6239 people are economically active (divided into those employed and those looking for employment).



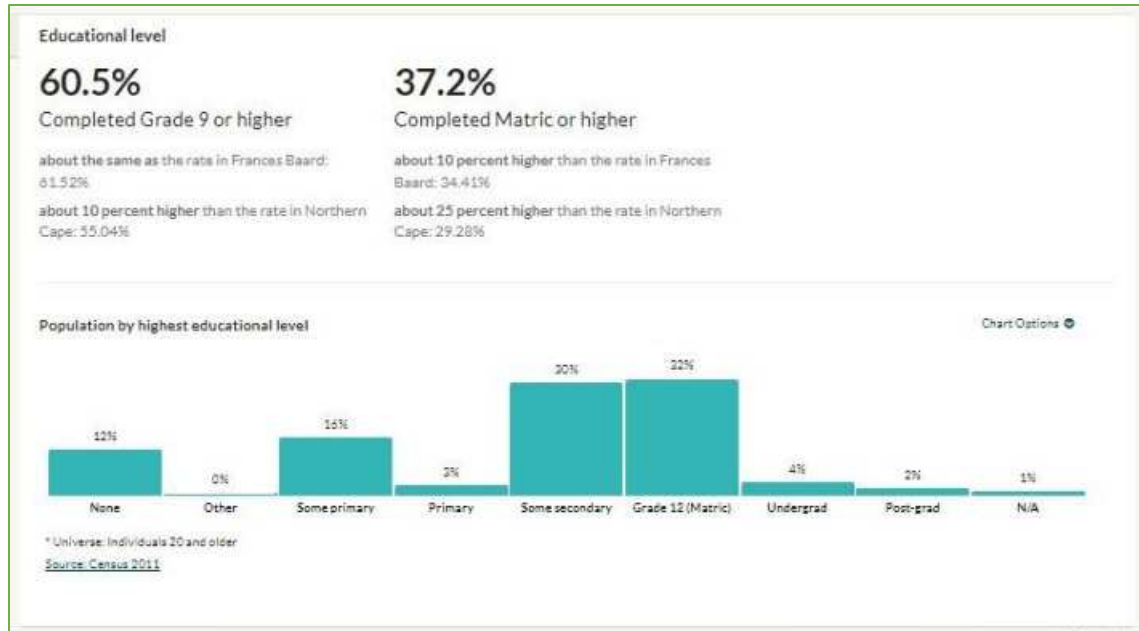
**Figure 20 : Employment stats: source <https://wazimap.co.za/profiles/ward-30903005-magareng-ward-5-30903005/#economics>, accessed: 11/01/2023**

The main sector of employment within the municipality is agricultural, with the mining and quarrying sector being less due to the associated activities being outside the municipal boundary. (Census 2011).

## 5.9.3. Education

According to the census 2011, the level of education within the Magareng Local Municipality is as follows, in percentages in line with the population:-

- Not schooling : 12%
- Some primary : 16%
- Primary : 3%
- Some Secondary : 30%
- Grade 12 : 32%
- Undergraduates : 4%
- and post-graduates: 2%.



**Figure 21 : Educational level**

In addition to the above, approximately 37.2% have completed matric or higher, with 60.5% that have completed grade 9 and/or higher. Census 2011.

## 6. SCOPING ASSESSMENT OF IMPACTS

The section on scoping assessment of impacts focuses on the assessment of anticipated impacts associated with the proposed River View Solar Plant. The assessment of the anticipated impacts will be based on the following phases of the project:

- Planning/design phase.
- Construction phase.
- Post-Construction phase and
- Operational phase.

The impact assessment criteria (method), including potential environmental impacts associated with the proposed project are outlined in the headings below.

## 6.1. Impact Assessment methodology and Alternatives

The following significance rating method will be used to rate impacts emanating from the proposed MAP landfill site activities:

### Significance of the Impact(s):

Each category will be assigned points. These points will be computed by using the equation below and each potential impact will be assigned a significance rating (S).

$$\text{Therefore: } S = (E+D+M) * P$$

**Table 5:** - The significance ratings:

Rating	Description
(<30) low	The impact will not have a direct influence on the decision to develop in the area
(30-60) medium	The impact can influence the decision to develop in the area unless it is effectively mitigated
(>60) high	The impact should have an influence on the decision process to develop in the area

### Significance Method (Equation)

**Table 6:** Nature of the Impact –

Refers to the description of the activity impacting the environment.

Rating	Description
Positive	In most cases this would be a benefit
Negative	Could be a cost
Neutral	No implications on either cost or benefit

**Table 7 :** Extent of the Impact (E) –

Refers to the area which the activity will have an impact on (Geographic area).

Rating	Description
1	Site – impact extends to site only
2	Local – impact extends as far as the boundary of site and immediate surroundings
3	Regional

Rating	Description
4	Provincial
5	National

**Table 8 : Duration of the Impact (D)**

The length of time that the impact will last)

Rating	Description
1	Immediate – less than one year
2	Short term – between one year & five years
3	Medium Term – between five years & 15 years
4	Long term – impact ceases after operational life span of the project
5	Permanent

**Table 9 :Probability (P)**

Refers to the likelihood that the impact will occur.

Rating	Description
0	None – impact will not occur
1	Improbable – probability very low due to design or experience
2	Low – unlikely to occur
3	Medium – distinct probability that the impact will occur
4	High – most likely to occur
5	Definite

**Table 10 :Severity/Magnitude (M)**

Refers to degree at which the impact will occur.

Rating	Description
10	Very High – an irreversible and permanent change that cannot be mitigated
8	High – impacts that could be mitigated, however this mitigation would be costly
6	Medium – medium term impacts that could be mitigated
4	Low – short term impacts with very easy mitigation

Rating	Description
0	No effect – the proposed development would have no impact

## 6.2. Method of assessment for alternatives

The alternatives for the proposed project will be assessed in a similar way as the environmental impacts for the preferred option. The assessment will include the comparison between the alternatives to the preferred option, in terms of design, location, activity, technology and operational aspects of the proposed development. The best practical, acceptable alternative will be selected based on the outcomes of the assessment. The other aspect of the assessment includes the No-Go alternative.

## 6.3. Risk Assessment Criteria

The risk assessment criteria used in determining the level of risk of the identified environmental impacts in relation to the proposed project is as follows:

- **Risk** = Consequence (Significance) X Probability

The variables used in determining the risk are defined as follows:

- **Consequence** : The consequence basically refers to the severity of the potential risk and includes the level of the environmental impact.
- **Probability (Likelihood)**: This refers to the likelihood of the consequential risk occurring.

The risk matrix applied is on the table below:

Table 11: Risk matrix.

			LIKELIHOOD				
			Improbable	Unlikely	Probable	Highly Probable	Definite
			The possibility of the impact occurring is very low, due to the circumstances, design or experience	Low likelihood: low likelihood, the chance of this impact occurring is between 0 and 25%. However, mitigation measures might be needed in the event of this impact occurring	There is a possibility that the impact will occur to the extent that provisions must be made to mitigate the impacts	It is most likely that the impacts will occur at some or other stage of the development. Plans must be drawn up before the undertaking of the activity	The impact will take place regardless of any prevention plans, and thus mitigatory actions or contingency plans must be relied
CONSEQUENCE	<b>Catastrophic 5</b>	Permanent: this impact is not reversible.	<b>15(M)</b>	<b>19 (H)</b>	<b>22(H)</b>	<b>24(H)</b>	<b>25(H)</b>
	<b>Major 4</b>	Long term Impact lasts for the entire operational lifespan, mitigation can be by direct human action or natural processes thereafter.	<b>10(M)</b>	<b>14 (M)</b>	<b>18 (H)</b>	<b>21 (H)</b>	<b>23(H)</b>
	<b>Moderate 3</b>	Medium term (5-15 years).	<b>6 (L)</b>	<b>9 (M)</b>	<b>13 (M)</b>	<b>17 (H)</b>	<b>20 (H)</b>
	<b>Minor 2</b>	Short to Medium: the impact will be relevant to the end of a construction phase.	<b>3 (L)</b>	<b>5 (L)</b>	<b>8 (M)</b>	<b>12 (M)</b>	<b>16 (M)</b>
	<b>Negligible 1</b>	Short term (0-5 years).	<b>1 (L)</b>	<b>2 (L)</b>	<b>4(L)</b>	<b>7 (M)</b>	<b>11 (M)</b>

## 7. DESCRIPTION/ASSESSMENT OF POTENTIAL IMPACTS

The scoping phase aims to identify potential environmental impacts associated with the planning and design, construction, post construction and the operational phase of the proposed project activities. The impacts are identified from the baseline studies, including site visits that were done during the initial stages of the proposed development. Note: the full EIA phase will further identify potential environmental impacts that may have not been determined during the scoping phase.

### 7.1. POTENTIAL IMPACTS

Table 12: Planning and Design phase.

Planning and Design phase								
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating		Mitigation measures	Significance Rating		Risk of the impact, without mitigation
			without Mitigation			with Mitigation		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Layout Design.</li> <li>➤ Applications for Environmental Authorisation.</li> <li>➤ Applications for Water Use License.</li> </ul>	Compliance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Penalties or imprisonment due to non-compliance.</li> <li>➤ Environmental degradation due to operations without valid Water Use Licence and Environmental Authorisations.</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The Applicant should ensure there is adequate financial provision to cater for the proposed development, including associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	High
			Extent	2		Extent	2	
			Duration	3		Duration	2	
			Magnitude	8		Magnitude	8	
			Probability x	5		Probability x	2	
			Outcome	65		Outcome	24	
			Significance	High		Significance	Low	



Planning and Design phase						
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation	Mitigation measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation	Risk of the impact, without mitigation
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Site Development Plan approvals.</li> <li>➤ Energy permits as an Independent Power Producer.</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Accidental Incidents due to non-compliance with the Health and Safety requirements, building standard requirements.</li> <li>➤ High cost implications during the construction and operational phases.</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ All legal requirements and authorisations should be met prior to implementing the proposed development activities i.e. water use registration, environmental authorisation, rezoning certificates.</li> <li>➤ Recommendations from the specialist assessments i.e. ecological assessment, wetland assessment and heritage impact assessment should be implemented and should be incorporated into the layout, designs and planned operational aspects of the proposed development.</li> </ul>		

Table 13: Construction phase.

Construction phase									
Activities		Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Site Establishment</li> <li>➤ Vegetation clearance for construction and installation/on of solar plant infrastructure.</li> <li>➤ Excavations, landscaping, and soil compaction</li> <li>➤ Movement of construction equipment (machinery).</li> </ul>	Camp	Flora	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Loss of indigenous vegetation due to construction activities.</li> <li>➤ Loss of floral species of concern (threatened, red-data listed species).</li> <li>➤ Soil erosion as a result of clearing vegetation.</li> <li>➤ Alien invasive plant species invasion.</li> <li>➤ Increased dust (respiratory disorders).</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Relocation of plants should be supervised by the ECO.</li> <li>➤ Environmental awareness training should be done prior to undertaking the proposed activities, topics should cover the importance of biodiversity, fire hazards, littering and pollution control, including handling of chemicals and delineated sensitive areas as no-go areas.</li> <li>➤ The clearing of vegetation should be limited to the construction working areas.</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	High
				Extent	4		Extent	3	
				Duration	4		Duration	1	
				Magnitude	8		Magnitude	6	
				Probability x	5		Probability x	5	
				Outcome	80		Outcome	50	
				Significance	High		Significance	Medium	

Construction phase						
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation Mitigation measures	Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation	Risk of the impact, without mitigation
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Grading for new access roads.</li> <li>➤ Uncontrolled spillages of hydrocarbons.</li> </ul>				<p>Sensitive areas should be marked as no-go areas.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The project footprint should be clearly demarcated.</li> <li>➤ Open fires within the vegetated areas should be prohibited.</li> <li>➤ Topsoil, where available, should be conserved, for landscaping all disturbed areas. Re-vegetation should make use of indigenous plants only.</li> <li>➤ A temporary fence must be erected around the construction area (i.e. the servitude, construction camps, areas where material is stored and the actual footprint of the</li> </ul>		

Construction phase						
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation Mitigation measures	Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation	Risk of the impact, without mitigation
				<p>development); shade cloth fencing can be used</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Vehicular and pedestrian access into natural areas beyond the demarcated boundary of the construction area is Use existing servitudes and access roads as far as possible.</li> <li>➤ The collection of flora without permission from the local authority should be prohibited.</li> <li>➤ Activities during rainy days should halt and resume at least 2 days afterwards.</li> <li>➤ A vegetation rehabilitation plan should be implemented. Recommendations in the</li> </ul>		

Construction phase								
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation
					Ecological assessment by Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd should be adhered to. A walk-through on site should be done prior to site establishment and construction activities in order to record and relocate any protected species within the study area (Note: no protected species were recorded on site).			
	Fauna	➤ Loss of vulnerable and near threatened faunal species (displacement, mortality and/or disturbance).	Nature	Negative	➤ A walk-through on site should be done prior to site establishment and construction activities in order to demarcate and mark sensitive areas to be avoided (no-go areas) i.e. temporary	Nature	Negative	High
			Extent	2		Extent	2	
			Duration	2		Duration	2	
			Magnitude	8		Magnitude	8	
			Probability x	4		Probability x	4	
			Outcome	48		Outcome	48	

Construction phase								
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation Mitigation measures		Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation
			Significance	Medium	vleis/wetlands and burrow systems. ➤ Construction on high sensitive areas is prohibited. ➤ Erosion control measures should be in place on access roads and sensitive areas i.e. wetlands. ➤ Bunded surfaces, free from storm-water run-off should be used storage of hazardous substances. Spillage kits should be on site, to clean any accidental spills which may occur. ➤ The illegal Hunting and collection of Fauna is prohibited on site.	Significance	Medium	

Construction phase								
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation
			Mitigation measures					
					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Off Road driving on sensitive areas is prohibited.</li> <li>➤ Vehicular speed limits on access roads and the site should be regulated and maintained to 30Km/h, to avoid collisions.</li> <li>➤ Any vulnerable fauna encountered on site should be relocated.</li> <li>➤ Site access should be controlled to avoid un-authorised personnel on site.</li> <li>➤ Working near highly sensitive areas i.e. wetlands should be limited to dry seasons.</li> </ul>			
➤ Topsoil stockpiling adjacent to	Geology and Soil		Nature	Negative	➤ Measures to dissipate flow velocity below structures should	Nature	Negative	Medium
			Extent	2		Extent	2	

Construction phase								
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation
			Mitigation measures					
wetlands or watercourses. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Run-off from bare surfaces and stockpiles into watercourses.</li> </ul> ➤ Site establishment, including construction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Soil excavations to create trenches for pipes.</li> </ul> Infilling trenches		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Sedimentation, soil erosion and associated flow alterations.</li> <li>➤ Loss of potential production soil by erosion because of exposed areas.</li> </ul>	Duration	2	be considered and designed during pre-construction (i.e. retention ponds or areas with rock riprap grassed. Long term attenuation measures, attenuation/infiltration trenches, swales along roadways/pavements). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Stockpiling of materials should not occur adjacent to watercourses.</li> <li>➤ Measures to control erosion should be in place at areas sensitive to erosion (i.e. Edges of slopes, exposed soil etc.) Measures such the use of sandbags, hessian sheets, silt fences, retention or replacement</li> </ul>	Duration	2	
			Magnitude	8		Magnitude	8	
			Probability x	4		Probability x	2	
			Outcome	48		Outcome	24	
			Significance	Medium		Significance	Low	



Construction phase						
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation Mitigation measures	Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation	Risk of the impact, without mitigation
				<p>of vegetation and geotextiles such as soil cells can be applied</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Do not allow surface water or storm water to be concentrated, or to flow down cut or fill slopes without erosion protection measures being in place.</li> <li>➤ Construction activities should take place preferably during the dry season.</li> <li>➤ Mining of soil/sand from the riverbanks is prohibited.</li> <li>➤ Vegetation should be removed in phases and where necessary. The entire construction area must not be stripped of vegetation prior to commencing construction activities.</li> </ul>		

Construction phase						
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation Mitigation measures	Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation	Risk of the impact, without mitigation
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Exposed soils should be rehabilitated as soon as practically possible to limit the risk of erosion. Methods can include, stabilizing, re-shaping, and rehabilitating disturbed areas with indigenous wetland vegetation. Rehabilitation must be implemented by a suitable replanting and re-vegetation programme, sandbags, silt fencing, etc.</li> <li>➤ Sustainable Urban Drainage Systems (SUDS): All storm water runoff from the site must be supplemented by an appropriate road drainage system that must include open,</li> </ul>		

Construction phase								
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation
					grass-lined channels/swales rather than simply relying on piped systems or concrete V-drains.			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Deliveries to the site.</li> <li>➤ Uncontrolled spillages of Hydrocarbons</li> <li>➤ Parked or standing construction vehicles, Re-fuelling of construction vehicles on site.</li> <li>➤ Surface run-off and ground infiltration of</li> </ul>	Surface water and Ground Water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Sedimentation, soil erosion and associated flow alterations.</li> <li>➤ Deterioration of water resources.</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Delineated riparian and in-stream habitats outside of the construction zone are considered sensitive “No-Go” areas and access/activities are to be strictly prohibited in these areas.</li> <li>➤ The construction working servitude width should be restricted to 15 m.</li> <li>➤ Waste generated on site should be discarded at temporary designated areas, skip bins can</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	Medium
			Extent	2		Extent	2	
			Duration	2		Duration	2	
			Magnitude	8		Magnitude	8	
			Probability x	4		Probability x	2	
			Outcome	48		Outcome	24	
			Significance	Medium		Significance	Low	

Construction phase						
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation Mitigation measures	Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation	Risk of the impact, without mitigation
<p>Hydro-carbon due to leakages.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Cement mixing.</li> <li>➤ Runoff from cement mixing areas.</li> <li>➤ Various activities by construction employees.</li> <li>➤ Littering.</li> <li>➤ In-appropriate disposal of waste within delineated wetlands.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Soil</li> <li>○ Rocks</li> <li>○ Concrete</li> </ul> </li> <li>➤ Excavations within wetland systems.</li> </ul>				<p>used, for disposal at a licensed landfill site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The washing of construction equipment near watercourses is prohibited.</li> <li>➤ No substance (i.e. cement, oil or bitumen) should be released to watercourses. Mixing of cement should take place on impervious surfaces and the areas for mixing should be controlled bermed areas. Catch nets must be installed to minimise cement and other debris (pollutants) from entering the delineated Wetland systems during the construction phase.</li> </ul>		

Construction phase						
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation Mitigation measures	Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation	Risk of the impact, without mitigation
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Site preparation, Vegetation Clearance.</li> <li>➤ Alien plants infestation within riparian areas.</li> </ul>				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The construction camp or materials storage area should not be located within 50m from any watercourses.</li> <li>➤ Any spillages (i.e. fuels, oils) and other potentially harmful chemicals should be cleaned up immediately, contaminants properly drained and disposed of using proper solid/hazardous waste facilities. Any contaminated soil must be removed, and the affected area rehabilitated immediately.</li> <li>➤ Portable toilets must be placed on impervious level surfaces that are lipped to prevent spillage. They must be at least</li> </ul>		

Construction phase						
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation Mitigation measures	Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation	Risk of the impact, without mitigation
				<p>50 m away from any watercourses.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Cut-off trenches must be constructed to prevent any harmful substances from entering any watercourses.</li> <li>➤ Litter traps should be installed at all storm water outlets. Silt traps or silt barriers should be placed adjacent to the wetland to prohibit discharge of silt into watercourses or delineated wetlands.</li> <li>➤ Materials storages, including stockpiling of materials should be done outside of the wetland/watercourse buffer zone (&gt;50m).</li> </ul>		

Construction phase								
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation
					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Training programs must provide information on material handling and spill prevention and response.</li> <li>➤ Storm water and any runoff generated by the road must be discharged into sustainable energy dissipation structures prior to being discharged back into the natural water courses. This must be designed and implemented by a qualified civil engineer.</li> </ul>			
➤ Bulk earthworks and excavations: operation of construction	Noise	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Noise nuisance (Irritation to sensitive receptors)</li> <li>➤ Loss of hearing aid.</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	➤ Construction noise should not exceed 85dB. Employees working on areas where noise may exceed the set level should	Nature	Negative	High
			Extent	2		Extent	1	
			Duration	2		Duration	2	
			Magnitude	8		Magnitude	4	

Construction phase								
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation
				Mitigation measures				
machinery for rock breaking. ➤ Movement of construction vehicles during construction working hours.		➤ Impaired communications may lead to accidental incidents.	Probability x	4	be provided with ear protection equipment. ➤ Construction activities must be limited to working hours (from 7am to 5p.m) during the week, not including public holidays. ➤ A noise complaints register must be kept on site.	Probability x	2	
			Outcome	48		Outcome	14	
			Significance	Medium		Significance	Low	
➤ Construction vehicles exhaust emissions. ➤ Construction activities including movement of construction vehicles, resulting in generation of dust.	Air Quality	➤ The generation of dust due to construction activities. ➤ Climate change related effects. ➤ Change in ambient air quality may cause respiratory disorders to sensitive receptors. ➤ Reduced visibility due to dust particles (PM <sub>10</sub> ).	Nature	Negative	➤ Speed limits should be implemented on working areas to limit the generation of dust by construction vehicles, this including at access routes (30km/h). ➤ Fire are prohibited in working areas to avoid generation of smoke.	Nature	Negative	High
			Extent	2		Extent	2	
			Duration	2		Duration	2	
			Magnitude	8		Magnitude	8	
			Probability x	5		Probability x	3	
			Outcome	60		Outcome	42	
			Significance	High		Significance	Medium	



Construction phase								
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation Mitigation measures		Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Uncontrolled fires.</li> <li>Evaporation from uncontrolled chemical storage areas.</li> </ul>					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Dust complaints register should be on site. The contractor should ensure that any complaints are recorded, with reasonable measures taken in addressing complaints.</li> <li>➤ Dust suppression measures should be implemented. Spraying water tank can be used; however, the water should be sprayed in a way it does not cause any runoff.</li> <li>➤ During windy conditions, construction vehicles carrying materials for construction should be covered.</li> </ul>			
	Waste		Nature	Negative		Nature	Negative	High

Construction phase								
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation
			Mitigation measures					
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Site clearance for construction activities.</li> <li>➤ Construction camp activities i.e. employee breaks and/or resting.</li> <li>➤ Construction activities: Installation of Solar panels and construction of the Operations and Maintenance centre and the associated infrastructure.</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Increased vector borne diseases.</li> <li>➤ Land pollution.</li> <li>➤ Surface and groundwater pollution.</li> <li>➤ Disturbed visual effects due to un-sightly areas.</li> </ul>	Extent	1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Construction waste, for instance unused concrete must be disposed of at a licensed Waste disposal facility/Landfill site.</li> <li>➤ Construction waste should be discarded at designated receptacles on site.</li> <li>➤ Litter bins and waste skips should be used for temporary discarding waste from site, however collection of waste to the landfill site should be undertaken on an agreed schedule with the local authority (municipality) or as a when required. An independent waste collection operator can alternatively be contracted for</li> </ul>	Extent	1	
			Duration	2		Duration	2	
			Magnitude	6		Magnitude	6	
			Probability x	4		Probability x	4	
			Outcome	36		Outcome	36	
			Significance	Medium		Significance	Medium	

Construction phase								
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation
					collection and disposal of waste. The receptacles should be clearly marked with the type of waste. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Proof of collection and proper waste disposal should be kept on site.</li> <li>➤ Waste should be separated on site (hazardous and non-hazardous).</li> <li>➤ Chemical spills should be contained and discarded to a licensed landfill site.</li> </ul>			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Bulk earthworks and excavation.</li> <li>➤ Location and Establishment of</li> </ul>	Visual Aesthetics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Temporary visual disturbances/intrusions.</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Bulk earthworks and excavations should be done in a phased manner, thus as per the</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	<b>High</b>
			Extent	2		Extent	2	
			Duration	2		Duration	2	
			Magnitude	6		Magnitude	6	

Construction phase								
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation
<p>construction camp and site office.</p> <p>➤ Use of lighting during construction activities.</p>		<p>➤ Accidental incidents due to impaired visions (lighting effects).</p>	Probability x	4	<p>proposed construction phasing schedule.</p> <p>➤ The location of the construction camp should not be located near sensitive receptors.</p> <p>➤ The construction site should be kept neat and tidy, free from inappropriately disposed waste.</p>	Probability x	2	
			Outcome	40		Outcome	20	
			Significance	Medium		Significance	Low	
<p>➤ Site Camp Establishment</p> <p>➤ Vegetation clearance for construction and installation of solar plant infrastructure.</p> <p>➤ Excavations, landscaping, and soil compaction</p>	Heritage Resources	Loss of resources with heritage significance and/or of high heritage sensitivity (this including artefacts, materials of 60 years and older).	Nature	Negative	<p>➤ Should any heritage resources be encountered on site during construction, activities should stop, and the Competent Authority be alerted for further investigations, prior to any work resuming on site. As an alternative a heritage specialist should be appointed for further investigation and communication</p>	Nature	Negative	High
			Extent	5		Extent	2	
			Duration	2		Duration	2	
			Magnitude	6		Magnitude	6	
			Probability x	5		Probability x	3	
			Outcome	65		Outcome	30	
			Significance	High		Significance	Medium	

Construction phase								
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Movement of construction equipment (machinery).</li> <li>➤ Grading for new access roads.</li> <li>➤ Uncontrolled spillages of hydrocarbons.</li> </ul>					<p>to the Competent Authority for clearance on construction activities to continue.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ A 50 metre buffer from the hill slope towards the development area should be implemented i.e. a fence can be installed between the buffer and the demarcation for the development footprint.</li> </ul>			
Movement of construction vehicles within the site and at access routes.	Traffic	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Increased traffic</li> <li>➤ Accidental incidents within the construction area and access routes.</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ All access routes to the site should be maintained and adherence to speed limits enforced.</li> <li>➤ Warning signs must be erected in instances where traffic disruption or diversion along access roads will occur.</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	Medium
			Extent	2		Extent	2	
			Duration	2		Duration	2	
			Magnitude	8		Magnitude	6	
			Probability x	3		Probability x	2	
			Outcome	36		Outcome	24	
			Significance	Medium		Significance	Low	

Construction phase									
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation	
					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ During construction safe points for pedestrian and vehicular crossing at designated points must be erected and controlled.</li> <li>➤ Maintain construction vehicular speed limit to 30km/h.</li> </ul>				
Site Establishment and installation of the solar plant associated infrastructure.	Camp	Employment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Skills transfer to local contractors and labourers.</li> <li>➤ Local economy boost due to temporary job opportunities.</li> </ul>	Nature	Positive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The contractor shall ensure that local labour is used where possible to improve the local economy of the area.</li> <li>➤ Skills transfer programme should be in place and implemented for unskilled labour.</li> </ul>	Nature	Positive	N/A
				Extent	2		Extent	2	
				Duration	2		Duration	2	
				Magnitude	8		Magnitude	8	
				Probability x	4		Probability x	5	
				Outcome	48		Outcome	60	
				Significance	Medium		Significance	High	

Construction phase									
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation	
				Mitigation measures					
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Site Establishment</li> <li>➤ Vegetation clearance for construction and installation of solar plant infrastructure.</li> <li>➤ Excavations, landscaping, and soil compaction</li> <li>➤ Movement of construction equipment (machinery).</li> <li>➤ Grading for new access roads.</li> </ul>	Camp	Health and Safety	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Occupational incidents resulting in injuries i.e. operation of heavy machinery by un-qualified personnel.</li> <li>➤ Spread of diseases.</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Signs on site must be erected on areas that require PPE.</li> <li>➤ Trenches which have been excavated must be condoned off to prevent injury to people who are not aware of their existence.</li> <li>➤ Emergency contact information should be provided and displayed at the contractor's office and site entrance.</li> <li>➤ The use of PPE should always be enforced on site. This includes visitors.</li> <li>➤ Measures to restrict un-authorized persons from entering the construction site, including the construction camp should be in place.</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	High
				Extent	2		Extent	2	
				Duration	2		Duration	2	
				Magnitude	8		Magnitude	8	
				Probability x	5		Probability x	3	
				Outcome	60		Outcome	36	
				Significance	High		Significance	Medium	

Construction phase						
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation Mitigation measures	Mitigation Measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation	Risk of the impact, without mitigation
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Uncontrolled spillages of hydrocarbons.</li> <li>➤ Construction camp (resting area).</li> </ul>				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Appropriate medical equipment must always be placed on onsite and made accessible.</li> <li>➤ An HIV/AIDS policy should be place and implemented by the contractor.</li> <li>➤ 24 Hour security must be provided at the construction site.</li> <li>➤ Appropriate signage board/s must be placed on site informing the public on construction activities taking place on site.</li> </ul>		



Table 14: Post-Construction phase.

Post construction phase								
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation
➤ Rehabilitation of disturbed development footprint during and post the construction phase	Construction site landscaping and clearing.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Degradation of water resources (Ground, surface and wetland)</li> <li>➤ Loss of indigenous vegetation</li> <li>➤ Infestation of Alien Invasive Plant species.</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Upon remediation, re-seeding of indigenous grasses should be implemented in all impacted areas and strategic planting of grassland species should take place;</li> <li>➤ As much vegetation growth as possible should be promoted surrounding the new development in order to protect soils. In this regard, special mention is made of the need to use indigenous vegetation species where hydro seeding and rehabilitation planting (where applicable) are to be implemented.</li> <li>➤ All disturbed habitat areas must be rehabilitated as soon as possible to ensure that floral ecology is reinstated.</li> <li>➤ Blocks of wetland vegetation and underlying soil along the trench through the wetland must be removed from the footprint of the trench and preserved to be returned into the same location once the trench is backfilled.</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	Medium
			Extent	2		Extent	2	
			Duration	2		Duration	2	
			Magnitude	8		Magnitude	8	
			Probability x	4		Probability x	2	
			Outcome	48		Outcome	24	
			Significance	Medium		Significance	Low	

Post construction phase							
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance without Mitigation	Rating	Mitigation measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation	Risk of the impact, without mitigation
					➤ Watercourse/ Wetland soils should not be compacted as this could alter the hydrology of the watercourse/wetland, restrict plant growth, and lead to erosion within the wetland.		

DRAFT

Table 15: Operational Phase

Operational phase								
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation
➤ Disturbed areas (construction activities and continued operational activities).	Alien Invasive Plants	➤ Increased of alien invasive species.	Nature	Negative	➤ Areas that will not be sealed should be rehabilitated and re-vegetate as soon as practically possible. ➤ Access roads and paved areas should be kept free of alien vegetation through routine maintenance. ➤ Herbicides should be carefully applied (in accordance with the Alien Invasive Programme) Spraying of herbicides within or near to any watercourses is strictly forbidden.	Nature	Negative	Medium
			Extent	2		Extent	2	
			Duration	2		Duration	2	
			Magnitude	8		Magnitude	6	
			Probability x	4		Probability x	2	
			Outcome	48		Outcome	18	
			Significance	Medium		Significance	Low	
➤ Maintenance of stormwater management systems.	Storm Water Management	➤ Increased sediment loads on watercourses (deterioration of watercourses/wetlands). ➤ Deterioration of aquatic ecosystems.	Nature	Negative	➤ Culverts and storm water drains should be monitored for blockages and other possible obstacles.	Nature	Negative	Medium
			Extent	1		Extent	1	
			Duration	2		Duration	2	
			Magnitude	6		Magnitude	6	
			Probability x	4		Probability x	3	
			Outcome	36		Outcome	27	
			Significance	Medium		Significance	Low	
➤ Operational activities for the solar plant (energy generation, this including day to day tasks).	Vegetation	Loss of indigenous flora.	Nature	Negative	➤ Illegal harvesting of plant species on site is prohibited. ➤ Landscaping of disturbed areas should make use of indigenous vegetation.	Nature	Negative	Medium
			Extent	2		Extent	2	
			Duration	4		Duration	4	
			Magnitude	4		Magnitude	4	
			Probability x	4		Probability x	3	
			Outcome	40		Outcome	30	
			Significance	Medium		Significance	Low	
	Fauna	Displacement and/or loss of faunal species.	Nature	Negative	➤ Vehicle speeds limits should be maintained on access roads.	Nature	Negative	Medium
			Extent	2		Extent	1	

Operational phase									
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation	
			Duration	4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Induction on environmental awareness should be undertaken for employees.</li> <li>➤ Illegal trapping, hunting and collection of faunal species is prohibited on site.</li> <li>➤ Use lighting for security and other activities only where required, with the preferred options of Yellow Sodium lights.</li> </ul>	Duration	2		
			Magnitude	6		Magnitude	6		
			Probability x	3		Probability x	3		
			Outcome	36		Outcome	27		
			Significance	Medium		Significance	Low		
	Surface and groundwater	Deterioration and/or Pollution on water resources.	Nature	Negative	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Clean up of large-scale hydrocarbons spillages because of accidents should be executed rapidly.</li> <li>➤ On-going water quality monitoring measures should be implemented.</li> <li>➤ Appropriate measures to dissipate flow velocity below structure must be considered and designed during pre-construction phase.</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	High	
			Extent	2		Extent	2		
			Duration	4		Duration	4		
			Magnitude	6		Magnitude	6		
			Probability x	3		Probability x	3		
			Outcome	36		Outcome	36		
			Significance	Medium		Significance	Medium		
	Infrastructure development	Increased and improved infrastructure : Renewable energy supply	Nature	Positive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Regular maintenance of the installed infrastructure should be implemented as required.</li> <li>➤ Safe disposal of deteriorated infrastructure should be implemented.</li> </ul>	Nature	Positive	N/A	
			Extent	3		Extent	3		
			Duration	4		Duration	4		
Magnitude			6	Magnitude		6			
Probability x			4	Probability x		4			
Outcome			52	Outcome		52			
Significance			Medium	Significance		Medium			
Resource use	Increased Water Use	Nature	Negative		Nature	Negative	Medium		

Operational phase									
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation	
			Extent	2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Regular Monitoring of infrastructure for leaks and malfunctions.</li> <li>➤ Systems/procedures in place for reporting infrastructure faults.</li> <li>➤ Landscaping, use of indigenous vegetation must be encouraged.</li> <li>➤ Grey water systems should be integrated into the Solar Plant.</li> </ul>	Extent	2		
			Duration	4		Duration	1		
			Magnitude	6		Magnitude	6		
			Probability x	4		Probability x	2		
			Outcome	48		Outcome	18		
			Significance	Medium		Significance	Low		
	Air quality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Dust generated from bare and/or exposed surfaces.</li> <li>➤ Positive contribution to climate change due to energy production from a renewable energy resource.</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ All unsurfaced and disturbed areas should be paved (permeable paving which allows for vegetation growth is recommended).</li> <li>➤ Infrastructure should be regularly serviced for an increased lifespan.</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	Medium	
			Extent	2		Extent	2		
			Duration	4		Duration	4		
			Magnitude	6		Magnitude	8		
			Probability x	3		Probability x	4		
			Outcome	36		Outcome	56		
			Significance	Medium	Significance	Medium			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Maintenance and storage facilities, including the operations and maintenance centre.</li> <li>➤ Operational activities for the solar plant (energy generation, this including day to day tasks).</li> </ul>	Health and Safety	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Fire incidents and/or outbreaks</li> <li>➤ Illness outbreaks</li> <li>➤ Accidental incidents, resulting in injuries or impairments</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The plant must be equipped with firefighting equipment which will include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Flame arresters</li> <li>○ Water sprinklers</li> <li>○ Gas/ Fire detection equipment</li> <li>○ Nitrogen and carbon dioxide blanketing equipment</li> <li>○ Foam spraying</li> </ul> </li> <li>➤ Staff and management must undergo basic firefighting training on an annual basis.</li> <li>➤ Regular fire drills must be undertaken.</li> </ul>	Nature	Negative	High	
			Extent	2		Extent	2		
			Duration	5		Duration	4		
			Magnitude	8		Magnitude	8		
			Probability x	4		Probability x	3		
			Outcome	60		Outcome	42		
			Significance	High	Significance	Medium			

Operational phase									
Activities	Theme	Potential Impacts	Significance Rating without Mitigation		Mitigation measures	Significance Rating with Mitigation		Risk of the impact, without mitigation	
					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Hygiene services should be contracted (alternatively), a personnel for cleaning services should be employed.</li> <li>➤ Access to the site should be controlled.</li> <li>➤ Health and Safety signs within the site, and the operations and maintenance centre should be in place.</li> </ul>				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Operational activities for the solar plant (energy generation, this including day to day tasks).</li> </ul>	Socio-Economic	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Permanent employment opportunities.</li> <li>➤ Investor opportunities as part of operations.</li> </ul>	Nature	Positive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Employment opportunities for the operational part of the plant should be provided to local residents.</li> </ul>	Nature	Positive	N/A	
			Extent	2		Extent	2		
			Duration	4		Duration	4		
			Magnitude	8		Magnitude	8		
			Probability x	4		Probability x	4		
			Outcome	56		Outcome	56		
			Significance	Medium		Significance	Medium		

## 7.2. Cumulative Impacts

In brief cumulative impacts refer to impacts that may be of low significance on their own, but become of high significance when added to similar impacts emanating from various sources in the surrounding area where an activity is undertaken. In line with the proposed project activities, possible cumulative impacts that may result are as follows:

- Positive – Less CO<sub>2</sub> emissions leading to climate change.
- Increased investor opportunities within the area, as a result of improved green infrastructure supply, this results in improved socio-economic activities within the area.
- Surface and groundwater pollution due to leachates from the disposal of end use solar panels and batteries.
- Habitat loss, in turn contributes to non-achievable long term conservation (CBA and ESA) goals (discontinued species connectivity).
- Gene flow of both flora and fauna disruptions within the area, as a result of sedimentation effects and altered moisture regimes.

The impacts as outlined above do not only affect the environment within the proposed site or surrounding area in terms of the Biophysical environment, but may also impact on the socio-economic aspects receiving environment.

## 8. PUBLIC PARTICIPATION

---

### 8.1. Objectives

The Public Participation Process (PPP) for the proposed project will be carried out in accordance with Chapter 6 of the National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998, as amended), and Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations 2014, as amended. Interested and Affected Parties are provided with an opportunity to raise their comments, from which the comments contribute towards the decision making process by the Competent Authority.

The following are the key objectives of the PPP:

- Identifying potential stakeholders and I&APs to be consulted with.
- Information sharing in terms of the proposed project with all identified I&APs and stakeholders.
- Ensure that all I&APs and stakeholders are given the opportunity to comment on the project in an unbiased manner.

The comments received from I&APs should will be captured and recorded to form part of the Scoping/EIA reports.

## 8.2. Stakeholder and Public Engagement.

The proposed public participation process to be undertaken as part of the application process for the environmental authorisation is outlined below. The commenting period and/or public review process is open from 26 January 2023 ending 27 February 2023.

The Background Information Document will be sent via email to the pre-identified stakeholders via email. The pre-identified stakeholders and interested and/or affected parties includes:

- The Department of Forestry Fisheries and Environment (DFFE).
- The Competent Authority (DENC).
- The Wedberg Community Association and Ward Councillor
- South African Heritage Resource Agency (SAHRA), including the Northern Cape Provincial Heritage Agency (NCPHA).
- Frances Baard District Municipality and Magareng Local Municipality.
- Eskom, National Energy Regulator of South Africa (NERSA) and the Department of Mineral Resources and Energy (DMRE).
- Adjacent land owners.

The legal requirements for the public participation process outlines the need to include additional, any other measures to ensure that the consultation process is extensive and sufficient in terms of process and notifications, thus the following other measures are applicable for the process:

- One local newspaper advert in the Diamond Fields Advertiser weekly newspaper.
- Site notices at the boundaries of the site and access roads.
- Notices to be placed at local tuck-shops and/shops, including public service areas i.e. clinic, the municipality and library.

**Note:** A pre-consultation meeting was held with the Department of Forestry, Fisheries and Environment on the 3<sup>rd</sup> September 2023, subsequently a meeting was held with the Northern Cape Environment and Nature Conservation (DENC) on the 05 October 2023. The purpose for the meeting was for the pre-consultation process to guide the type of Environmental Authorisation application and level of environmental assessment for the proposed project, this including the applicable Competent Authority (CA). The other aspect of the consultation meeting was to ascertain the relevance of the Renewable Energy Development Zone - Kimberly 5-Solar on the proposed project. The outcomes of the meetings were as follows: The relevant CA was decided as the



Northern Cape DENC, as the proposed project does not fall under the Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer projects and since the development falls outside of the REDZs, the Government Notice No. 114 in Government Gazette No. 41445 is not applicable for the proposed project.

### **8.3. Comments Received on BID**

The communication in terms of the BID to the pre-determined I&APs forms part of the PPP from the 26 January 2023 ending 27 February 2023.

### **8.4. Summary of Key Issues received on Scoping Report**

The Draft Scoping report and the Draft Environmental Management Programme report, as is this document and attached, are subjected to the PPP from the 26 January 2023 ending 27 February 2023. The comments received during the public consultation process as mentioned above, will be captured in the issues and response report as part of the final Scoping report to be submitted to the CA.

## **9. PROPOSED PLAN OF STUDY FOR EIA**

---

The proposed approach for the Environmental Impact Assessment phase as part of the Environmental Authorisation application process, is guided by the National Environmental Management Act No.107 of 1998 (as amended), EIA Regulations 2014 (as amended) - Appendix 2 (i).

The EIA processes to be undertaken as part of the assessment are outline below:

### **9.1. Method of assessing environmental aspects**

In addition to the method for evaluation of identified potential environmental impacts, the following method for assessing environmental aspects associated with the proposed project activities includes but not limited to the following:

- Applications of the various assessment tools, including analysis in relation to the proposed project activities i.e. National Screening Tool, the various guidelines included under Chapter 2, Legal and Other requirements.
- Desktop Literature review and application of similar, comparative assessments, this including written citations, journals and research work, related to the solar project activities.

- Best known environmental management tools and literature review and application in relation to the proposed project activities.
- Specialist reports review and application of recommendations.

The other critical aspect of the method for assessing the environmental aspects associated with the project activities includes field surveys, with pictorial evidence of the receiving environment current state, to confirm results of the desktop assessment in terms of any geographical assessments, include any other applied spatial tools results i.e. Google Earth, ESRI, Environmental Management Frameworks and Spatial Development Frameworks.

## **9.2. Consultation with the Competent Authority**

The consultation process with the Competent Authority throughout the EIA process, is vital as the Competent Authority (DENC) is the organ of state which provides the ultimate decision in terms of the application for Environmental Authorisation. The aim of the consultation process is to keep it as constant leading towards the granting of the decision on the environmental authorisation.

Before the inception of the application process, the first consultation with DENC was held on the 05 October 2022.

The subsequent stages of the application process to follow, post the consulting with the Competent Authority are as outlined below:

- Submission of the draft and final Scoping Report for comments and approval, as part of the public consultation process.
- Submission of the Draft EIR report, after amendments, as per the Public Participation Process
- Submission of the Final EIR report, post amendments for a decision on the environmental authorisation process.

Other Authorities to be consulted throughout the application process are as follows:

- Ward Councilors, Magareng Local Municipality, Heritage Resources Agency (Northern Cape), National Energy Regulator of South Africa (NERSA), Department of Water and Sanitation and the South African Heritage Resources Agency, including any other authorities to be identified during the public participation process.

The other I&APs will be identified through the public consultation process which starts from the 26 January 2023 ending 27 February 2023.

### 9.3. Proposed Public Participation for Scoping/EIA phase.

The main aim of the first phase for scoping report is to identify potential stakeholders and I&APs. Regular consultation with the identified stakeholders and I&APs will be carried out through Scoping and EIA phase, leading to the final stages of the application process wherein the decision for the Environmental Authorisation application is issued by the CA. The consultation entails information sharing with all identified I&APs and stakeholders, including an opportunity to provide comments where applicable on the documents available for public comments on the proposed project activities. As part of the compliance requirements, all comments received will be responded to and capture in the comments and response report for consideration by the CA.

The following consultation process steps are applicable:

- Written notification will be sent to I&APs, the identified stakeholders and municipal authorities on the Draft Scoping Report and Draft EMP. The selected methods for communications are via email, post and Google forms (for registration as an Interested and/or Affected party and providing comments). The Public Participation Process will last for 30 days as per the NEMA No. 107 of 1998, as amended, EIA regulations 2014, as amended.
- Draft copies of the reports will be placed at local libraries (Warrenton and Kimberly library), this including the Background Information Document, notices providing a brief outline of the proposed project activities including information on the Public Participation Process.
- Site notices will be placed on site (all boundaries of the site). The other notices will be placed at local spaza shops, police station, local filling stations where applicable and the local municipality offices. In addition to the above, notices will also be sent to the relevant stakeholders via email i.e. the Wedberg Community Association, the local authority (ward Councillor), the different other authorities (NERSA, ESKOM, DFFE, the district municipality and the local municipality).
- One local newspaper notice will be published on the Diamond Field Advertiser.
- Comments / issues raised by I&APs during the Public Participation Process, will be captured in an Issues and Response Report (IRR). The final IRR will include and address all issues/ comments raised during the Scoping and EIA phases, and will constitute an important component of both the Scoping report and the EIA report. The report will be an ongoing record of stakeholder issues raised throughout the process.

The information above will be communicated in English as a standard language; however Tholoana Environmental Consulting will also take other reasonable measures where applicable to ensure that any other preferred language is utilised during the Public Participation Process.

#### **9.4. Proposed EIA specialist studies.**

As part of the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA), it is important to undertake certain specialist studies. The following specialists assessments are applicable as part of the scoping/EIA phase application process: Ecological Assessment, Desktop Heritage Impact Assessment, Palaeontological Impact Assessment, Geotechnical and Geo-hydrological investigation, Land Survey and the Wetland Assessment. All the recommendations as per the studies conducted will be integrated into the EIA and EMPr to ensure minimal environmental impact by the proposed project activities. The draft reports of the specialist studies are attached as part of the Scoping phase for public review and comments.

##### **9.4.1. Detail on specialist studies**

- **Heritage Impact Assessment**

A desktop Heritage Impact Assessment was conducted by Millenium Heritage Group (Pty) Ltd. The findings of the survey revealed that there is a historical site was geo-referenced near the hill slope area (Boskop), with features such as rectangular house foundations, ash midden with broken porcelain, rusted iron pieces and stone walled enclosures, determined as of high sensitivity.

The assessment forms part of the Scoping/EIA phase for scrutiny and public comments and is attached as Appendix H.

- **Wetland Assessment**

The Wetland Assessment and Delineation was completed by Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd, the report dated November 2022. Based on findings, one Hydro-Geomorphic (HGM) unit (a flat wetland) was delineated on site and a dry valley towards the Northern side of the site. A buffer zone of 100m is recommended for the delineated flat wetland, thus no activities are allowed within the buffer area, as a result all the infrastructure for the proposed project should be outside of the buffer zone. Furthermore, the investigation recommends approval of the proposed project, on the basis that recommendations as provided within the specialist report and the environmental assessments are implemented. The report is attached as Appendix H.

- **Ecological Assessment**

An ecological assessment report for the proposed River View Solar Plant in the remaining extent of Portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15 district Kimberly Rd, was conducted by Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd, dated December 2022.

As part of the findings the following floral species were determined on site, *Acacia mellifera* (Black thorn), *Boerhavia diffusa*, *Acacia tortilis*, *Eragrostis racemosa*, *Cyperus prolifer*, *Opuntia robusta*, *Schinus molle*, *Typha capensis*, *Tamarix ramosissima*, *Ailanthus altissima*, *Eragrostis spp.*, *Searsia lancea*, *Arundo donax*, *Ziziphus mucronata* and *Argemone ochroleuca*. The floral species as determined falls within the Kimberley Thornveld (SVk4) and Thornveld (SVk6) grasslands.

The study determined the following species associated with the study area: Speckled pigeon (*Columba guinea*), *Euplectes oris* (Southern Red Bishop), *Crithagra atrogularis* (Black-Throated Canary), *Potamochoerus larvatus* (Bushpig) and *Tragelaphus strepsiceros* (Kudu). The recommendation on the conducted assessment includes the approval of the proposed project, as the CBA and ESA within the site, with consideration of the determined floral and faunal species will not be impacted on by the project activities. Furthermore, the site is degraded by previous anthropogenic activities i.e. agricultural and mining. The report is attached as Appendix H.

- **Additional studies**

The following pending studies will be commissioned as part of the EIA phase: Palaeontological Impact Assessment (PIA), Geotechnical and Geo-hydrological investigation the Scoping/EIA phase

## 10. CONCLUSION

---

The Draft Scoping report and Draft EMPr has been prepared in line with the NEMA No. 107 of 1998 (as amended), EIA regulations 2014 (as amended). Furthermore the report provided a brief description of the proposed project and its entire associated infrastructure. In relation to the activities, most of the potential impacts on the Biophysical and socio-economic environment were highlighted. The various studies applicable for this assessment are done, pending comments from the Public consultation process. The Draft Scoping report is subject to the Public review process, from which the submission of the final report will be done to the CA for a decision.

In addition to the above, the report stipulates the plan of study for the EIA phase of the process to be followed. The EIA study will entail further assessments if required as per the comments received from the stakeholders, the CA and I&APs. It is the view of the EAP that this report be approved on final submission to the CA, this to be followed by the EIA phase for a more depth assessment.

Mr Vusmuzi Hlatshwayo

Name of EAP



Signature

26 January 2023

Date

## REFERENCES

- Cape-Ducluzeau, L. and van der Westhuizen, C., 2015, April. Strategic environmental assessment for renewable energy in South Africa-Renewable energy development zones (REDZs). In Unpublished paper, annual conference of the international association for impact assessment, Florence, 20e23 April.
- Cape-Ducluzeau, L., 2015. The Wind and Solar SEA analyses, focusing on the biodiversity component.
- Duffy, A., Rogers, M. and Ayompe, L., 2015. Renewable energy and energy efficiency: assessment of projects and policies. John Wiley & Sons.
- Department of Environmental Affairs, Forestry and Fisheries, 2019. National Screening report for the Proposed River View Solar Plant.
- Department of Environmental Affairs, 2017. Public Participation Guideline in Terms of National Environmental Management Act, 1998 Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations.
- Environmental Assessment of Energy and Industry Projects, Washington D.C. USA.
- Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd, 2022. Ecological Report for the Proposed River View Solar Plant on the remaining extent of Portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15, Kimberly RD.
- Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd, 2019, Wetland Assessment and Delineation Report in support of the Proposed River View Solar Plant on the remaining extent of Portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15, Kimberly RD.
- Millenium Heritage Group (Pty) Ltd, 2019. Phase 1: Archaeological Impact Assessment Relating to the proposed River View Solar Plant on the remaining extent of Portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15, Kimberly RD, near Windsorton within Magareng Local Municipality of the Frances Baard District, Northern Cape Province, South Africa.
- MUCINA L. & RUTHERFORD M. C. (2006). Vegetation Map of South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland, 1:1 000 000 scale sheet maps. South African National Biodiversity Institute., Pretoria;
- South Africa, 2017. Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014 (as amended).
- South Africa, 1998. National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act no.107 of 1998) (as amended).
- South Africa, 1999. National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act no..25 of 1999).
- South Africa, 1998(b). National Water Act, 1998 (Act no. 36 of 1998).
- Statistics South Africa: Census 2011
- [www.accuweather.com](http://www.accuweather.com)

## SECTION F: APPENDIXES

---

The following appendixes must be attached:

Appendix A: Maps

Appendix B: Photographs

Appendix C: Facility illustration(s)

Appendix D: Specialist reports (including terms of reference)

Appendix E: Public Participation

Appendix F: Impact Assessment

Appendix G: Environmental Management Programme (EMPr)

Appendix H: Details of EAP and expertise

Appendix I: Specialist's declaration of interest

Appendix J: Additional Information

DRAFT









## Appendix A: Maps

# River Solar Plant

Locality Map

## Legend

-  Access Road
-  Boskop Buffer Area
-  Project Footprint
-  Proper Area 300Ha (RE:PTN 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15)
-  Remaining Extent Portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15.
-  Windsorton

Section A - 107Ha, 28°19'29.68"S, 24°44'43.32"E

Section B - 75Ha, 28°19'54.83"S, 24°45'59.95"E

Remaining Extent Portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15.

R374

R374

R374

Windsorton Road

12

Google Earth

Image © 2023 Maxar Technologies  
Image © 2023 CNES / Airbus



5 km

## Appendix B: Photographs



*Figure 1 : North East View of the site*





*Figure 2 : Western Section of the site*



*Figure 3 : North Western side of site*



*Figure 4 : South section of the site: Section B*





*Figure 5 : North East section of the site (Section B)*







*Figure 6 : West Section of the site*

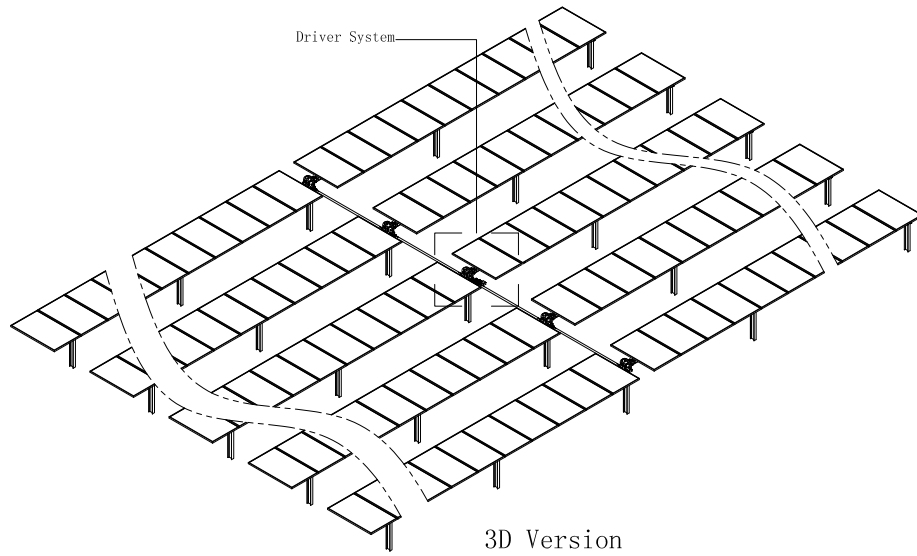


*Figure 7: Boskop*

## Appendix C: Facility illustration(s)

Customer Approval	
Signature	Date

Security Classification		
Privacy	✓	Publicity
Unit	mm	



3D Version

Parameter Declaration:

- 1、Tracker Type: Single -Axis PowerLink.
- 2、Angle Range:  $0^{\circ}$  to  $\pm 45^{\circ}$  (or  $\pm 60^{\circ}$ ).
- 3、Tracking Accuratiog:  $\leq 2^{\circ}$ .
- 4、Protecting Wind Load: 20m/s(3s).
- 5、Reverse Tracking: Yes.
- 6、Communication Mode: RS485.
- 7、Anti - erosion Protection: Hot Galvanized Protection.

**A**

The following soilayer is not applicable to the Type A foundation:

- 1、 High-PH Corrosive soil;
- 2、 More humus or the backfill with no more than 5 years;
- 3、 Geological soils with standard penetration values (N) greater than 30;
- 4、 Rock layer.

**A Note:**

- 1、 Mod Min Height: 500mm, Underground Depth:2000mm.Column Length:3000mm(recommanded) .
- 2、 Above data is for reference only. All of them will be based on the practctice measurement and the design.

**B**

The following soilayer is not applicable to the Type B foundation:

Not.

**B Note:**

- 1、 Mod Min Height :500mm.(Prestressed pipe pile)/(Concrete foundation)Height :300mm. Underground Depth:2000mm.(recommanded).Harsh geology or soil can choose B type foundation; Concrete pipe pile foundation orConcrete foundation and its accessories to be customer-owned.
- 2、 Above data is for reference only. All of them will be based on the practctice measurement and the design..

Architect:

Developer:

Notes:

- 1.Ruler is not allowed to be used to measure the drawing, and all should be in conformity to the labels on the drawing.
- 2.Please refer to the construction drawing and other relevant drawings. Please inform the designer when there is any discrepancies.
- 3.The information contained in this document is the proprietary information of Powerway. By reading details of this document, the recipient of this document agrees that he/she will not at any time, during or after, the termination of its relationship with Powerway, directly or indirectly, reveal, disseminate or disclose any such information to any unrelated person. Reproduction, copy, photograph of this document is strictly prohibited unless with prior written approval of Powerway.

Change Record :

Remark	Amendment	Sign	Date

DRAWN: V1.0

Project Name:  
PowerWay Tracker Product

Design	Glenn
Check	Jim
Verify	Sven
Approval	Sven
Chief	--
Design Stage	Preliminary design
Scale	1:100
Drawing Title	PowerLink Tracker
Drawing No.	PowerLink-01
Date	2017



Customer Approval	
Signature	Date

Security Classification		
Privacy	✓	Publicity
Unit	mm	



Architect:

Developer:

Notes:

1. Ruler is not allowed to be used to measure the drawing, and all should be in conformity to the labels on the drawing.
2. Please refer to the construction drawing and other relevant drawings. Please inform the designer when there is any discrepancies.
3. The information contained in this document is the proprietary information of Powerway. By reading details of this document, the recipient of this document agrees that he/she will not at any time, during or after, the termination of its relationship with Powerway, directly or indirectly, reveal, disseminate or disclose any such information to any unrelated person. Reproduction, copy, photograph of this this document is strictly prohibited unless with prior written approval of Powerway.

Change Record :

Remark	Amendment	Sign	Date

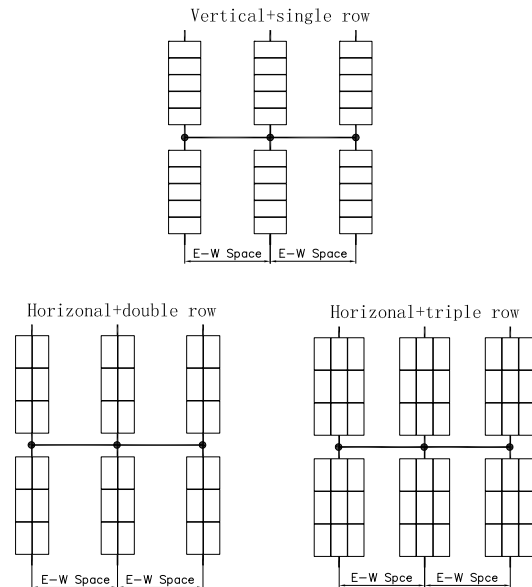
DRAWN: V1.0

Project Name:  
PowerWay Tracker Product

Design	Glenn
Check	Jim
Verify	Sven
Approval	Sven
Chief	--
Design Stage	Preliminary design
Scale	1:100
Drawing Title	PowerLink Tracker
Drawing No.	PowerLink-02
Date	2017

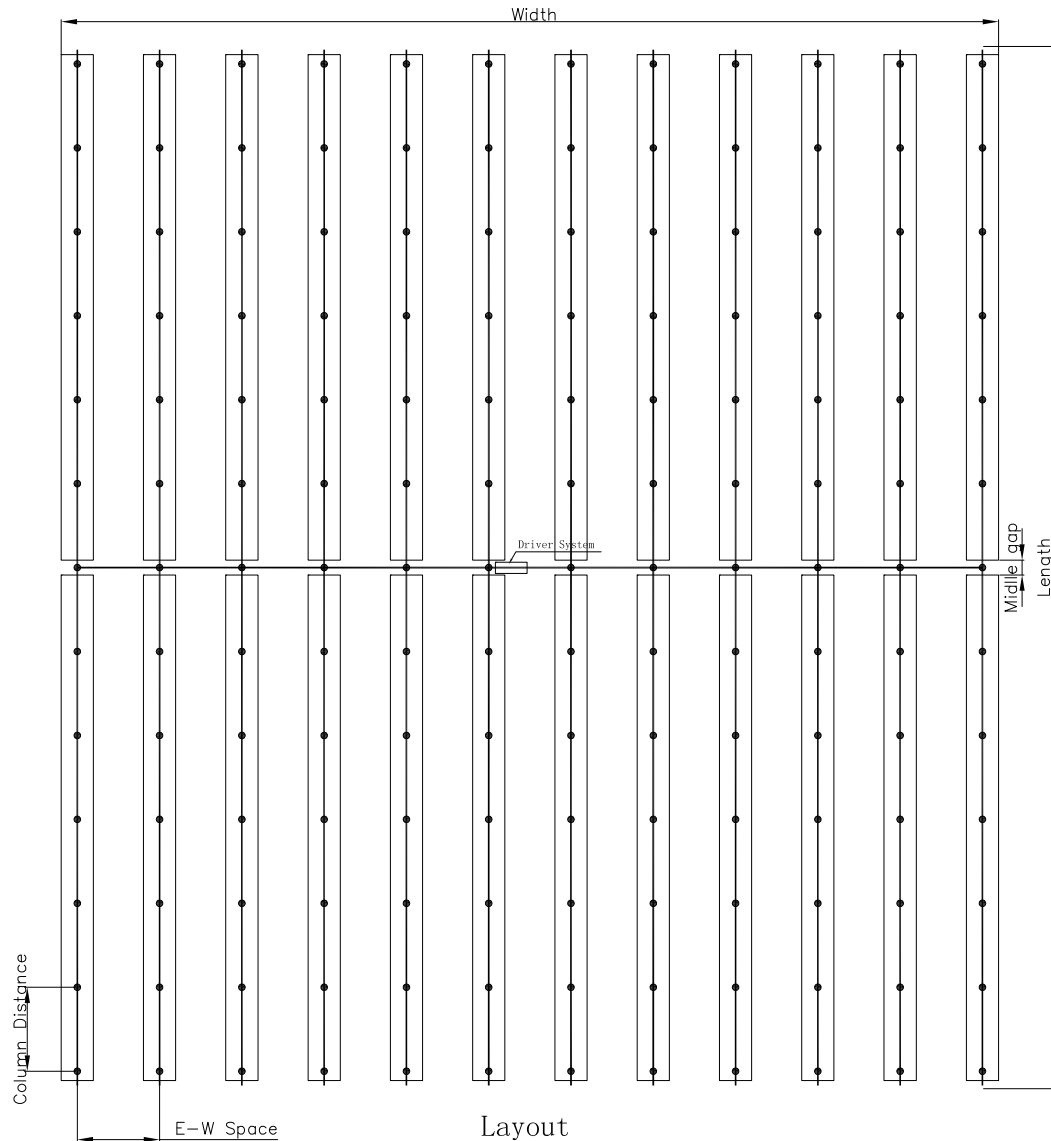


PV Module Direction:



Note:

1. For the vertical-placed module table (1\*number of modules a single module\*row): 1\*60\*12 (recommended), and the module power over 300Wp, vertical+single row will be applied.
2. For the horizontal-placed module table (N\*number of modules in a single module\*row): 2\*30\*12/3\*30\*12 (recommended), while the module power less than 300Wp, horizontal+double/triple row is advised.
3. The layout is compliant to different size of monocrystalline, polysilicon, membrane PV module.
4. Column Distance: 5100mm~6100mm (recommended)
5. Middle gap: 900mm (recommended)
6. E-W Space: 5000mm (recommended)
7. Above data is for reference only. All of them will be based on the practice measurement and design.



Layout

Binding Line

Customer Approval	
Signature	Date

Security Classification			
Privacy	✓	Publicity	
Unit	mm		



Architect:

Developer:

Notes:

1. Ruler is not allowed to be used to measure the drawing, and all should be in conformity to the labels on the drawing.
2. Please refer to the construction drawing and other relevant drawings. Please inform the designer when there is any discrepancies.
3. The information contained in this document is the proprietary information of Powerway. By reading details of this document, the recipient of this document agrees that he/she will not at any time, during or after, the termination of its relationship with Powerway, directly or indirectly, reveal, disseminate or disclose any such information to any unrelated person. Reproduction, copy, photograph of this document is strictly prohibited unless with prior written approval of Powerway.

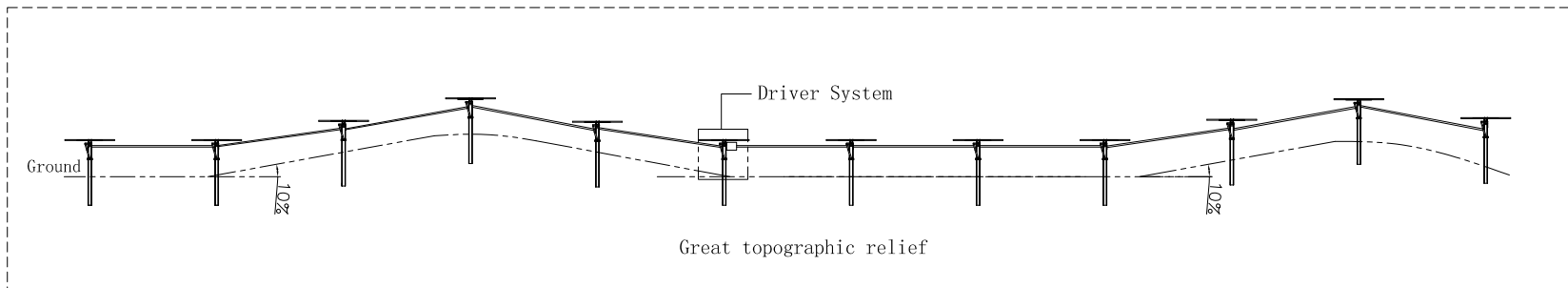
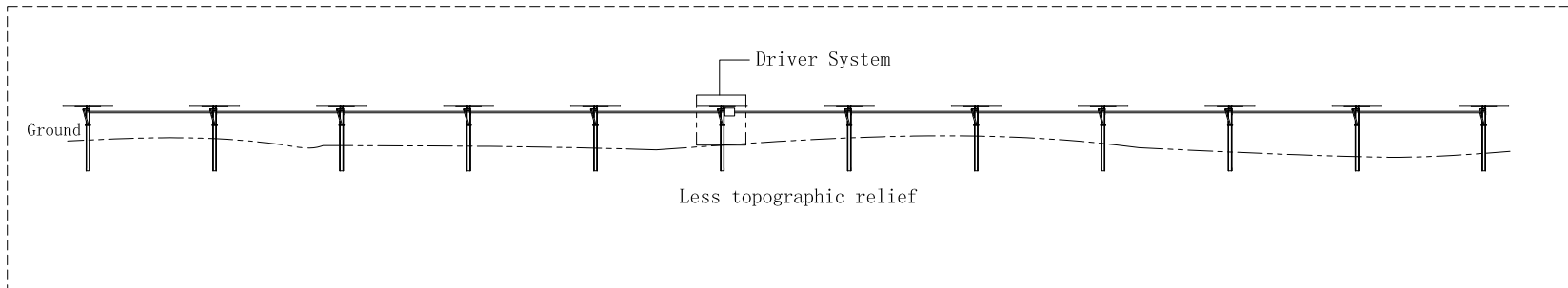
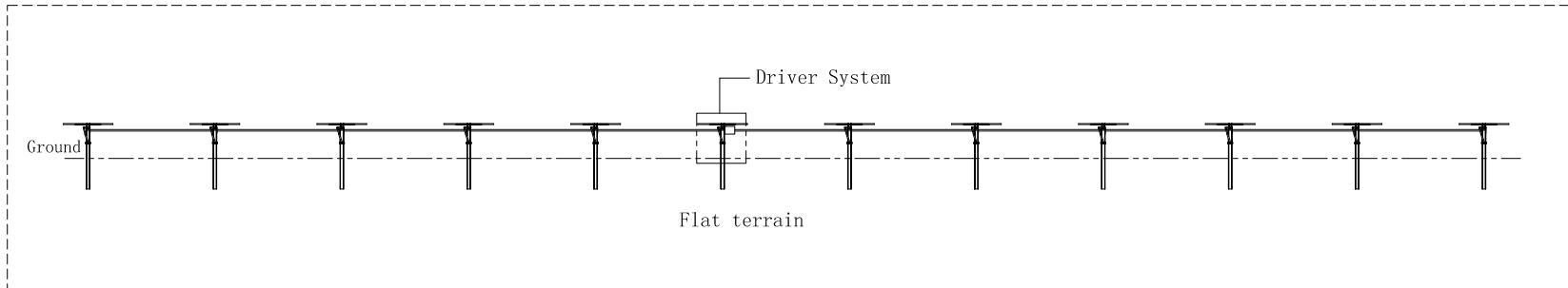
Change Record :

Remark	Amendment	Sign	Date

DRAWN: V1.0

Project Name:  
PowerWay Tracker Product

Design	Glenn
Check	Jim
Verify	Sven
Approval	Sven
Chief	--
Design Stage	Preliminary design
Scale	1:100
Drawing Title	PowerLink Tracker
Drawing No.	PowerLink-03
Date	2017



- Note:
1. Tracker can be applied to the terrain with continuous flat, less or great topographic relief within 10% in west-east direction.
  2. Tracker can only accept the terrain fluctuation within 10% in west-east direction.

Terrain adjustment in west-east direction

Binding Line

Customer Approval	
Signature	Date

Security Classification			
Privacy	✓	Publicity	
Unit	mm		



Architect:

Developer:

Notes:

1. Ruler is not allowed to be used to measure the drawing, and all should be in conformity to the labels on the drawing.
2. Please refer to the construction drawing and other relevant drawings. Please inform the designer when there is any discrepancies.
3. The information contained in this document is the proprietary information of Powerway. By reading details of this document, the recipient of this document agrees that he/she will not at any time, during or after, the termination of its relationship with Powerway, directly or indirectly, reveal, disseminate or disclose any such information to any unrelated person. Reproduction, copy, photograph of this document is strictly prohibited unless with prior written approval of Powerway.

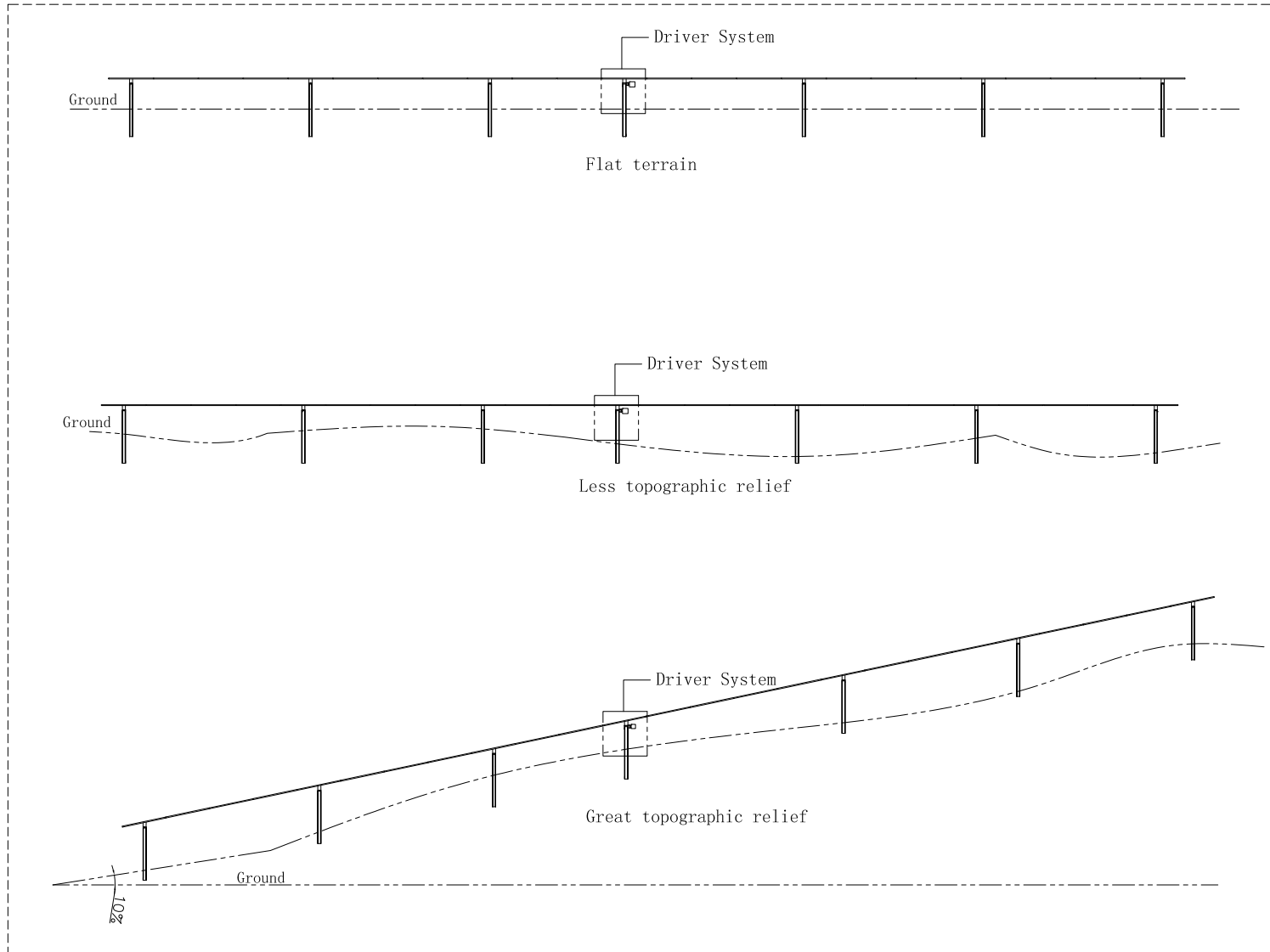
Change Record :

Remark	Amendment	Sign	Date

DRAWN: V1.0

Project Name:  
PowerWay Tracker Product

Design	Glenn
Check	Jim
Verify	Sven
Approval	Sven
Chief	--
Design Stage	Preliminary design
Scale	1:100
Drawing Title	PowerLink Tracker
Drawing No.	PowerLink-04
Date	2017



- Note:
1. Tracker can be applied to the terrain with continuous flat, less or great topographic relief within 10% in south-north direction.
  2. Tracker can only accept the terrain fluctuation within 10% in west-east direction.

Terrain adjustment in south-north direction

Binding Line



Customer Approval	
Signature	Date

Security Classification		
Privacy	✓	Publicity
Unit	mm	



Architect:

Developer:

Notes:

1. Ruler is not allowed to be used to measure the drawing, and all should be in conformity to the labels on the drawing.
2. Please refer to the construction drawing and other relevant drawings. Please inform the designer when there is any discrepancies.
3. The information contained in this document is the proprietary information of Powerway. By reading details of this document, the recipient of this document agrees that he/she will not at any time, during or after, the termination of its relationship with Powerway, directly or indirectly, reveal, disseminate or disclose any such information to any unrelated person. Reproduction, copy, photograph of this document is strictly prohibited unless with prior written approval of Powerway.

Change Record :

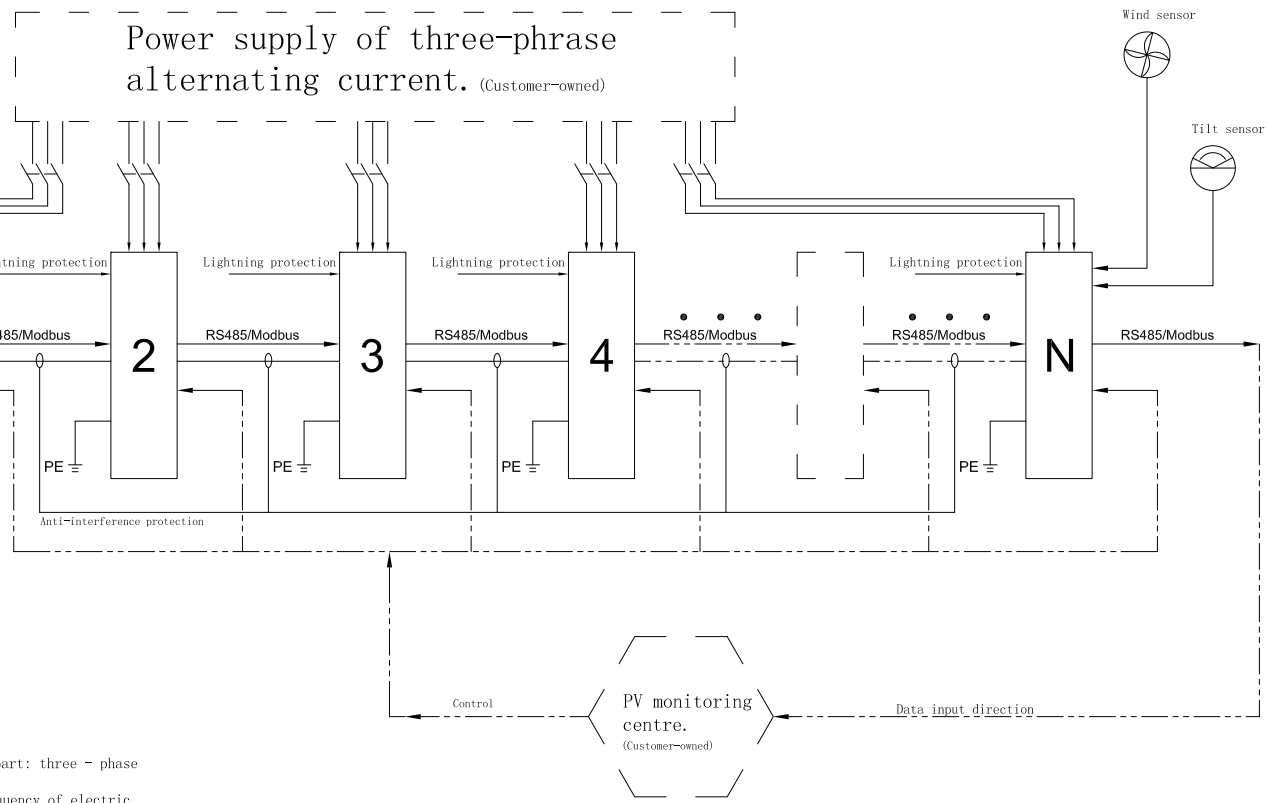
Remark	Amendment	Sign	Date

DRAWN: V1.0

Project Name:  
PowerWay Tracker Product

Design	Glenn
Check	Jim
Verify	Sven
Approval	Sven
Chief	--
Design Stage	Preliminary design
Scale	1:100
Drawing Title	PowerLink Tracker
Drawing No.	PowerLink-05
Date	2017

Lightning protection



Note:

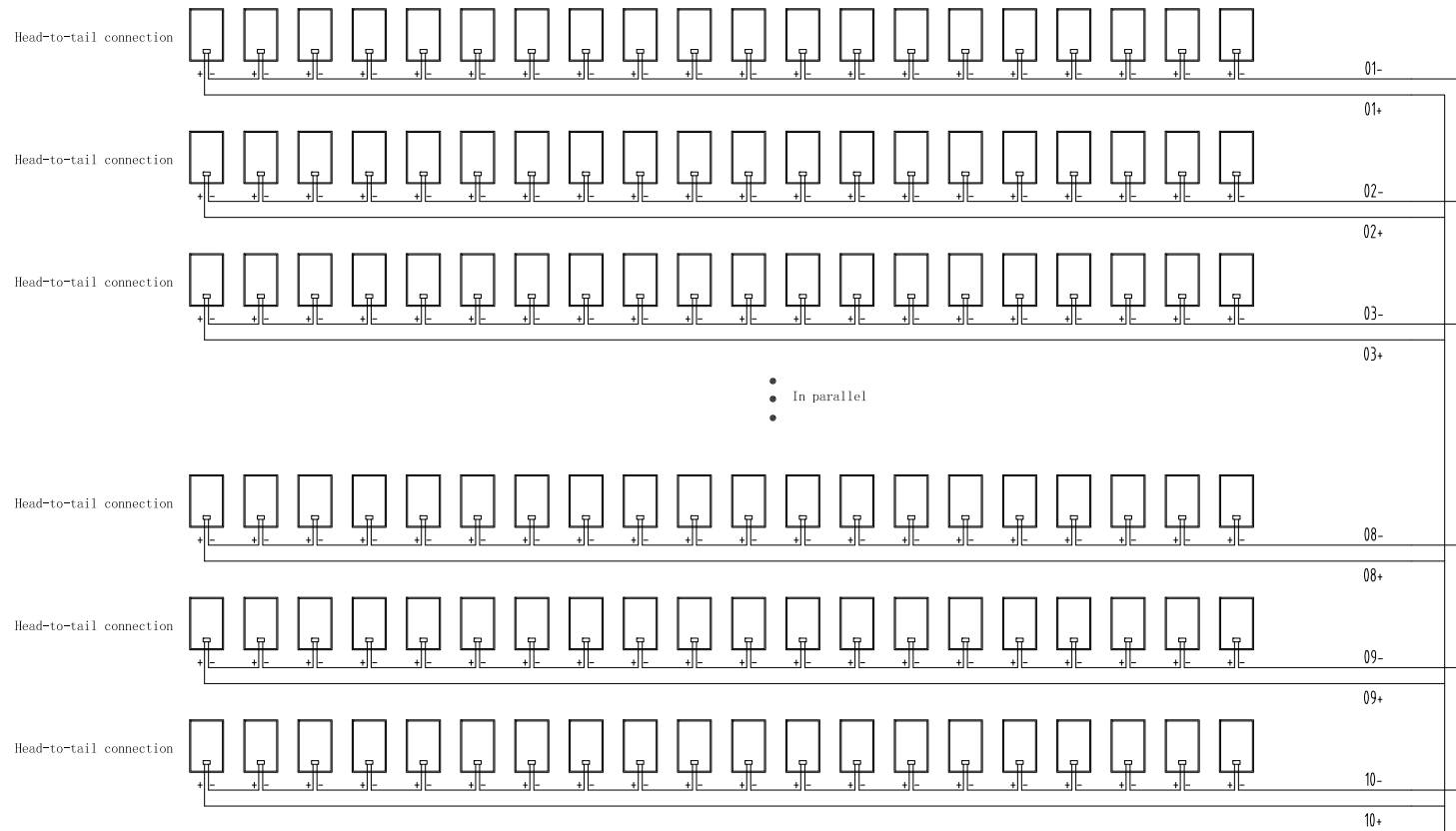
1. Power supply of the electric control part: three - phase alternating current 380VAC/480VAC, frequency:50HZ/60HZ;Aggregate demand frequency of electric control part and motor is 2KW; three-phase cable+PE wire.
2. Tracker supports the features, including: winde sensor , tilt sensor, rain cleaning, snow cleaning, flatten, lightning probe tecton,etc.
3. Customer needs to provide three-phase cable,communication wire, PE wire and the PV monitoring centre, connecting three - phase alternating current and the electric control. Tracker tracker only owns the interface for its own data output.

Electric control principles & communication explanation

Binding Line

Customer Approval	
Signature	Date

Security Classification	
Privacy	✓
Publicity	
Unit	mm



PV Wiring Type

Convergence box or inverter, and installation structure for convergence box or inverter will be prepared by user or purchased separately.

- Note:
1. Module wires head-to-tail connection or cross-connect does not affect the tracker layout.
  2. Above wire series types is only for reference.

Architect:

Developer:

Notes:

1. Ruler is not allowed to be used to measure the drawing, and all should be in conformity to the labels on the drawing.
2. Please refer to the construction drawing and other relevant drawings. Please inform the designer when there is any discrepancies.
3. The information contained in this document is the proprietary information of Powerway. By reading details of this document, the recipient of this document agrees that he/she will not at any time, during or after, the termination of its relationship with Powerway, directly or indirectly, reveal, disseminate or disclose any such information to any unrelated person. Reproduction, copy, photograph of this document is strictly prohibited unless with prior written approval of Powerway.

Change Record :

Remark	Amendment	Sign	Date

DRAWN: V1.0

Project Name:  
PowerWay Tracker Product

Design	Glenn
Check	Jim
Verify	Sven
Approval	Sven
Chief	--
Design Stage	Preliminary design
Scale	1:100
Drawing Title	PowerLink Tracker
Drawing No.	PowerLink-06
Date	2017

Binding Line

## Appendix D: Specialist reports (including terms of reference)

# ECOLOGICAL ASSESSMENT



1262 Embankment Road | Centurion 0157 | Email: mftshiala@maanakana.co.za | web site: maanakana.co.za |  
Tel/Cell: 0836691702

---

**ECOLOGICAL ASSESSMENT REPORT FOR THE PROPOSED RIVER VIEW SOLAR PLANT IN THE  
REMAINING EXTENT OF PORTION 3 OF THE FARM RIETPUTS 15**

**Compiled**

**by**

**Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd**

**for**

**Tholoana Consulting on behalf of  
Ikomkhulu Solar Plant**



**December 2022**

**Copyright**

---

Copyright in all text and other matter is the exclusive property of the author. It is a criminal offence to reproduce and/or use, without written consent, any matter, technical procedure and/or technique contained in this document. Criminal and civil proceedings will be taken as a matter of strict routine against any person and/or institution infringing the copyright of the author and/or proprietors. This document may not be modified other than by the author and when incorporated into overarching studies, it should be included in its entirety as an appendix to the main report.

**DOCUMENT CONTROL AND PROJECT TEAM**

<b>CLIENT</b>		<b>SPECIALIST</b>
<b>Tholoana Consulting on behalf of Ikomkhulu Solar Plant</b>		<b>Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd</b>
Contact	Ms Zodwa Joyce	Dr Milambo Freddy Tshiala
Contact details	<b>Tel/Cell:</b> <b>Email</b>	<b>Tel/Cell:</b> 0836691702 <b>Email:</b> <a href="mailto:maanakanaprojects@gmail.com">maanakanaprojects@gmail.com</a>
	<b>SPECIALIST NAMES</b>	<b>SIGNATURES</b>
<b>Fieldwork Specialist &amp; Report Writing</b>	Dr Milambo Freddy Tshiala (BSc Hon. in Agriculture, MSc & PhD in Environment and Society (Pr.Sci.Nat.: 4000021/18))	
<b>Report Reviewer 1</b>	Nonkanyiso Zungu (BSc Hon. Ecology, MSc. Env. Mngt, PhD Candidate) (Pr.Sci.Nat.:400194/10)	
<b>Draft Report Ref. No.</b>	MPC02/2022	30-11- 2022
<b>Final Report Ref.No.</b>		

## DECLARATION

We, Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd, in our capacity as a specialist consultant, hereby declare that we:

- Act as an independent consultant;
- Do not have any financial interest in the undertaking of the activity, other than remuneration for the work performed in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998);
- Undertake to disclose to the competent authority, any material and/or information that has or may have the potential to influence the decision of the competent authority or the objectivity of any report, plan or document required in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998);
- As a registered member of the South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions, will undertake our profession in accordance with the Code of Conduct of the Council, as well as any other societies to which we are members; and
- Based on information provided to us by the project proponent, and in addition to the information obtained during desktop study, fieldwork investigations have presented the results and conclusion to the best of our professional judgment.



Dr Milambo Freddy Tshiala

.....

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Based on the findings of the ecological assessment, it is the opinion of the ecologist that from an ecological point of view, the proposed project be considered favourably mainly because the proposed area has been transformed with the anthropogenic activities, such as animal grazing and mining activities. Despite that, all essential mitigation measures and recommendations presented in this report should be adhered to, ensure that the ecology within the proposed development area is protected and the rehabilitation will be considered should the need arise. This approach will minimise the deviations from the present ecological state. Particular attention needs to be paid to the location and the extent of sensitive terrestrial habitat to ensure that development-related activities do not unnecessarily encroach into these zones and that the ongoing functionality of these systems is guaranteed.

Maanakana Projects and Consulting was appointed by Tholoana Consulting on behalf of Ikomkhulu Solar Plant to undertake the Ecological Assessment for the Remaining Extent of Portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15, which falls within Kimberley Thornveld (SVk 4) and small portion falls in Schmidtsdrif Thornveld (SVk6).

The ecological assessment was conducted within the proposed site. The purpose of this report is to guide and inform the Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP) of the ecological sensitivities when conducting an Environmental Impact Assessment.

## **Floral and Faunal Assessments**

The fieldwork for conducting ecological assessment took place on the 12<sup>th</sup> of November 2022 over approximately 400 Hectares (Ha) of the area of the proposed project. The evaluation on the proposed area focused on the faunal species and floral species such as small trees, woody climbers, tall shrubs, geoxylic suffrutex, graminoids, geophytic herbs, and herbs, succulent and low shrubs. During pre-construction, the contractor must follow mitigation measures proposed in this report to reduce excessive loss of vegetation and soil erosion.

## **Impact Assessment and Conclusion**

The specialist took into consideration the proposed activity from planning to construction. The appointed Environmental Control Officer (ECO) should ensure that mitigation measures are adequate to protect the sensitive area within the study footprint during construction. The following are some of the main envisaged impacts:

- Introduction of alien species;
- Faunal displacement

## **Recommendations**

- The specialist recommends the approval of the project.
- The developer should employ an Environmental Control Officer (ECO) to monitor activities and ensure that activities aligned with the conditions set out by the Competent Authority and Environmental Management Programme (EMPr).
- Any animals rescued or recovered will be relocated to a suitable habitat away from the solar plant activity area, and in case of any protected animals, they will be moved to a nature reserve in close proximity to the proposed site, but that will depend on the authority responsible for protecting the animals;
- Protection of trees, including stumps; bark and holes in trees, are vital habitats for numerous arboreal reptiles (chameleons, snakes, agamas, geckos and monitors);
- The vegetation clearance must be in line with the mitigation measures set in the report.



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>DOCUMENT CONTROL</b> .....	<b>2</b>
<b>DECLARATION</b> .....	<b>3</b>
<b>EXECUTIVE SUMMARY</b> .....	<b>3</b>
<b>TABLE OF CONTENTS</b> .....	<b>5</b>
LIST OF FIGURES .....	7
LIST OF TABLES.....	7
<b>1. INTRODUCTION</b> .....	<b>9</b>
1.1 PROJECT BACKGROUND.....	9
1.2 PROJECT LOCALITY .....	9
1.3 ASSUMPTIONS AND LIMITATIONS.....	11
<b>2. APPLICABLE LEGISLATION</b> .....	<b>11</b>
<b>3. DESCRIPTION OF RECEIVING ENVIRONMENT</b> .....	<b>15</b>
3.1 CURRENT LAND-USE.....	15
3.2 CLIMATE .....	16
3.3 GEOLOGY AND SOILS.....	16
3.4 IMPORTANT TAXA.....	15
3.5 VEGETATION AND LANDSCAPE FEATURES .....	17
<b>4. METHODOLOGY</b> .....	<b>20</b>
4.1 FLORAL ASSESSMENT.....	20
4.1.1 <i>Literature Review</i> .....	20
4.1.2 <i>Field survey</i> .....	20
4.1.3 <i>Mapping</i> .....	20
4.1.4 <i>Sensitivity Analysis</i> .....	20
5. IIMPACT ASSESSMENT.....	22
<b>6. RESULTS</b> .....	<b>36</b>
6.1 FLORAL ASSESSMENT.....	36
6.1.1 <i>Red data plant species</i> .....	36
6.1.2 <i>Protected Species</i> .....	36
6.1.3 <i>Invasive Alien Plants Species</i> .....	23
6.2 FAUNAL ASSESSMENT.....	23
6.2.1 <i>Avifauna</i> .....	23
6.2.2 <i>Amphibians</i> .....	23
6.2.3 <i>Invertebrates</i> .....	23
6.2.4 <i>Mammals</i> .....	24
6.2.5 <i>Reptiles</i> .....	24
<b>7. IMPACTS AND MITIGATION MEASURES</b> .....	<b>39</b>
7.1 IMPACT ASSESSMENT CRITERIA.....	39
7.1.1 <i>Extent of the Impact</i> .....	39
7.1.2 <i>Duration of the impact</i> .....	39
7.1.3 <i>Intensity</i> .....	40
7.1.4 <i>Probability of Occurrence</i> .....	40
7.1.5 <i>Significance mitigation measures</i> .....	41
7.2 IDENTIFIED IMPACTS AND MITIGATION MEASURES .....	41
7.2.1 <i>The Introduction of Alien invasive species</i> .....	41
7.2.2 <i>Loss of Vegetation</i> .....	42
7.2.3 <i>Noise and Artificial Lighting Impact</i> .....	45
7.2.4 <i>Dust Management</i> .....	47
<b>8. RECOMMENDATIONS</b> .....	<b>48</b>

8.1	CONSTRUCTION AND OPERATIONAL FOOTPRINT .....	48
8.2	VEHICLE ACCESS AND SPEED MANAGEMENT .....	48
8.3	ALIEN PLANT SPECIES .....	49
8.4	SOILS .....	49
8.5	REMEDIATION.....	49
<b>9.</b>	<b>CONCLUSION.....</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>10.</b>	<b>REFERENCES.....</b>	<b>50</b>
	<b>APPENDIX 1: SAMPLES FLORA SPECIES.....</b>	<b>51</b>
	<b>APPENDIX 2: FAUNAL SPECIES STATUS.....</b>	<b>52</b>
	APPENDIX 2.1: Invertebrates.....	53
	APPENDIX 2.2: Avifauna Species.....	53
	<b>APPENDIX 3: FLORAL SPECIES.....</b>	<b>54</b>
	<b>APPENDIX 3.1: Potential Floral Species.....</b>	<b>54</b>
	<b>APPENDIX 3.2: Potential Protected Floral Species.....</b>	<b>57</b>
	<b>APPENDIX 4: FAUNAL SPECIES.....</b>	<b>57</b>
	APPENDIX 4.1 Potential Avifauna species.....	57
	APPENDIX 4.2: Potential Amphibians.....	59
	APPENDIX 4.3: Potential Invertebrates.....	60
	APPENDIX 4.4: Potential Mammals.....	61
	APPENDIX 4.5: Potential Reptiles.....	62
	<b>APPENDIX 5: CV'S OF THE TEAM.....</b>	<b>61</b>

## LIST OF FIGURES

---

Figure 1 – Site Location Map  
Figure 2 – Overview of Current Land use  
Figure 3 – Vegetation Type Map  
Figure 4-Sensitivity Map

## LIST OF TABLES

---

Table 1 – Site Location  
Table 2- Important Taxa  
Table 3- Ranking the Duration and Spatial Scale of impacts  
Table 4- Criteria for ranking the Severity of negative impacts on the bio-physical environment  
Table 5-Invasive Alien Plants Species within the study area

## GLOSSARY

**Alliance for Zero Extinction (AZE) site:** highest priority KBAs. AZEs will trigger critical habitat status due to their extreme importance for the last known populations of highly threatened (CR and EN) species.

**Biodiversity Hotspot:** Regions defined by the presence of high levels of threat (at least 70% habitat loss) in areas with high levels of species endemism (at least 1,500 endemic plant species) identified by Conservation International.

**Bird Migration Flyways:** Broad outline of central flyways used globally by migrating birds, based on the shared distributions and common migration routes of individual migratory bird species identified by Birdlife International.

**Ecoregions:** Relatively large units of land or water containing a distinct assemblage of natural communities sharing a large majority of species, dynamics, and environmental conditions. Eco-regions represent the original distribution of distinct assemblages of species and communities, identified by World Wildlife Fund.

**Endemic Bird Area:** Regions where the distributions of two or more restricted-range bird species overlap as identified by birdlife International.

**High Biodiversity Wilderness Area:** Large areas (at least 10,000 sq.km.) consisting of regions defined by their relatively undisturbed nature (at least 70% intact) and high level of species endemism (at least 1,500 endemic plant species), as identified by Conservation International.

**IUCN Protected Area Management Categories:** assigned to legally protected areas by national government agencies to allow international comparison between national protected area networks, based on management objectives of a protected area.

The six categories are:

**1a: Strict Nature Reserve:** strictly protected areas set aside to protect biodiversity and possibly geological/geomorphological features, where human visitation, use and impacts are strictly controlled and limited to ensure the protection of the conservation values. Such protected areas can serve as crucial reference areas for scientific research and monitoring.

**Ib: Wilderness Area:** usually large unmodified or slightly modified areas, retaining their natural character and influence without permanent or significant human habitation, which are protected and managed so as to preserve their natural condition.

**II: National Park:** large natural or near natural areas set aside to protect large-scale ecological processes, along with the complement of species and ecosystems characteristic of the area, which also provide a foundation for environmentally and culturally compatible, spiritual, scientific, educational, recreational, and visitor opportunities.

**III: National Monument or Feature:** set aside to protect a specific natural monument, which can be a landform, seamount, submarine cavern, geological features such as a cave or even a living feature such as an ancient grove. They are generally relatively small protected areas and often have high visitor value.

**IV: Habitat/Species Management Area:** aim to protect particular species or habitats, and management reflects this priority. Many Category IV protected areas will need regular, active interventions to address the requirements of particular species or to maintain habitats, but this is not a requirement of the category.

**V: Protected Landscape/Seascape:** the protected area where the interaction of people and nature over time has produced an area of distinct character with significant, ecological, biological, cultural and scenic value: and where safeguarding the integrity of this interaction is vital to protecting and sustaining the area and its associated nature conservation and other values.

**VI: Protected Area with sustainable use of natural resources:** conserve ecosystems and habitats together with associated cultural values and traditional natural resource management systems. They are generally large, with most of the area in a natural condition, where a proportion is under sustainable natural resource management and where low-level non-industrial use of natural resources compatible with nature conservation is seen as one of the main aims of the area.

**IUCN Red List of Threatened Species (IUCN RL or Red List):** the international standard for assessing threat status for species. The Red List is compiled by IUCN's global network of experts, specialist groups and partners.

**Red List categories are:**

**Critically Endangered (CR):** Highest risk of extinction.

**Endangered (EN):** Very high risk of extinction.

**Vulnerable (VU):** Risk of extinction.

**Near Threatened (NT):** Some evidence of decline but not sufficient to be confirmed as one of the categories of threatened species (CR, EN or VU).

**Least Concern (LC):** No known risk of extinction.

**Data Deficient (DD):** Insufficient data to assign a Red List category.

## 1. INTRODUCTION

### 1.1 Project Background

Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd was appointed by Tholoana Consulting on behalf of Ikomkhulu Solar Plant to undertake the ecological assessment of the proposed project of Ikomkhulu. The proposed project area is situated within Kimberley Thornveld (SVk 4) and Schmidtsdrif Thornveld (SVk6).

The proposed Ikomkhulu Solar Plant project entails the construction of Solar Photovoltaic (PV) power plant to feed into the National Grid (Eskom), at Portion 5 of the Farm Van Zoelen's Laagte No 158, where the size of the property is approximately 642.4385 Ha, however the footprint for the plant is approximately 182 Ha. The site area falls within ward 4, Dikgatlong Local Municipality, Frances Baard District Municipality in the Northern Cape Province of South Africa.

The anticipated construction period for the proposed activities is approximately 10 months, whereas in terms of operation the anticipated energy output is approximately 181 million kilowatt hours per year over a 20year period. The energy is capable of supplying 33 000 households. Once the project is complete, it is anticipated that the energy from the plant will be supplied to another stakeholder (ESKOM), which will then undertake its own distribution to its clients.

### 1.2 Project Locality

The proposed site is located at the Remaining Extent of Portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15 within Magareng Local Municipality, Frances Baard District Municipality in the province of Northern Cape (Figure 1).

The proposed project has falling under the location details as described in Table 1.

Table 1. Site Location

<b>Location</b>	28°19'36.28"S; 24°44'46.62"E
<b>District Municipality</b>	Frances Baard District
<b>Local Municipality</b>	Magareng
<b>Province</b>	Northern Cape

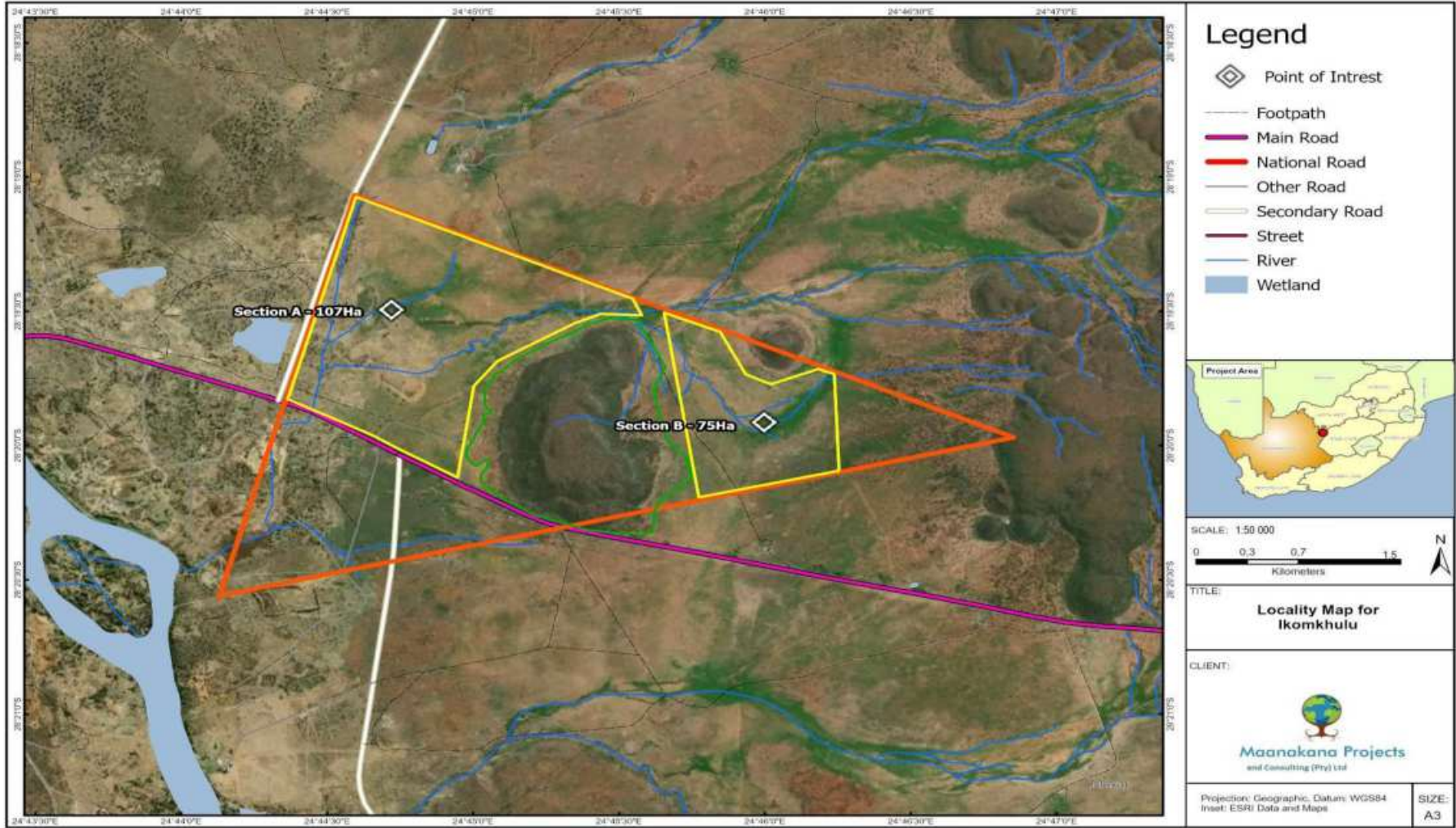


Figure 1. Site Location

### 1.3 DETAILS AND EXPERTISE OF THE SPECIALIST

According to Appendix 6, section 1 (1) A specialist report prepared in terms of these Regulations must contain— (a) details of—(i) the specialist who prepared the report; and(ii) the expertise of that specialist to compile a specialist report including a curriculum vitae;”, provided below are the details of the Specialist who prepared this Ecological assessment Report, as well as the expertise of the individual members of the study team. Table 1 below outlines the Project Team with their details and qualifications.

Table 1: Specialist Details

	<b>SPECIALIST NAMES</b>	<b>COMPANY</b>
<b>Fieldwork Specialist &amp; Report Writing</b>	Dr Milambo Freddy Tshiala (BSc Hon. in Agriculture, MSc & PhD in Environment and Society (Pr.Sci.Nat.: 4000021/18))	Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd
<b>Report Reviewer 1</b>	Ms Nonkanyiso Zungu (BSc Hon. Ecology, MSc. Env. Mngt, PhD Candidate) (Pr.Sci.Nat.:400194/10)	Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd
<b>Contact details</b>	Email: maanakanaprojects@gmail.com	Cell: 0836691702

### 1.4 Assumptions and Limitations

The following assumptions and limitations apply to this report:

- The ecological assessment is confined to the study area and does not include the neighbouring and adjacent lands or areas; these were, however, considered as part of the desktop assessment.
- With ecology being dynamic and complex, some aspects (some of which may be important) may have been overlooked. It is, however, expected that most floral communities have been accurately assessed and considered.
- Sampling, by its nature, means that not all individuals are assessed and identified. Some species and taxa on the study area may therefore have been missed during the assessment.
- It is important to note that the absence of species on site does not conclude that the species is not present at the site.

## 2. APPLICABLE LEGISLATION

The national and provincial legislation, policies and guidelines, which could apply to impacts on the proposed project of biodiversity, are listed below. Although the list is comprehensive, additional legislation, policies and guidelines that have not been mentioned may apply.

Relevant legislation is provided below to provide a description of the applicable legal considerations of relevance to the proposed project.

### **Convention on Biodiversity (CBD)**

The CBD requires signatory states to implement objectives of the Convention, which are the conservation of biodiversity; the sustainable use of biological resources and the fair and equitable sharing of benefits arising from the use of genetic resources. South Africa became a signatory to the CBD in 1993, which was ratified in 1995. Article 14 (a) of the CBD states that "Each Contracting Party, as far as possible and as appropriate, shall: (a) Introduce appropriate procedures requiring environmental impact assessment of its proposed projects that are likely to have significant adverse effects on biological diversity with a view to avoiding or minimizing such effects and, where appropriate, allow for public participation in such procedures".

### **National Environmental Management Act (Act No. 107 of 1998, NEMA)**

Section 24 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa provides the right to every person for a non-harmful environment and simultaneously mandates the government to protect the environment. NEMA is the framework to enforce Section 24 of the Constitution.

NEMA requires, amongst others, that:

- Development must be socially, environmentally, and economically sustainable;
- Disturbance of ecosystems and loss of biological diversity are avoided, or, where they cannot be -- altogether avoided, are minimised and remedied; and
- A risk-averse and cautious approach is applied, which takes into account the limits of current knowledge about the consequences of decisions and actions.

Government Notice No. 40733 of 2017: Draft National Biodiversity Offset Policy published under NEMA is to ensure that significant residual impacts of developments are remedied, thereby ensuring sustainable development as required by section 24 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996. This policy should be taken into consideration with every development application that still has significant residual impact after the mitigation has been followed. The mitigation sequence entails the consecutive application of avoiding or preventing loss, then at minimizing or mitigating what cannot be avoided, rehabilitating where possible and, as a last resort, offsetting the residual impact. As these developments fall within the distribution range of threatened vegetation types and may result in at least some loss of natural vegetation, it is recommended that rehabilitation of degraded areas takes place on the project site.

The National Gazette, No. 43110 of 20 March, 2020: "National Environmental Management Act (107/1998) Procedures for the Assessment and Minimum Criteria for Reporting on Identified Environmental Themes in terms of sections 24 (5) (a) and (h) and 44 of the Act, when applying for Environmental Authorisation" lists protocols and minimum report requirements for environmental impacts on terrestrial biodiversity. The assessment and minimum reporting requirements are associated with a level of environmental sensitivity identified by the national web-based screening tool. The proposed project site falls within an area identified by



the screening tool as 'very high sensitivity' in the Terrestrial Biodiversity Theme due to the proposed route crossing a small section delineated as critical biodiversity areas as well as an ecological support area. The ecological support area is, however, a result of the Important Bird Area surrounding De Aar. Furthermore, this legislation makes provision for linear activities such as power lines such as the proposed development by stating that the assessment and reporting requirements for 'very high sensitivity' need not apply as impacts on terrestrial biodiversity are temporary. The land disturbed by the power line development, in the specialist's opinion can be returned to the current state within two years of the completion of the construction phase, and as such a Terrestrial Biodiversity Compliance Statement applies. This document exceeds the minimum requirements prescribed by this legislation for linear activities.

### **National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (Act No. 10 of 2004, NEMBA)**

NEMBA is the principal national act that regulates biodiversity protection, and is concerned with the management and conservation of biological diversity, as well as the use of indigenous biological resources in a sustainable manner. Section 57 (1) states that a person may not carry out a restricted activity involving a specimen of a listed threatened or protected species without a permit issued in terms of Chapter 7 (2) The Minister may, by notice in the Gazette, prohibit the carrying out of any activity- (a) which is of a nature that may negatively impact on the survival of a listed threatened or protected species. Restricted activities include damaging, uprooting or destroying specimens of listed threatened or protected species as well as movement and possession of these species. NEMBA also aims to, inter alia, (a) prevent the unauthorized introduction and spread of alien species and invasive species to ecosystems and habitats where they do not naturally occur; (b) to manage and control alien species and invasive species to prevent or minimize harm to the environment and to biodiversity in particular and (c) to eradicate alien species and invasive species from ecosystems and habitats where they may harm such ecosystems or habitats.

### **National Forests Act (Act No. 84 of 1998)**

This act lists protected tree species and prohibits certain activities. the prohibitions provide that "no person may cut, damage, disturb, destroy or remove any protected tree, or collect, remove, transport, export, purchase, sell, donate or in any other manner acquire or dispose of any protected tree, except under a licence granted by the minister".

### **National Water Act (Act No. 36 of 1998)**

This act defines a watercourse as: "a river or spring; natural channel in which water flows regularly or intermittently; wetland, lake or dam into which, or from which, water flows; and any collection of water which the minister may, by notice in the gazette, declare to be a watercourse, and a reference to a watercourse includes, where relevant, its bed and banks".this act regulates certain activities in and around a watercourse and aims, amongst others to protect aquatic and associated ecosystems and their biological diversity and reduce and prevent pollution of water resources.

### **Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act No. 43 of 1983 as amended in 2001)**

This act lists declared weed and invader species of plants and prescribes the required actions to comb their spread depending on their listed category, the three categories are:

- Category 1 plants: prohibited and must be controlled;
- Category 2 plants: may be grown in demarcated areas providing that there is a permit and that steps are taken to prevent their spread; and
- Category 3 plants: may not be planted; existing plants may remain as long as reasonable steps are taken to prevent their spread, except within the flood line of watercourses and wetlands.

### **National Veld and Forest Fire Act (Act No. 101 of 1998)**

The purpose of the National Veld and Forest Fire Act, as amended by the National Fire Laws Amendment Act, is to prevent and combat veld, forest and mountain fires throughout South Africa. The Act applies to the open countryside beyond the urban limit and puts in place a range of requirements. It also specifies the responsibilities of land owners. The term 'owners' includes lessees, people in control of land, the executive body of a community, the manager of State land, and the chief executive officer of any local authority. The requirements include, but are not limited to, the maintenance of firebreaks and availability of firefighting equipment to reasonably prevent the spread of fires to neighbouring properties.

### **Northern Cape Nature Conservation Act (Act No. 9 of 2009)**

This Act provides for the sustainable utilisation of wild animals, aquatic biota and plants; provides for the implementation of the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora; provides for offences and penalties for contravention of the Act; provides for the appointment of nature conservators to implement the provisions of the Act; and provides for the issuing of permits and other authorisations. Amongst other regulations, the following may apply to the current project: Aquatic habitats may not be destroyed or damaged restricted activities involving protected animals and plants, including the uprooting, breaking, damage or destruction of listed plant species. The Act provides lists of species offered protection in the Province.

### 3. DESCRIPTION OF RECEIVING ENVIRONMENT

#### 3.1 CURRENT LAND-USE

The area within the proposed site is covered with the vegetation such as small trees, tall shrubs, graminoids, herbs, geophytic herbs, succulent herbs, succulent shrubs, low shrubs. The description of the environment provided in this report is the current status of the proposed site (Figure 2).



Figure 2. Overview of current land use

### **3.2 CLIMATE**

The climate of the proposed site is summer and autumn rainfall and very dry winters. MAP about 300 mm in the southwest to about 500 mm in the northeast.. Frost frequent in winter. Mean monthly maximum and minimum temperatures for Kimberley 37.5°C and -4.1°C for January and July, respectively corresponding values for Vaalharts-Agr 37.4°C and -3.9°C, respectively (Mucina and Rutherford, 2006).

However, the unpredictable rainfall mostly occurs in the form of short downpours or thunderstorms. On average about 400mm of rain falls annually and long droughts are common. Most of the rain usually falls during October to November and February to March (Jonk and Wilson, 2016).

### **3.3 GEOLOGY AND SOILS**

Andesitic lavas of the Allanridge Formation in the North and West and fine-grained sediments of the Karoo supergroup in the south and east. Deep (0.6-1.2m) sandy to loamy soils of the Hutton soil form (Ae and Ah land types) on slightly undulating sandy plains (Mucina and Rutherford, 2006) (Mucina and Rutherford, 2006).

The basic geology of the area consists mostly of red sands overlaying a calcrete bank. These sands were deposited by wind action. An interesting feature of these coarse sands is their ability to rapidly absorb the rainfall, which moves deeper into the lower sand layers. This does not occur in other finer soil types. Less moisture is then lost through evaporation and there is therefore soil water available during the dry winter months. Other interesting geological features of the landscape include rocks known as Dwyka tillite, which are deposits from glaciers that moved over this area millions of years ago (Jonk and Wilson, 2016).

### 3.4 Important taxa

Table 2– Important taxa (Mucina and Rutherford, 2006)

The classification below is the real reflection of the vegetations found in Kimberley Thornveld (SVk4) and Schmidtsdrif Thornveld (SVk6)

Tall Tree	Small Trees	Tall Shrubs	Low Shrubs	Succulent Shrubs	Graminoids	Herbs	Semiparasitic Shrub	Succulent Herbs
<i>Acacia erioloba</i> ,	<i>Acacia karroo</i> , <i>A. mellifera</i> subsp. <i>detinens</i> , <i>A. tortilis</i> subsp. <i>Heteracantha</i> , <i>Rhus lancea</i> . <i>Ficus cordata</i> , <i>Ziziphus mucronata</i>	<i>Tarchonanthus camphoratus</i> , <i>Diospyros pallens</i> , <i>Ehretia rigida</i> subsp. <i>Rigida</i> , <i>Euclea crispa</i> subsp. <i>Ovata</i> , <i>Grewia flava</i> , <i>Lycium Arenicola</i> , <i>L. hirsutum</i> , <i>Rhus tridactyla</i> ,	<i>Acacia hebeclada</i> subsp. <i>Hebeclada.</i> , <i>Anthospermum rigidum</i> subsp. <i>Pumilum</i> , <i>Helichrysum zeyheri</i> , <i>Hermania comosa</i> , <i>Lycium pilifolium</i> , <i>Melolobium microphyllum</i> , <i>Pavonia burchellii</i> , <i>Peliostomum leucorrhizum</i> , <i>Plinthus sericeus</i> , <i>Wahlenbergia nodosa</i> , <i>Aptosimum albomarginatum</i> , <i>Barleria rigida</i> , <i>Monechma incanum</i> , <i>Pentzia incana</i> , <i>Zygophyllum pubescens</i>	<i>Aloe hereroensis</i> var. <i>hereroensis</i> , <i>Lycium cinereum</i>	<i>Eragrostis lehmanniana</i> , <i>Aristida canescens</i> , <i>A. congesta</i> , <i>A. mollissima</i> subsp. <i>Argentea</i> , <i>Cymbopogon porspisschilii</i> , <i>Digitaria argyrograpta</i> , <i>D. eriantha</i> subsp. <i>Eriantha</i> , <i>Enneapogon cenchroides</i> , <i>E. scoparius</i> , <i>Eragrostis regidor</i> , <i>Heteropogon contortus</i> , <i>Themeda triandra</i> .	<i>Barleria macrostegia</i> , <i>Dicoma schinzii</i> , <i>Harpagophytum procumbens</i> subsp. <i>Procumbens</i> , <i>Helichrysum cerastioides</i> , <i>Hermbstaedtia odorata</i> , <i>Hibiscus marlothianus</i> , <i>Jamesbrittenia aurantiaca</i> , <i>Lippia scaberrima</i> , <i>Osteospermum muricatum</i> , <i>Vahlia capensis</i> subsp. <i>vulgaris</i>	<i>Thesium lineatum</i>	<i>Aloe grandidentata</i> , <i>Piaranthus decipiens</i> .

### 3.5 Vegetation and Landscape Features

The vegetation within the proposed site is mostly classified as Kimberley thornveld and small portion is classified under Schmidtsdrif Thornveld, and is an open savanna of mostly trees and grasses. The vegetation can be further subdivided into three basic veld types: the Kimberley thorn bushveld of the flat sandy plains, the koppie veld on the dolerite koppies and the panveld associated with the calcareous pans. The sandy plains support mainly trees and grasses, whilst shrubs are more abundant on the koppies and in the ecotone between the koppies and the plains. Calcareous pans support smaller, Karoo-like shrubs and a number of specialised and scarce plants (Jonk and Wilson, 2016).

Furthermore, the proposed site is plain often slightly irregular with well developed tree layer with *Acacia erioloba*, *A. tortilis*, *A. karroo* and *Boscia albitrunca* and well developed shrub layer with occasional dense stands of *Tarchonanthus camphoratus* and *A. mellifera*. Grass layer open with much uncovered soil. In places the land already disturbed continuous grassland cover and few varieties of trees scattered within the proposed site. The vegetation on the proposed site is classified under vegetation types of Kimberley Thornveld (SVk 4) and a small portion is classified under Schmidtsdrif Thornveld (SVk6) (Figure 3) (Mucina and Rutherford, 2006).

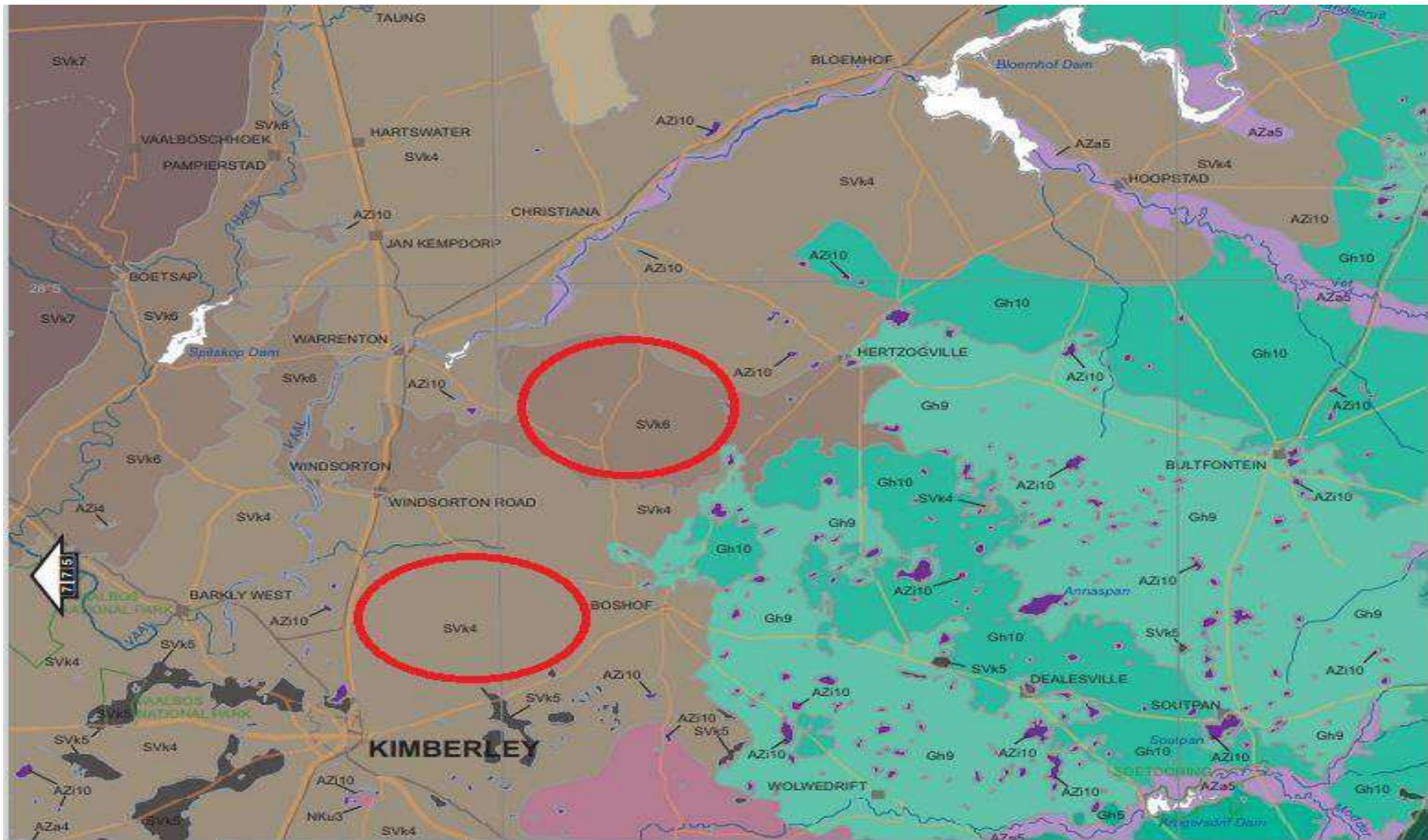


Figure 3 – Vegetation type Map



## **4. METHODOLOGY**

### **4.1 Floral Assessment**

#### **4.1.1 Literature Review**

The description of the vegetation of the proposed site was taken from the literature of Mucina and Rutherford, 2006. The identification of grasses was identified from the guide to grasses of Southern Africa (Oudtshoorn, 2012). Plant names were identified from Van Wyk and Malan (2013), identification of Red data species by Taylor (1996) and identification of Invasive Alien Plant species (Bromilow, 2010).

#### **4.1.2 Field survey**

Before the study, a desktop study was undertaken. As a follow up, fieldwork and a reconnaissance “walk through” was undertaken to determine the general habitat types found throughout the study area. The walk through investigation was done in order to identify the occurrence of the dominant faunal communities, species and habitat diversities. Any faunal inhabitants of the study area were also assessed through direct visual observation or identifying such species through calls, tracks, scats, and burrows.

It is important to note that faunal species have varied life cycles and breeding patterns, subject to seasonal fluctuations. As such, it is unlikely that all faunal species would have been recorded during the site assessment. However, even though some faunal species may not have been identified during the site assessment, some activities and degree of transformation because most of the lands have undergone anthropogenic activities in regards to that, the evaluation was done to establish an accurate understanding of faunal assemblages most likely associated with the study area.

#### **4.1.3 Mapping**

Mapping was done by comparing georeferenced ground survey data to the visual inspection of available Google-Earth imagery (which is a generalised colour composite image without any actual reflectance data attached to it), and in that way extrapolating survey reference points to the entire study area. Mapped associations provided in this report, indicates the extent of the vegetation on site as well as importance.

#### **4.1.4 Sensitivity Analysis**

It has been clearly demonstrated that vegetation forms the basis of the trophic pyramid in an ecosystem and plays a crucial role in providing the physical habitat within which organisms complete their life cycles (Kent and Coker, 1992).

The determination of specific ecosystem services and the sensitivity of ecosystem components, both biotic and abiotic, is rather complex, and no single overarching criterion will apply to all habitats studied. The main aspects of an ecosystem that need to be incorporated in a sensitivity analysis include the following:



- Describing the nature and number of species present, considering their conservation value and the ability of such species to survive or re-establish themselves following disturbances and alterations of various magnitudes to their specific habitats.
- Identifying the species or habitat features that are the “key ecosystem providers” and characterising their functional relationships (Kremen, 2005).
- Determining the aspects of community structure that influence function, especially elements influencing stability or rapid decline of communities (Kremen, 2005).
- Assessing key environmental factors that influence the provision of services (Kremen, 2005).
- Gaining knowledge about the spatio-temporal scales over which these aspects operate (Kremen, 2005).

The vegetation sensitivity assessment aims to identify whether the vegetation within the study area is of conservation concern and thus sensitive to development if it is amongst other things:

- Situated in a listed ecosystem or threatened vegetation unit;
- Endangered conservation type;
- Habitat or potential habitat to threatened plants, protected plants or protected trees;
- Untransformed and un-fragmented natural vegetation.

An ecological sensitivity map was produced through the integration of the information collected during the site visit with the available biodiversity data in the literature (Figure 4). Sensitive features such as rivers, dams, wetlands, temporary pans, drainage lines, rocky outcrops and other important habitat features such as animal burrows were mapped and rated. The ecological sensitivity rating of landscape features were categorised as follows:

- **Low** – Areas with a low sensitivity where there is likely to be a low impact on terrestrial biodiversity and ecological processes. The impact of development is likely to be local in extent and of low significance with the implementation of mitigation measures.
- **Medium** – Areas of natural or previously transformed land where the impacts are likely to be largely local and the risk of secondary impact such as erosion low. These areas usually comprise the bulk of habitats within an area. Development within these areas can proceed with relatively little ecological impact provided that appropriate mitigation measures are taken.
- **High** – Areas with a high sensitivity where there is likely to be a high impact on terrestrial biodiversity and ecological processes. The impact of development in these areas is likely to extend beyond the local scale and be of high significance as there exists a direct risk of impact to ecological processes and critical or unique habitats for species of conservation concern. Existing infrastructure such as access roads and servitudes must be used when traversing these areas.

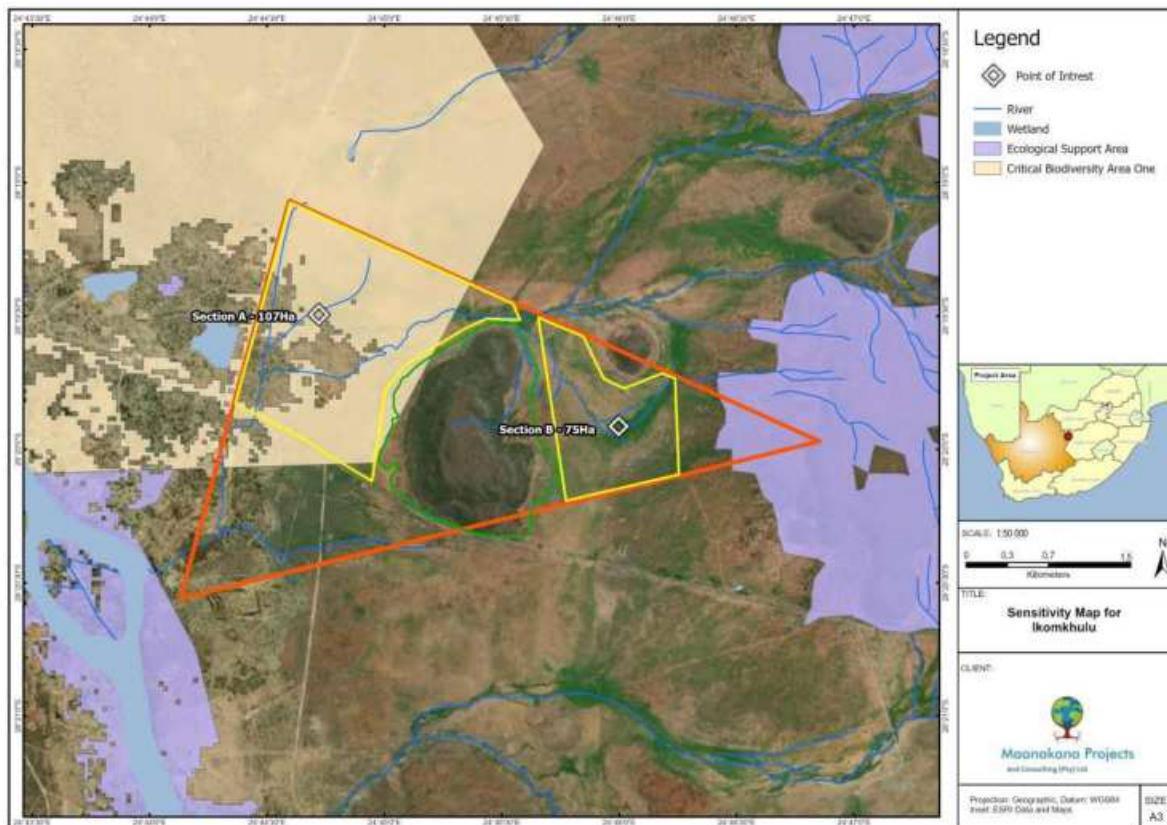


Figure 4. Sensitivity Map

## 5. IMPACT ASSESSMENT

### 5.1 Identification of Potential Impacts

Potential impacts on the ecology of the study area include the following (issues assessed by other specialists, e.g. on birds and on hydrological function are not included here):

- Impacts on biodiversity: Any impacts on populations of species of concern (flora and fauna) and on overall species richness, genetic variability, population dynamics and habitats important for species of concern;
- Impacts on sensitive habitats: Impacts on any sensitive or protected habitats, including indigenous grassland and wetland vegetation that leads to direct or indirect loss of such habitat;
- Impacts on threatened ecosystems: any impacts on threatened or protected ecosystems, critical biodiversity areas, areas of high biodiversity and centres of endemism;
- Impacts on ecosystem functions: any impacts on processes or factors that maintain ecosystem health and character, including the following:
  - Habitat fragmentation;
  - Disruption to ecological corridors;

- Changes to abiotic environmental conditions;
  - Changes to disturbance regimes, e.g. increased or decreased incidence of fire;
  - Disruption to nutrient-flow dynamics;
  - Impedance of movement of material or water;
  - Changes to successional processes;
  - Effects on pollinators; and
  - Increase invasion by alien plant.
- Cumulative impacts: this includes an assessment of the impacts of the proposed project taken in combination with the impacts of other known projects for the area or secondary impacts that may arise from changes in the social, economic or ecological environment.

## **5.2 Construction Phase Impacts**

- Construction phase impacts for this project will include the following:
  - Loss and/or fragmentation of indigenous natural vegetation due to clearing;
  - Loss of individuals of plant species of conservation concern and/or protected plants;
  - Loss of faunal habitat and refugia;
  - Direct mortality of fauna due to machinery and construction;
  - Displacement and/or disturbance of fauna due to increased activity and noise levels;
  - Increased poaching and/or illegal collecting due to increased access to the area; and
  - Contamination of the environment by construction vehicles and machinery.

## **5.3 Operational Phase Impacts**

Ongoing operational impacts for this project will include the following:

- Direct impact of fauna through traffic, illegal collecting, poaching and collisions and/or entanglement with infrastructure;
- Establishment and spread of alien invasive plant species due to the presence of migration corridors and disturbance; and
- Runoff and erosion due to the presence of hard surfaces that change the infiltration and runoff properties of the landscape.

## **5.4 Cumulative Impacts**

Impacts on broad-scale ecological processes and cumulative habitat loss, connectivity or potential for the area to meet long-term conservation objectives (such as CBAs and ESAs, areas).

## **5.5 Assessment of Impacts**

The assessment of impacts takes into account the position of the solar installation within the proposed site. There are no alternative site option to assess.

## 5.2.1 Construction Phase Impacts

### 5.2.1.1 Impact 1: Loss or fragmentation of indigenous natural vegetation

Due to the high probability of the loss of at least some natural vegetation, the impact calculated by the impact table is of **MODERATE** significance, despite mitigation reducing the intensity of the impact. As the two vegetation types on the project site classified nationally as Least Threatened, are largely contiguous and cover extensive areas, the impact on these vegetation types as a whole in the specialist's opinion should be considered to be of **LOW** significance.

Impact Phase: Construction							
<b>Potential impact description:</b> Impact on vegetation through the destruction of plants from construction activities. Solar structures will affect relatively small, localised areas of vegetation. Access roads may affect slightly larger areas. The installation of solar will result in the clearing of an area of up to.							
	Extent	Duration	Intensity	Status	Significance	Probability	Confidence
Without Mitigation	L	M	H	Negative	M	H	H
With Mitigation	L	M	M	Negative	M	H	H
Can the impact be reversed?			No. Some long-term loss of vegetation is likely.				
Will impact cause irreplaceable loss or resources?			No. The vegetation is widespread in the area and the size of the project footprint is comparatively low.				
Can impact be avoided, managed or mitigated?			Partly. Some residual impact is likely, however the intensity of the impact can be reduced through mitigation.				

Mitigation measures to reduce residual risk or enhance opportunities:

- Solar structure footprints to be constructed outside of HIGH sensitivity areas;
- Preconstruction walk-through of the solar development footprints (new servitudes, lay-down areas and temporary infrastructure) once finalised to ensure that sensitive habitats are avoided where possible;
- Ensure that lay-down and other temporary infrastructure are within MEDIUM or LOW sensitivity areas;
- Minimise the development footprint as far as possible and rehabilitate disturbed areas that are not required by the operational phase of the development;
- Utilize existing servitudes and access roads wherever possible, any new roads or the upgrading of roads should be minimized as far as possible and not be larger than required;
- All construction vehicles should adhere to clearly defined and demarcated roads, no off-road driving should be allowed;
- Ensure that sufficient erosion control measures are constructed on all servitudes and access roads in the project area;
- Rehabilitate existing servitude and access roads in the project area with sufficient erosion control measures to prevent the loss of soil and the degradation of vegetation;
- An environmental induction for all construction staff on site to ensure that basic environmental principles are adhered to. This includes topics such as avoiding fire hazards, no littering, appropriate handling of pollution and chemical spills, minimizing wildlife interactions, remaining within demarcated construction areas, avoidance of no-go areas and sensitive habitats (i.e. wetlands);
- Demarcate sensitive areas in close proximity to the development footprint as no-go areas with construction tape or similar and clearly marked as no-go areas;
- No open fires should be permitted outside of designated areas;
- Construction activities in or near drainage lines, washes or temporary inundated depressions (as indicated by MEDIUM sensitivity areas on the map) must only take place during the dry season;
- An environmental management programme (EMPr) must be implemented, and must provide a detailed description of how construction activities must be conducted to reduce unnecessary destruction of habitat.

Impact to be addressed/ further investigated

Yes. Micrositing of infrastructure is required after finalization of locations and prior to construction to ensure sensitive areas are avoided where possible.

### 5.2.1.2 Impact 2: Loss of individuals of threatened or protected plant species

None of the plant species recorded on site were listed as protected by NEMBA. Most of the species identified on the project site are not protected under the Northern Cape Nature Conservation Act. One tree species, the Shepherd's Tree is protected under the National Forest Act. However, this species was not recorded to be present on the study site during the ecological survey. While the probability of the loss of some protected plants is likely, resulting in a **MODERATE** significance rating in the impact table, many of the species are common and widespread through the area, which is largely intact and therefore it is the specialist's opinion that the impact should be considered to be of **LOW** significance.

Impact Phase: Construction							
<b>Potential impact description:</b> Loss or damage of threatened or protected plant species through construction activities. The illegal collecting of plant species may increase if access to the site is increased during construction activities.							
	Extent	Duration	Intensity	Status	Significance	Probability	Confidence
Without Mitigation	L	M	H	Negative	M	H	H

With Mitigation	L	M	M	Negative	M	H	H
Can the impact be reversed?			No. Some permanent loss of plants is likely.				
Will impact cause irreplaceable loss or resources?			No. The species are widespread in the area and the size of the project footprint is big.				
Can impact be avoided, managed or mitigated?			Yes.				
Mitigation measures to reduce residual risk or enhance opportunities:							
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Preconstruction walk-through the solar development footprints (new servitudes, lay-down areas and temporary infrastructure) once finalised for micro-siting to ensure that protected species are avoided where possible;</li> <li>• Compile a comprehensive species list of plants that may be cut, chopped, uprooted, damaged or destroyed and obtain relevant permits for these restricted activities if required;</li> <li>• Utilize existing servitudes and access roads wherever possible, any new roads or the upgrading of roads should be minimized as far as possible and not be larger than required;</li> <li>• All construction vehicles should adhere to clearly defined and demarcated roads, no off-road driving should be allowed;</li> <li>• Site access should be controlled and no unauthorised persons should be allowed onto the site;</li> <li>• The collection or harvesting of any plants at the site should be strictly forbidden;</li> <li>• Personnel should not be allowed to wander off the demarcated construction site; and</li> <li>• An environmental induction for all construction staff on site to ensure that basic environmental principles are adhered to.</li> </ul>							
Impact to be addressed/ further investigated				Yes. Micro-siting of infrastructure is required after finalization of locations and prior to construction to compile a list of species that may be damaged during construction.			

### 5.2.1.3 Impact 3: Loss of faunal habitat and refugia

This impact includes the temporary loss of faunal habitat and refugia associated with laydown areas and temporary contractor's facilities as well as the permanent loss associated with the construction of permanent structures such as the solar structure. The risk to habitats also includes pollution and contamination, particularly wetland and aquatic environments, from construction activities (e.g. oil leaks or chemical spills). The risk of destruction of habitat such as temporary vleis and wetlands or refugia such as burrow systems would be reduced to acceptable levels if mitigation measures are adhered to.

<b>Impact Phase: Construction</b>							
<b>Potential impact description:</b> Loss or damage of faunal habitat and refugia such as burrow systems and temporary vleis/wetlands due to construction activities. The damage to faunal habitat (especially aquatic environments) due to increased erosion and contamination from chemical leaks/spills.							
	<b>Extent</b>	<b>Duration</b>	<b>Intensity</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Significance</b>	<b>Probability</b>	<b>Confidence</b>
Without Mitigation	L	M	H	Negative	M	H	H
With Mitigation	L	L	M	Negative	M	H	H
Can the impact be reversed?			Partially. Some habitats such as temporary vleis can be artificially constructed, however loss due to contamination is more difficult to reverse.				

Will impact cause irreplaceable loss or resources?	No. Habitats available on the project site are widespread in the area.
Can impact be avoided, managed or mitigated?	Yes. The probability and intensity of this impact can be reduced through mitigation.
<p>Mitigation measures to reduce residual risk or enhance opportunities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Preconstruction walk-through of the solar development footprints (new servitudes, lay-down areas and temporary infrastructure) once finalised for micrositing to ensure that temporary vleis/wetlands and burrow systems are avoided where possible;</li> <li>• No construction of solar structure in <b>HIGH</b> sensitivity areas;</li> <li>• Ensure that lay-down and other temporary infrastructure are within <b>MEDIUM</b> or <b>LOW</b> sensitivity areas;</li> <li>• No-go areas around sensitive habitats such as wetlands or burrow systems should be clearly marked;</li> <li>• All construction vehicles should adhere to clearly defined and demarcated roads, no off-road driving should be allowed;</li> <li>• Ensure that sufficient erosion control measures are constructed on all servitudes and access roads in the project area;</li> <li>• Rehabilitate existing servitude and access roads in the project area with sufficient erosion control measures to prevent the loss of soil and the degradation of vegetation;</li> <li>• All hazardous materials should be stored in the appropriate manner to prevent contamination of the site. Any accidental chemical, fuel and oil spills that occur at the site should be cleaned up in the appropriate manner as related to the nature of the spill;</li> <li>• Utilize existing servitudes and access roads wherever possible, any new roads or the upgrading of roads should be minimized as far as possible and not be larger than required; and</li> <li>• All construction vehicles should adhere to clearly defined and demarcated roads, no off-road driving should be allowed</li> </ul>	
Impact to be addressed/ further investigated	Yes. Micrositing of infrastructure is required after finalization of locations and prior to construction to ensure that no active burrow systems are destroyed.

#### 5.2.1.4 Impact 4: Direct impact to fauna due to construction

Sensitive and shy fauna are likely to move away from the affected areas during construction, while some slow-moving species would not be able to avoid the construction activities and might be killed. Increased traffic during construction will pose a risk of collisions with susceptible fauna. Tortoises, snakes and amphibians are particularly susceptible to collisions, however many other species are also at risk such as rabbits/hares and porcupine, particularly at night. Some mammals and reptiles would be vulnerable to illegal collection or poaching during the construction phase as a result of the large number of construction personnel that are likely to be present. Many of these impacts can however be effectively managed or mitigated. After mitigation, direct faunal impacts are likely to be of low significance. It is unlikely that construction activities will have a negative impact on this species if mitigation measures are adhered to. The probability of direct mortalities due to construction activities can be reduced to acceptable levels through the implementation of mitigation measures.

<b>Impact Phase: Construction</b>							
<b>Potential impact description:</b> Direct impact to fauna caused by construction activities, such as increased risk of injury or mortality from collision with vehicles due to increased traffic, the increased possibility of illegal hunting, poaching, persecution or harvesting of fauna.							
	<b>Extent</b>	<b>Duration</b>	<b>Intensity</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Significance</b>	<b>Probability</b>	<b>Confidence</b>
Without Mitigation	L	L	H	Negative	M	H	H
With Mitigation	L	L	M	Negative	L	L	H
Can the impact be reversed?			No.				
Will impact cause irreplaceable loss or resources?			Potentially. If rare or threatened species suffer direct mortality.				
Can impact be avoided, managed or mitigated?			Yes. The probability and intensity of this impact can be reduced through mitigation.				
Mitigation measures to reduce residual risk or enhance opportunities:							
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Construction of infrastructure in or near aquatic environments (as indicated by <b>MEDIUM</b> sensitivity on the map) must be conducted during the dry season;</li> <li>• All construction vehicles should adhere to clearly defined and demarcated roads, no off-road driving should be allowed;</li> <li>• All construction vehicles should adhere to a low speed limit (30km/h) to avoid collisions with susceptible species;</li> <li>• Speed limits must apply within the project site as well as on the public gravel access roads to the site;</li> <li>• Night driving must be avoided where possible;</li> <li>• Site access should be controlled and no unauthorised persons should be allowed onto the site;</li> <li>• All personnel should undergo an initial environmental induction with regards to fauna and in particular awareness about not harming or collecting species such as snakes or tortoises;</li> <li>• The illegal collection, hunting or harvesting of animals at the site should be strictly forbidden;</li> <li>• No animals such as dogs or cats to be allowed on site other than those of the landowners;</li> <li>• Personnel should not be allowed to wander off the construction site;</li> <li>• No open fires should be permitted outside of designated areas;</li> <li>• Any fauna directly threatened by the construction activities should be removed to a safe location by the environmental control officer or other suitably qualified person.</li> </ul>							
Impact to be addressed/ further investigated				No.			

#### 5.2.1.5 Impact 5: Displacement or disturbance of fauna due to increased activity and noise levels

Increased levels of noise and disturbance by vehicles, machinery and human presence during construction will likely impact sensitive species causing them to move away from the project site potentially influencing movement, foraging activity, breeding and impacting energy budgets. Even with the reduction of the probability of disturbance through mitigation, the impact table calculates the significance of the impact to be **MODERATE** as the probability that some disturbance of fauna will occur. As large areas of contiguous natural habitat are available, the displacement distance would not be excessively far and as the impact is only



for a relatively short period of time it is therefore the specialist's opinion that following the implementation of mitigation measures the impact should be considered to be of **LOW** significance.

<b>Impact Phase: Construction</b>							
<b>Potential impact description:</b> The displacement or disturbance of fauna due to construction activities. Species sensitive to human activity such as Reedbuck would likely move away from construction activities.							
	<b>Extent</b>	<b>Duration</b>	<b>Intensity</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Significance</b>	<b>Probability</b>	<b>Confidence</b>
Without Mitigation	L	L	L	Negative	M	H	H
With Mitigation	L	L	L	Negative	M	M	H
Can the impact be reversed?			Yes. The disturbance resulting from construction activities will be transient in nature.				
Will impact cause irreplaceable loss or resources?			No. Most species would be able to move away from disturbance, large areas of natural habitat available means displacement distance would not be excessively far.				
Can impact be avoided, managed or mitigated?			Partly, noise and activity cannot be entirely avoided or mitigated against.				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mitigation measures to reduce residual risk or enhance opportunities:</li> <li>Construction camps should be lit with as little light as practically possible, with the lights directed downwards where appropriate to reduce the disturbance and foraging activities of nocturnal species;</li> <li>The movement of construction personnel should be restricted to the construction areas on the project site;</li> <li>Speed limits should be strictly enforced to reduce unnecessary noise and dust; and</li> <li>No dogs or cats other than those of the landowners should be allowed on site as these animals cause unnecessary disturbance such as chasing fauna.</li> </ul>							
Impact to be addressed/ further investigated				No.			

### 5.3 Operational Phase Impacts

#### 5.3.1 Impact 6: Direct faunal impacts due to operation

Direct mortality through road fatalities is a risk to many animal species, and particularly for the tortoise and snake populations on the site. The operational activities may lead to disturbance or persecution of fauna within or adjacent to the facilities. The impact can be reduced to acceptable levels following the implementation of mitigation measures.

<b>Impact Phase: Operational</b>							
<b>Potential impact description:</b> Disturbance, direct mortality through collision and illegal collecting or poaching of fauna.							
	<b>Extent</b>	<b>Duration</b>	<b>Intensity</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Significance</b>	<b>Probability</b>	<b>Confidence</b>
Without Mitigation	L	M	H	Negative	M	M	H
With Mitigation	L	M	M	Negative	L	L	H
Can the impact be reversed?			No.				
Will impact cause irreplaceable loss or resources?			Potentially. If rare or threatened species suffer direct mortality.				

Can impact be avoided, managed or mitigated?	Yes. The probability and intensity of this impact can be reduced through mitigation.
Mitigation measures to reduce residual risk or enhance opportunities: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All vehicles should adhere to a low speed limit (30km/h) to avoid collisions with susceptible species;</li> <li>General maintenance should be conducted during the dry season where possible;</li> <li>Speed limits must apply within the project site as well as on the public gravel access roads to the site;</li> <li>Night driving must be avoided where possible;</li> <li>Site access should be controlled and no unauthorised persons should be allowed onto the site;</li> <li>All personnel should undergo an initial environmental induction with regards to fauna and in particular awareness about not harming or collecting species such as snakes or tortoises;</li> <li>The illegal collection, hunting or harvesting of animals at the site should be strictly forbidden; and II No animals such as dogs or cats to be allowed on site other than those of the landowners.</li> </ul>	
Impact to be addressed/ further investigated	No.

### 5.3.2 Impact 7: Alien Plant Invasion

The clearing and disturbance of areas during the construction phase of the project can result in an increased and ongoing risk of invasion of alien plant species, particularly pioneer species, within the solar project development during the operational phase. Regular alien clearing activities would be required, particularly during the initial stages of the operational phase to limit the spread of alien species. Once the natural vegetation has re-established in previously disturbed areas then the level of alien control required would likely be reduced.

Impact Phase: Operational							
Potential impact description: Clearing and disturbance from construction activities leaves areas along the power line route susceptible to invasion by alien plant species.							
	Extent	Duration	Intensity	Status	Significance	Probability	Confidence
Without Mitigation	L	M	H	Negative	M	M	H
With Mitigation	L	M	M	Negative	L	L	H
Can the impact be reversed?	Yes.						
Will impact cause irreplaceable loss or resources?	No.						
Can impact be avoided, managed or mitigated?	Yes.						

Mitigation measures to reduce residual risk or enhance opportunities:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Disturbed areas such as road verges, lay-down areas and areas utilised by temporary construction facilities must be regularly monitored to detect the establishment of alien species and those species should be eradicated before they spread;</li> <li>Regular alien clearing should be conducted, as needed, using the best-practice methods for the species concerned, the use of herbicides should be avoided as far as possible; and</li> <li>The use of herbicides (if absolutely required) for the control and eradication of alien grasses should be done in accordance with the alien eradication programme in the EMPr to reduce unintended ecological impacts.</li> </ul>	
Impact to be addressed/ further investigated	No.

### 5.3.3 Impact 8: Soil Erosion Risk

The large amount of disturbance created during construction would leave the disturbed areas vulnerable to soil erosion. Consequently, specific measures such as erosion berms and water dispersion features will be required within the solar project development access roads and servitudes. Although this impact has a **MODERATE** significance before mitigation, it can be effectively mitigated against through the maximum use of existing access roads and servitudes and the implementation of erosion control measures.

Impact Phase: Operational							
Potential impact description: Following construction, the site will be vulnerable to soil erosion.							
	Extent	Duration	Intensity	Status	Significance	Probability	Confidence
Without Mitigation	L	H	M	Negative	M	H	H
With Mitigation	L	H	L	Negative	L	L	H
Can the impact be reversed?			No. Once erosion takes place some irreversible damage occurs.				
Will impact cause irreplaceable loss or resources?			Yes. Without mitigation the loss of topsoil would result in an irreversible loss of resources.				
Can impact be avoided, managed or mitigated?			Yes. Erosion control measures can be very effective.				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mitigation measures to reduce residual risk or enhance opportunities:</li> <li>Erosion management at the site should take place according to the Erosion Management Plan and Rehabilitation Plan should be included in the EMPr;</li> <li>All roads and other hardened surfaces should have runoff control features which redirect water flow and dissipate energy in the water stream which may pose an erosion risk;</li> </ul>							
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Regular monitoring for erosion after construction to ensure that no erosion problems have developed as result of the disturbance.</li> </ul>							
Impact to be addressed/ further investigated			Yes. Existing servitude and access roads to be surveyed with problem areas identified for erosion restoration and additional erosion control.				

## 5.4.1 Cumulative Impacts

### 5.4.1.1 Impact 9: Impacts on Broad-Scale Ecological Processes

Multiple existing power lines traverse the broader area. As the proposed power lines considered in this assessment run adjacent to existing power lines for the large majority of their route the cumulative impact is considered to be lower than if they were following novel routes across undisturbed vegetation. Ecological corridors allow for the dispersal and movement of plants and animals across the landscape. This is a vital ecosystem process as it allows for pollination and gene flow. At the large scale the connectivity of the site is excellent. The proposed development would not have a significant impact on gene flow of flora or fauna. The use of existing access roads and servitudes, combined with the use of erosion control measures and the position of the switching station footprint on the plateau, means the proposed development is unlikely to significantly increase any negative impact on the De Aar Region SWSA or freshwater ecosystem priority areas. The cumulative impact on ecological processes such as moisture-, soil/sedimentation-, fire regimes and ecological corridors is considered to be of low significance if mitigation measures are adhered to.

<b>Impact Phase: Cumulative</b>							
<b>Potential impact description:</b> Disruption of dispersal and gene flow of flora and fauna across the landscape, disruption of moisture-, soil/sedimentation- and fire regimes.							
	<b>Extent</b>	<b>Duration</b>	<b>Intensity</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Significance</b>	<b>Probability</b>	<b>Confidence</b>
Without Mitigation	L	H	L	Negative	L	L	H
With Mitigation	L	H	L	Negative	L	L	H
Can the impact be reversed?			No.				
Will impact cause irreplaceable loss or resources?			No.				
Can impact be avoided, managed or mitigated?			Yes.				
Mitigation measures to reduce residual risk or enhance opportunities: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The various mitigation and management plans associated with the development should be followed and implemented effectively to reduce the cumulative contribution of the current development.</li> </ul>							
Impact to be addressed/ further investigated				No.			

<b>Impact Phase: Cumulative</b>							
<b>Potential impact description:</b> Cumulative impact on CBAs and Conservation Objectives							
	<b>Extent</b>	<b>Duration</b>	<b>Intensity</b>	<b>Status</b>	<b>Significance</b>	<b>Probability</b>	<b>Confidence</b>
Without Mitigation	L	H	L	Negative	L	L	H
With Mitigation	L	H	L	Negative	L	L	H
Can the impact be reversed?			No.				

Will impact cause irreplaceable loss or resources?	No.
Can impact be avoided, managed or mitigated?	Yes.
Mitigation measures to reduce residual risk or enhance opportunities: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The final position of new servitudes and pylons should be identified in the field through a reconstruction walk-through to microsite these features and avoid impact on sensitive species and habitats.</li> <li>• The various mitigation and management plans associated with the development should be followed and implemented effectively to reduce the cumulative contribution of the current development.</li> </ul>	
Impact to be addressed/ further investigated	No.

#### 5.4.2 Impact Significance Rating System

The impact significance rating system used in this assessment follows Hacking (2001)<sup>1</sup>. The significance of the impacts associated with the significant aspects can be determined by considering the risk:

Significance of Environmental Impact (Risk) = Probability x Consequence

The consequence of impacts can be described by considering the severity, spatial extent and duration of the impact.

**Table 3: Ranking the Duration and Spatial Scale of impacts**

	Ranking Criteria		
	L	M	H
<b>Duration</b>	Quickly reversible Less than the project life Short-term	Reversible over time Life of the project Medium-term	Permanent Beyond closure Long-term
<b>Spatial Scale</b>	Localised Within site boundary Site	Fairly widespread Beyond site boundary Local	Widespread Far beyond site boundary Regional/national

**Table 4: Criteria for ranking the Severity of negative impacts on the bio-physical environment**

Environment	Ranking Criteria		
	L-	M-	H-
<b>Soils and land capability</b>	Minor deterioration in land capability. Soil alteration resulting in a low negative impact on one of the other environments	Partial loss of land capability. Soil alteration resulting in a moderate negative impact on one of the other environments (e.g. ecology).	Complete loss of land capability. Soil alteration resulting in a high negative impact on one of the other environments (e.g. ecology).
<b>Ecology (Plant and animal life)</b>	Disturbance of areas that are degraded, have little conservation value or are unimportant to humans as a resource. Minor change in species variety or prevalence.	Disturbance of areas that have some conservation value or are of some potential use to humans. Complete change in species variety or	Disturbance of areas that are pristine, have conservation value or are an important resource to humans. Destruction of rare or endangered species.
<b>Surface and Groundwater</b>	Quality deterioration resulting in a low negative impact on one of the other environments (ecology, community health etc.)	Quality deterioration resulting in a moderate negative impact on one of the other environments (ecology, community health etc.).	Quality deterioration resulting in a high negative impact on one of the other environments (ecology, community health etc.).

**Consequence of Impacts**

Having ranked the severity, duration and spatial extent, the overall consequence of impacts can be determined using the following qualitative guidelines:

**Table 3: Ranking the Consequence of an impact**

SEVERITY = L			
DURATION	Long-term	H	MODERATE
	Medium-term	M	
	Short-term	L	
SEVERITY = M			
	Long-term	H	HIGH

<b>DURATION</b>	Medium-term			<b>MODERATE</b>	
	Short-term	<b>L</b>	<b>LOW</b>		
<b>SEVERITY = H</b>					
<b>DURATION</b>	Long-term	<b>H</b>			<b>HIGH</b>
	Medium-term	<b>M</b>			
	Short-term	<b>L</b>	<b>MODERATE</b>		
			<b>L</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>H</b>
			Localised	Fairly widespread Beyond site boundary	Widespread
			Within site boundary	Local	Far beyond site
<b>SPATIAL SCALE</b>					

### Significance of Impacts

Combining the consequence of the impact and the probability of occurrence, as shown by Table 6, provides the overall significance (risk) of impacts.

**Table 4: Ranking the Overall Significance of impacts**

<b>PROBABILITY</b>	Definite Continuous	<b>H</b>	<b>MODERATE</b>		<b>HIGH</b>
	Possible Frequent	<b>M</b>		<b>MODERATE</b>	
	Unlikely Seldom	<b>L</b>	<b>LOW</b>		<b>MODERATE</b>
			<b>L</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>H</b>
<b>CONSEQUENCE (from Table 3)</b>					

The following points were considered when undertaking the assessment:

- Risks and impacts were analysed in the context of the project's area of influence encompassing:
  - Primary project site and related facilities that the client and its contractors develop or controls;
  - Areas potentially impacted by cumulative impacts for further planned development of the project, any existing project or condition and other project-related developments;
  - Areas potentially affected by impacts from unplanned but predictable developments caused by the project that may occur later or at a different location;
- Risks/ Impacts were assessed for all stages of the project cycle including:
  - Pre-construction;
  - Construction; and
  - Operation.

## 6. RESULTS

### 6.1 Floral Assessment

The fieldwork was conducted on the 12<sup>th</sup> of November 2022. The vegetation assessment was performed within the study area and the following map was produced (Figure 4) and the extent of vegetation was assessed. The area has been recorded from the quarter degree grid (2824BD) in which the study site is situated and the vegetations are classified under Kimberley Thornveld (SVk4) and Schmidtsdrif Thornveld (SVk6).

The floral species identified within the proposed site were listed in **Appendix 1** and the potential floral species supposed to be within the proposed site were listed in **Appendix 1a**.

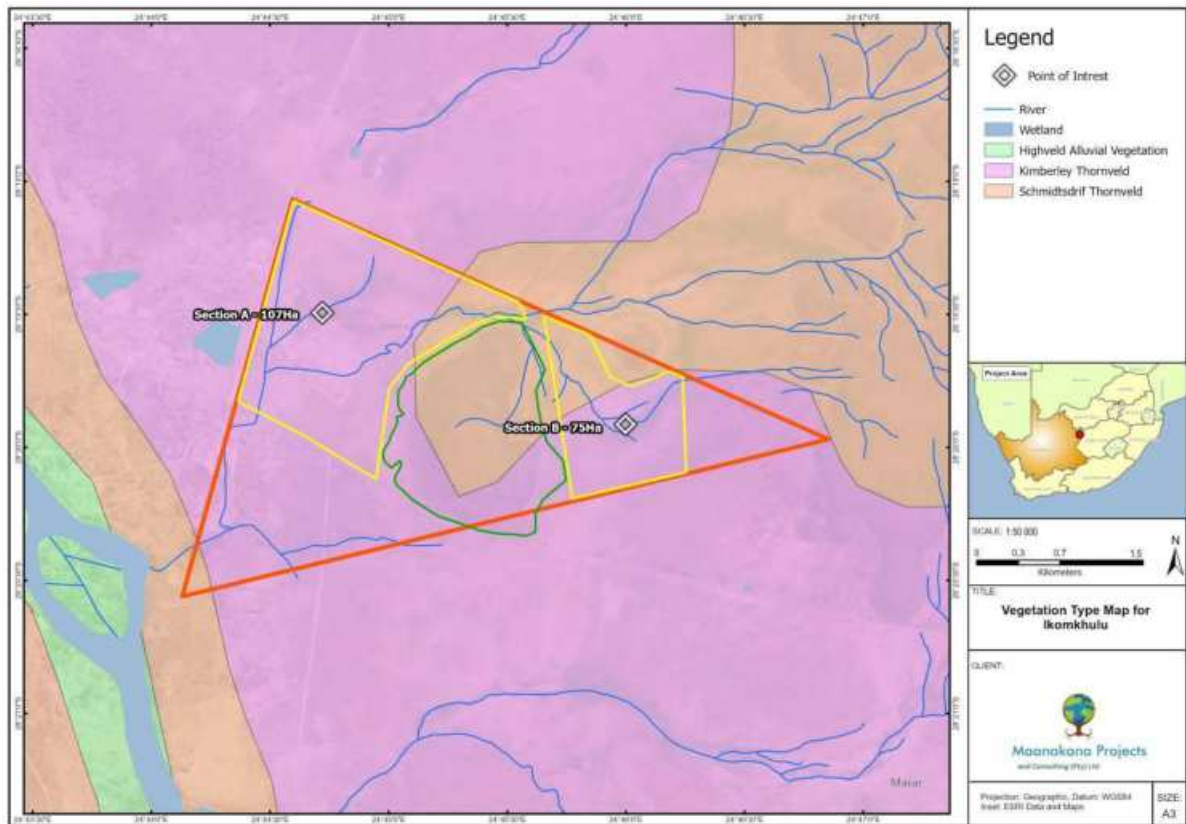


Figure 4 – Vegetation Map

#### 6.1.1 Red data plant species

Red Lists and Red Data Books are scientific publications that document the conservation status of species. They are based on a system that categorizes species according to their risk of extinction. Red Lists are not in themselves legislation to protect species, but are used to inform of threatened species legislation. A review of the site by botanist indicates that the red listed plants were not recorded on the proposed site.

#### 6.1.2 Protected Species

Protected species are species protected by international, national and provincial legislation. Hunting, picking, owning, importing, exporting, transporting, growing, breeding and trading of such species are illegal without valid



permits or licenses. The largest part of the area is cover with the *Acacia mellifera* (*Senegalia mellifera*) (Black thorn), the young trees are very palatable to livestock and should be protected during the first two years and there are also a large presence of *Eragrostis racemose*. The main vegetations on-site are indigenous. Indigenous species are protected species. However, the type of indigenous species on site does not require a license before removal. Among all the species identified onsite there are no protected plants species. All the plants on site are classified as being of **Least Concern (See Appendix 1)**. No special permits will be required to clear the area. However, during remediation, only indigenous plants should be used to recover, preferably similar to those that were removed.

### 6.1.3 Alien Invasive Plants Species (AIPs)

Invasion by destructive alien plant species erodes the natural capital of ecosystems, compromises their stability and is a growing problem in South Africa (Richardson and van Wilgen, 2004). Alien invasion within the proposed project was not much. The Invasive Aliens Plants Species identified within the proposed project site.

A management plan and monitoring programme is recommended to control these plants.

Alien species in South Africa are categorised according to the Alien and Invasive Species Lists, 2014 (GN R599 in GG 37886 of 1 August 2014) of the NEMBA (Act 10 of 2004).

The national list of invasive plant species listed in NEMBA represents the following categories:

- Category 1a: Species requiring compulsory control;
- Category 1b: Invasive species controlled by an invasive species management programme;
- Category 2: Invasive species controlled by area, and
- Category 3: Invasive species controlled by activity

Table 5. Invasive Alien Plants Species (IAPs) within the study area

Invasive Alien Plants Species		
Family Names	Scientific Names	Category
Solanaceae	<i>Datura ferox</i>	1b
Solanaceae	<i>Solanum mauritianum</i>	1b
Poaceae	<i>Arundo donax</i>	1b
Papaveraceae	<i>Argemone ochroleuca</i>	1
Tamaricaceae	<i>Tamarix ramosissima</i>	1b
Simaroubaceae	<i>Ailanthus altissima</i>	3

## **6.2 FAUNAL ASSESSMENT**

### **6.2.1 Avifauna**

**Avifauna** most commonly refers to birds. A list of bird species that occur in the proposed project is presented in **Appendix 2.2**. However, a list of potential birds species were presented in **Appendix 4.1**.

### **6.2.2 Amphibians**

The word **amphibian** means two-lives. Amphibians spend their lives in the water and on land. A list of amphibian's species that could be present in the proposed project is presented in **Appendix 4.2**.

### **6.2.3 Invertebrates**

An invertebrate is an animal without a vertebral column. This group includes 95% of all animal species (Gregory, 2006). A list of invertebrate's species that occur in the proposed site is presented in **Appendix 2.1**. However the potential invertebrates that could be present within the proposed site were presented in **Appendix 4.3**.

### **6.2.4 Mammals**

Mammals are the vertebrates within the class Mammalia. No mammal has been identify' onsite. However, a list of potential mammals that could be on-site were presented in **Appendix 4.4**.

### **6.2.5 Reptiles**

Reptiles are tetrapod animals in the class Reptilia, comprising today's turtles, crocodylians, snakes, amphisbaenas, lizards, tuatara, and their extinct relatives. A list of potential reptiles species that could be present in the proposed project is presented in **Appendix 4.5**.

## 7. IMPACTS AND MITIGATION MEASURES

The purpose of this section is to discuss the potential impacts that will arise because of the proposed Ikomkhulu's Solar Plant project. It is surrounded by tall trees, small trees, lw shrubs, tall shrubs, succulent shrubs, graminoids, succulent herbs.

The earthworks, construction and operation of the facility will change habitats and the ecological environment, infiltration rates, amount of runoff, therefore, the hydrological regime of the site. This impact evaluation will assess and rate the extent, magnitude, duration and significance of each potential impact together with possible mitigation measures.

### 7.1 Impact Assessment Criteria

#### 7.1.1 Extent of the Impact

Items	Extent of the Impact
Study site	1
Local study area	2
Regional	3
National	4
International	5

#### 7.1.2 Duration of the impact

**Short term:** the impact will disappear with mitigation or will be mitigated through a natural process in a period shorter than that of the construction phase – 1;

**Short to Medium term:** the impact will be relevant to the end of a construction phase – 2;

**Medium term:** the impact will last up to the end of the development phases, whereafter it will be entirely negated – 3;

**Long term:** the impact will continue or last for the entire operational lifetime of the development but will be mitigated by direct human action or by natural processes thereafter – 4; and

**Permanent:** environmental ceases to exist - 5

### 7.1.3 Intensity

This indicates the degree to which the impact changes or could change the conditions or quality of the environment.

**None** – 2;

**Low:** the impact alters the affected environment in such a way that the natural processes or functions are not affected – 4;

**Medium:** the affected environment is altered, but functions and processes continue, albeit in a modified way – 6;

**High:** function or process of the affected environment is disturbed to the extent where it temporarily or permanently ceases- 8; and

**Very high:** the process will cease – 10

### 7.1.4 Probability of Occurrence

This describes the probability of the impact occurring. This is rated as:

**Improbable:** chances of this impact are 0 – 1;

**Improbable: low likelihood** - the chance of this impact occurring is between 0 and 25%. However, mitigation measures might be needed in the event of this impact occurring – 2;

**Probable: a distinct possibility** - the chance of this impact occurring is approximately 50% and therefore it needs to be mitigated – 3;

**Highly probable:** the impact is most likely to occur and the planning phase must address the relevant mitigation measures to limit the impact – 4; and

**Definite:** this impact will occur regardless of any prevention measures, or is currently occurring. Mitigation measures or contingency plans must be implemented to contain the impact – 5.

### 7.1.5 Significance mitigation measures

#### Without mitigation measures (WOMM):

0 – 33	Low: the impact is of little importance, but may require some mitigation.
34 – 66	Medium: the impact is of importance and is therefore considered to have a negative impact. Mitigation is required to reduce the negative impacts to acceptable levels.
67 - 100	High: the impact is of major importance and mitigation is essential. Failure to mitigate, with the objective of reducing the impact to acceptable levels, could render the entire development option or entire project proposal unacceptable.

#### Significance with mitigation measures (WMM):

0 – 33	Low: the impact will be mitigated to the point where it is of limited importance.
34 – 66	Medium: despite the successful implementation of the mitigation measures that reduce the negative impacts to acceptable levels, the negative impact remains significant. However, taken within the overall context of the project, the persistent impact does not constitute a fatal flaw.
67 - 100	High: The impact is of major importance. Mitigation of the impact is not possible on a cost-effective basis. The impact is regarded as high importance and taken within the overall context of the project, is regarded as a fatal flaw. An impact regarded as high significance after mitigation could render the entire development option or entire project proposal unacceptable.

## 7.2 Identified Impacts and mitigation measures

### 7.2.1 The Introduction of Alien invasive species

#### Construction Phase

##### Impacts

Introduction and spread of alien invasive vegetation due to both opportunistic invasions after disturbance and the introduction of seed on vehicles.

##### Ratings

	Without mitigation	With mitigation
Extent	Local – 2	Study Site – 1
Duration	Medium – 3	Short – 1
Intensity	High – 8	Medium - 6
Probability	Highly Probable – 4	Probable - 3
Status	Negative	Negative
Significance	Medium – 52	Low - 24

### Mitigation Measures

- Weed control;
- Retain vegetation and soil in position for as long as possible, removing it immediately ahead of construction / earthworks in that area and returning it where possible afterwards;
- Rehabilitate or re-vegetate the remaining open space; and
- Monitor the establishment of alien invasive species within the areas affected by the construction and maintenance and take immediate corrective action where invasive species are observed to be established.

## Operational Phase

### Impacts

Loss of vegetation due to the disturbance of the area within the proposed site.

### Ratings

	Without mitigation	With mitigation
Extent	Local – 2	Study Site – 1
Duration	Long term – 4	Short to Med – 2
Intensity	Low – 4	None – 2
Probability	Probable – 3	Low Likelihood - 2
Status	Negative	Negative
Significance	Low – 30	Low - 10

### Mitigation Measures

- Prohibit the planting of plants species without the approval of a qualified and registered Ecological Specialist.

## 7.2.2 Loss of Vegetation

### Construction Phase

#### Nature of Impact

Removal of vegetation as part of creating a footprint for any development within the study area.

#### Ratings

	Without mitigation	With mitigation
Probability	Definite – 5	Definite- 5
Duration	Long – 4	Short - 1
Intensity	High- 8	Medium – 6

Extent	Regional – 4	Local – 3
Status	Negative	Negative
Significance	High – 75	Medium - 66

### **Mitigation Measures**

- ECO should supervise the relocation of plants where possible;
- Prior to the construction phase, the crew must be briefed on:
  - ✓ The importance of biodiversity;
  - ✓ They must know what alien invasive species are and which ones occur on site;
  - ✓ They must also be aware of potentially threatening faunal species and the reporting procedure when these are detected (e.g. Snakes);
- The Environmental Control Officer (ECO) must be trained in snake awareness and have the contact details of snake handlers within the area should one be required to remove snakes off the construction site;
- The development footprint should be clearly demarcated to ensure that the area of disturbance is minimised. The demarcations must be maintained in position until the cessation of construction works;
- Minimise the road network by utilising existing roads where possible, minimise the frequency of driving within the buffer zone, utilise only light equipment for access and deliveries into areas of unstable soils, in areas where erosion is evident;
- Topsoil, where available, should be conserved and used to re-landscape all disturbed areas if necessary;
- Re-vegetate with indigenous plants only;
- A temporary fence or demarcation must be erected around the construction area (include the servitude, construction camps, areas where material is stored and the actual footprint of the development);
- Prohibit vehicular or pedestrian access into natural areas beyond the demarcated boundary of the construction area;
- No open fires are permitted within naturally vegetated areas;
- A vegetation rehabilitation plan should be implemented. Grassland can be removed as sods and stored within transformed vegetation – remove alien invasive vegetation prior to storing grassland sods in transformed areas. The sods must preferably be removed during the winter months and be replanted at the latest by springtime. The sods should not be stacked on top of each other. Once construction is completed, these sods should be used to cover the areas where it is necessary. In the absence of timely rainfall, the sods should be watered well after planting and at least twice more over the next 2 weeks;
- Construction workers may not remove flora and neither may anyone collect seed from the plants without permission from the local authority;

- No activities should take place on rainy days and at least 2 days afterwards

### Operational Phase

#### Nature of Impact

Illegal harvesting of Plant species

#### Rating

	Without mitigation	With mitigation
Probability	Improbable – 2	Improbable – 1
Duration	Long Term – 4	Short – 2
Intensity	Low – 2	None – 1
Extent	Study Site – 1	Study Site – 1
Status	Negative	Negative
Significance	Low – 14	Low - 4

#### Mitigation Measures

Prohibit the random harvesting of plant species on site



### 7.2.3 Noise and Artificial Lighting Impact

#### Construction Phase

##### Nature of Impact

Increased noise during construction is likely to chase away fauna from within the study site if any, and surroundings. Numerous species will be attracted towards the light sources and this will result in the disruption of natural cycles, such as the reproductive cycle and foraging behaviour.

##### Rating

	Without mitigation	With mitigation
Probability	Highly Probable - 4	Probable – 3
Duration	Long term – 4	Long term – 4
Intensity	Low – 2	None – 0
Extent	Local – 2	Study site – 1
Status	Negative	Negative
Significance	Low – 32	Low - 15

##### Mitigation Measures

- Ensure noise levels are not more than 80 decibels;
- A large part of the noise emitted is due to engine air intake and exhaust cycle. Specifying the use of adequate muffler systems can control much of this engine noise;
- Construction should be restricted to daytime hours;
- It may be appropriate to require contractors to participate in training programs related to project-specific noise requirements, specifications, and/or equipment operations. This may include awareness on the need to limit movement from the proposed site;
- ECO to monitor noise levels regularly and ensure noise is within acceptable levels always.
- Where lighting is required for safety or security reasons, this should be targeted at the areas requiring attention.
- Yellow sodium lights should be prescribed as they do not attract invertebrates at night and will not disturb the existing wildlife. Sodium lamps require a third less energy than conventional light bulbs.

#### **Operational**

##### **Nature of Impact**

Increased light will attract species to the area

## Rating

	Without mitigation	With mitigation
Probability	Improbable – 1	Improbable – 0
Duration	Long term – 4	Long term – 4
Intensity	None – 2	None – 2
Extent	Study site – 1	Study Site - 1
Status	Negative	Negative
Significance	Low – 7	Low – 7

## Mitigation Measures

- Where lighting is required for safety or security reasons, this should be targeted at the areas requiring attention.
- Yellow sodium lights should be prescribed as they do not attract invertebrates at night. sodium lamps require a third less energy than conventional light bulbs.

## 7.2.4 Dust Management

### Construction Phase

#### Nature of Impact

Most of the plant communities are affected by dust deposition so that community structure is altered.

#### Rating

	Without mitigation	With mitigation
Probability	Probable- 3	Low likelihood – 2
Duration	Long term – 4	Long term – 4
Intensity	Medium – 3	Low – 2
Extent	Local – 2	Study site – 1
Status	Negative	Negative
Significance	Low – 27	Low - 14

#### Mitigation Measures

Adequate dust control strategies should be applied to minimise dust emissions to a level where minimal impact on surrounding habitats can be expected; for example:

- Periodic spraying of roads with water or dust inhibitors;
- Cover trucks to prevent dust emission during transportation; and
- Construction vehicles transporting materials to and from the construction site must be covered to reduce the formation of dust.

### Operational Phase

#### Nature of Impact

Increased dust from vehicular movement

#### Rating

	Without mitigation	With mitigation
Probability	Low likelihood – 2	Low likelihood – 2
Duration	Long term – 4	Long term – 4
Intensity	Low – 2	Low – 2
Extent	Study Site – 1	Study Site – 1
Status	Negative	Negative
Significance	Low – 14	Low - 14

#### Mitigation Measures

Only authorised and expanded routes should be used at all times.

## **8. RECOMMENDATIONS**

Recommendations were developed to address and mitigate impacts associated with the proposed development. These recommendations also include general management measures which apply to the proposed development. Mitigation measures have been developed to address issues in all phases throughout the course of the operation from planning, through construction, operation and closure, to the after-care and maintenance.

### **8.1 Construction and operational footprint**

- Limit the footprint area of the construction activities to what is essential to minimise environmental damage. Construction vehicles must use existing roads where possible;
- All informal fires near operations and new construction areas should be prohibited.
- The vegetation clearance during the operational phase will be limited only on the foot print area of the construction activities;
- Edge effects of all construction and operational activities, such as erosion and alien plant species proliferation, which may affect faunal habitat, need to be strictly managed in all areas of increased ecological sensitivity;
- Keep all sensitive demarcated zones outside of the construction area off-limits during the construction and rehabilitation phases of the development; and
- Appropriate sanitary facilities must be provided during the construction phase and all waste removed to an appropriate waste facility.

### **8.2 Vehicle access and speed management**

- All construction footprint areas should remain as small as possible and should not encroach onto surrounding more sensitive areas. It must be ensured that these areas are off-limits to construction vehicles and personnel as much as possible;
- In the event of a breakdown, maintenance of vehicles must take place with care and the recollection of spillage should be practiced near the surface area to prevent ingress of hydrocarbons into the topsoil;
- It must be ensured that all hazardous storage containers and storage areas comply with the relevant SABS standards to prevent leakage. All vehicles must be regularly inspected for leaks. Re-fueling must take place on a sealed surface area to prevent ingress of hydrocarbons into the topsoil; and
- All spills should be immediately cleaned up and treated accordingly.
- A speed restriction of 30 km/h should be placed on all construction vehicles within the project area;
- Drivers should receive regular training and awareness of the need for speed control and the enforcing a maximum speed limit of 30 km/h on all the roads within the construction area;
- Driving at night should be strictly controlled and only allowed where urgent and sauthorised by senior management staff; there should also be a written record of all staff driving at night;

### **8.3 Alien plant species**

- Proliferation of alien and invasive species is expected within any disturbed areas. These species should be eradicated and controlled to prevent their spread beyond the linear development. Alien plant seed dispersal within the top layers of the soil within footprint areas must be controlled as it will have an impact on future rehabilitation;
- Removal of the alien and weed species encountered within the sites must take place to comply with existing legislation (amendments to the regulations under the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 and Section 28 of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998). Removal of species should take place throughout the construction, operational, and rehabilitation/ maintenance phases;
- Species specific and area specific eradication recommendations:
  - Care should be taken with the choice of an appropriate method such as mechanical method to use for the removal of alien species;
  - Footprint areas should be kept as small as possible when removing alien plant species; and
  - No vehicles should be allowed to drive through designated sensitive areas during the eradication of alien and weed species.

### **8.4 Soils**

- All soils excavated and compacted during the operational phase will be taken care to avoid erosion. Special attention should be paid to alien and invasive control within these areas. Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout the life span of the project; and
- Monitor all systems for erosion and incision.

### **8.5 Remediation**

- Upon remediation, re-seeding of indigenous grasses should be implemented in all impacted areas and strategic planting of grassland species should take place;
- As much as vegetation growth possibly should be promoted surrounding the new development in order to protect soils. In this regard, special mention is made of the need to use indigenous vegetation species where seeding and rehabilitation planting (where applicable) are to be implemented.

## **9. CONCLUSION**

The low overall footprint of the development near the ESAs and CBAs of the proposed site, will not going to be affected by the development because it would not compromise the ecological functioning or the long-term conservation value of the area. The vegetation types found onsite it is reflecting the transformation through animals grazing, the species and habitats found within them are therefore fairly widespread and not unique to the project site. The impact of the proposed project is considered to be low and acceptable following mitigation.

## 10. REFERENCES

- BROMILOW C. (2010).** Problem plants and Alien weeds of South Africa. Briza Publications. South Africa
- CLARA, J. (2001).** Site and corridor selection: identification of alternatives. Report no: TSI/EL/01/167.
- FERRAR, A.A. & LÖTTER, M.C. 2007.** Mpumalanga Biodiversity Conservation Plan Handbook. Mpumalanga Tourism & Parks Agency, Nelspruit.
- IBAT Critical Habitat Screening Report, 2016.** Generated under licence from the Integrated Biodiversity Assessment Tool on the 10<sup>th</sup> of August 2018. <http://www.ibatforwbq.org>
- JONES, A., BREUNING-MADSEN, H., BROSSARD, M., DAMPHA, A., DECKERS, J., DEWITTE, O., GALLALI, T., HALLETT, S., JONES, R., KILASARA, M., LE ROUX, P., MICHELI, E, MONTANARELLA, L., SPAARGAREN, O., THIOMBIANO, L., VAN RANST, E., YEMEFACK, M., and ZOUGMORÉ R. (eds.) (2013).** Soil Atlas of Africa. European Commission, Publications Office of the European Union, Luxembourg;
- JONK, M. & WILSON, B. (2016).** A beginner's guide to the plants of kimberley and surrounding areas. With special reference to Magersfontein Battlefield. McGregor Museum.
- KLEYNHANS, C.J. (1999).** A procedure for the determination of the ecological reserve for the national water balance model for South African Rivers. Institute for Water Quality Studies Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, Pretoria;
- KLEYNHANS C.J., MACKENZIE J. AND LOUW M.D. (2007).** Module F: Riparian Vegetation Response Assessment Index in River Classification: Manual for EcoStatus Determination (version 2). Joint Water Research Commission and Department of Water Affairs and Forestry report. WRC Report No. TT 333/08;
- MACFARLANE D.M., TEIXEIRA-LEITE A., GOODMAN P., BATE G AND COLVIN C. (2010).** Draft Report on the Development of a Method and Model for Buffer Zone Determination;
- MUSIL, K.J & HENDERSON. L (1987).** Plant invaders of the Transvaal. Pretoria
- MUCINA L. & RUTHERFORD M. C. (2006).** Vegetation Map of South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland, 1:1 000 000 scale sheet maps. South African National Biodiversity Institute., Pretoria;
- MPUMALANGA BIODIVERSITY SECTOR PLAN (MBSP) (2014).**  
[www.arcgis.com/apps/mapseries/index.html](http://www.arcgis.com/apps/mapseries/index.html). Accessed on the 08<sup>th</sup> of November 2019.
- OUTSHOORN FV (2012).** Guide to grasses of Southern Africa. Briza publications. Crop Life South Africa.
- SCHULTZE R.E. (1997).** South African Atlas of Agrohydrology and Climatology. Water Research Commission, Pretoria, Report TT82/96.
- MPUMALANGA SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK (2018).** Spatial challenges and opportunities report.

TAYLOR C.H. (1996). Red data list of Southern African plants. Strelitzia 4. National Botanical Institute. Pretoria

WEATHER BUREAU (1997). Climate of South Africa, WB 42, Climate Statistics (19611990). Pretoria.

WORLD METEOROLOGICAL ORGANIZATION (WMO) (2019). Climate data for Ekurhuleni accessed on the 20<sup>th</sup> of March 2019 at [www.wmo.int](http://www.wmo.int)

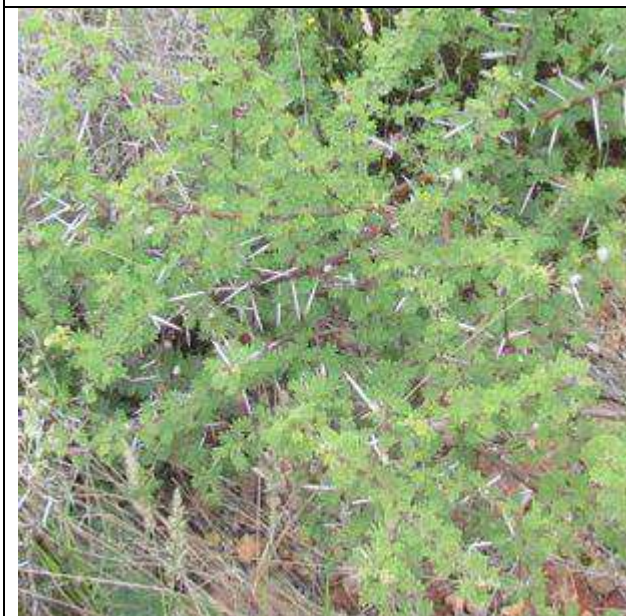
#### APPENDIX 1: SAMPLES OF FLORAL SPECIES



*Acacia mellifera* (Black thorn)



*Boerhavia diffusa*



*Acacia tortilis*



*Eragrostis racemosa*





*Cyperus prolifer*



*Opuntia robusta*



*Schinus molle*



*Typha capensis*



*Tamarix ramosissima*



*Ailanthus altissima*





*Eragrostis* spp.



*Searsia lancea*



*Arundo donax*



*Ziziphus mucronata*



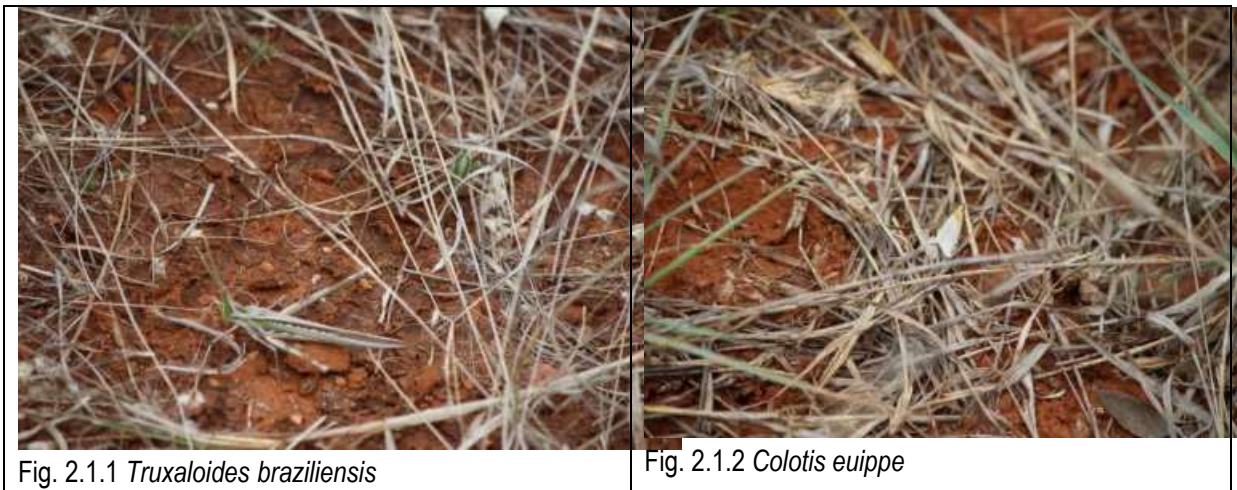
*Argemone ochroleuca*



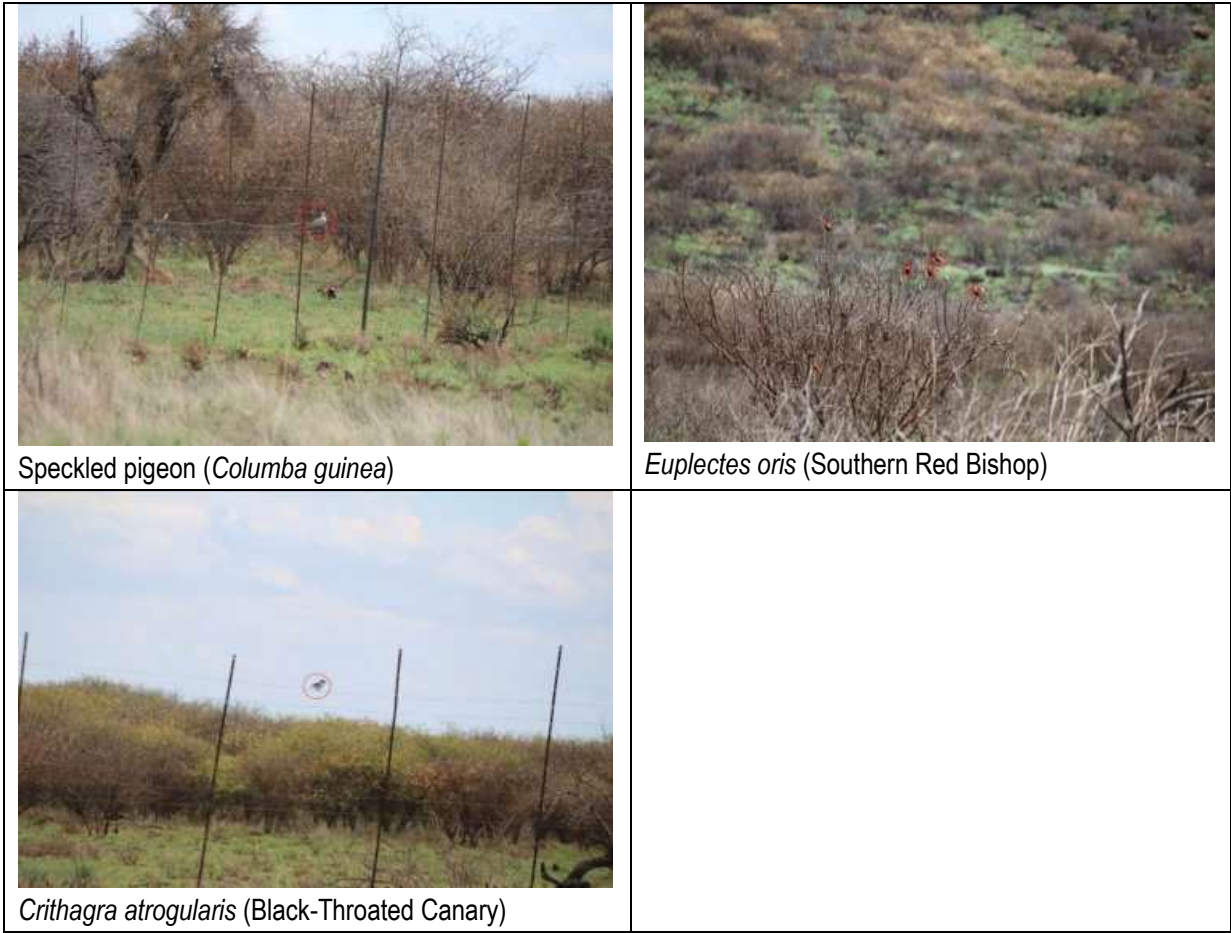




**APPENDIX 2: FAUNAL SPECIES STATUS**  
**APPENDIX 2.1: INVERTEBRATES**



**APPENDIX 2.2: AVIFAUNA SPECIES**



**APPENDIX 2.3. Mammals**



**APPENDIX 3: FLORAL SPECIES**  
**APPENDIX 3.1 POTENTIAL FLORAL SPECIES**

This list was compiled by extracting a list of species from <http://newposa.sanbi.org/> accessed on the 29<sup>th</sup> of November 2022.

Family	Species	Family	Species	Family	Species
Acanthaceae	<i>Barleria rigida</i>	Colchicaceae	<i>Ornithoglossum vulgare</i>	Poaceae	<i>Eragrostis</i>
	<i>Dicliptera clinopodia</i>	Commelinaceae	<i>Commelina africana</i>		<i>Eragrostis bicolor</i>
Aizoaceae	<i>Galenia pubescens</i>	Crassulaceae	<i>Tylecodon ventricosus</i>		<i>Eragrostis</i>
	<i>Delosperma sp.</i>		<i>Crassula corallina</i>		<i>Eragrostis curvula</i>
	<i>Chasmatophyllum</i>		<i>Adromischus</i>		<i>Eragrostis</i>
	<i>Galenia sarcophylla</i>	Cucurbitaceae	<i>Cucumis africanus</i>		<i>Eragrostis</i>
	<i>Galenia secunda</i>		<i>Cucumis heptadactylus</i>		<i>Eragrostis</i>
	<i>Mesembryanthemum</i>		<i>Cucumis myriocarpus</i>		<i>Eragrostis</i>
	<i>Oscularia deltoides</i>	Cyperaceae	<i>Bulbostylis humilis</i>		<i>Eragrostis obtusa</i>
	<i>Ruschia sp.</i>		<i>Cyperus congestus</i>		<i>Eragrostis</i>
	<i>Tetragonia fruticosa</i>		<i>Cyperus marginatus</i>		<i>Eragrostis</i>
	Amaranthaceae	<i>Atriplex vestita</i>	Dryopteridaceae		<i>Arachniodes webbiana</i>
<i>Bassia salsoloides</i>		Ebenaceae	<i>Euclea crispa</i>		<i>Eragrostis</i>
<i>Salsola calluna</i>		Euphorbiaceae	<i>Euphorbia arida</i>		<i>Festuca costata</i>
<i>Salsola dealata</i>			<i>Euphorbia flanaganii</i>		<i>Fingerhuthia</i>
<i>Salsola glabrescens</i>			<i>Euphorbia juttae</i>		<i>Heteropogon</i>
<i>Salsola humifusa</i>			<i>Amphithalea muraltioides</i>		<i>Hyparrhenia hirta</i>
			<i>Argyrolobium sp.</i>		<i>Leptochloa fusca</i>
Amaryllidaceae	<i>Brunsvigia radulosa</i>	<i>Calobota spinescens</i>	<i>Melica decumbens</i>		
	<i>Cyrtanthus huttonii</i>	<i>Cullen tomentosum</i>	<i>Melinis repens</i>		
Anacardiaceae	<i>Searsia ciliata</i>	<i>Indigastrium niveum</i>	<i>Oropetium</i>		
Apiaceae	<i>Apium graveolens</i>	Fabaceae	<i>Indigofera alternans</i>		<i>Panicum</i>
	<i>Asclepias gibba</i>		<i>Indigofera hedyantha</i>		<i>Panicum</i>
Apocynaceae	<i>Brachystelma rubellum</i>		<i>Leobordea platycarpa</i>		<i>Panicum sp.</i>
	<i>Ceropegia multiflora</i>		<i>Lessertia annularis</i>		<i>Panicum</i>
	<i>Gomphocarpus</i>		<i>Lotononis laxa</i>		<i>Pennisetum</i>
	<i>Microloma armatum</i>		<i>Lotononis pungens</i>		<i>Pentameris</i>
	<i>Pachypodium</i>		<i>Medicago sativa</i>	<i>Pentameris</i>	
	<i>Stapelia grandiflora</i>		<i>Melolobium calycinum</i>	<i>Puccinellia</i>	
	<i>Stenostelma</i>		<i>Melolobium candicans</i>	<i>Puccinellia distans</i>	
Asparagaceae	<i>Asparagus striatus</i>		<i>Rhynchosia adenodes</i>	<i>Setaria</i>	
	<i>Asparagus suaveolens</i>		Funariaceae	<i>Goniomitrium africanum</i>	<i>Sorghum</i>
Asphodelaceae	<i>Bulbine frutescens</i>				

Family	Species	Family	Species	Family	Species
	<i>Osteospermum</i>		<i>Hibiscus pusillus</i>		<i>Riccia albomata</i>

	<i>Osteospermum</i>		<i>Malva parviflora</i>	Ricciaceae	<i>Riccia nigrella</i>
	<i>Osteospermum</i>	Melianthaceae	<i>Radyera urens</i>	Rubiaceae	<i>Nenax microphylla</i>
	<i>Othonna pavonia</i>		<i>Melianthus comosus</i>	Ruscaceae	<i>Sansevieria aethiopica</i>
	<i>Pegolettia retrofracta</i>		<i>Melianthus dregeanus</i>	Santalaceae	<i>Osyris lanceolata</i>
	<i>Pentzia calcarea</i>		<i>Disa pulchra</i>		Sapindaceae
	<i>Pentzia elegans</i>	Orchidaceae	<i>Orthochilus foliosus</i>	<i>Allophylus decipiens</i>	
	<i>Pentzia globosa</i>		<i>Satyrium longicauda</i>	Scrophulariaceae	<i>Aptosimum</i>
	<i>Pentzia incana</i>		<i>Satyrium</i>		<i>Aptosimum spinescens</i>
	<i>Pentzia lanata</i>	Oxalidaceae	<i>Oxalis depressa</i>		<i>Chaenostoma</i>
	<i>Pentzia quinquefida</i>	Pedaliaceae	<i>Pterodiscus luridus</i>		<i>Chaenostoma</i>
	<i>Pentzia sp.</i>		<i>Sesamum capense</i>		<i>Hebenstretia dura</i>
	<i>Pentzia spinescens</i>	Peraceae	<i>Clutia thunbergii</i>		<i>Jamesbrittenia</i>
	<i>Phymaspermum</i>	Phyllanthaceae	<i>Phyllanthus</i>		<i>Jamesbrittenia filicaulis</i>
	<i>Phymaspermum</i>	Pittosporaceae	<i>Pittosporum viridiflorum</i>		<i>Limosella africana</i>
	<i>Printzia huttoni</i>	Plantaginaceae	<i>Plantago major</i>		<i>Limosella sp.</i>
	<i>Pteronia erythrochaeta</i>	Poaceae	<i>Alloteropsis semialata</i>		<i>Manulea fragrans</i>
	<i>Pteronia glauca</i>		<i>Aristida adscensionis</i>	<i>Nemesia linearis</i>	
	<i>Pteronia glaucescens</i>		<i>Aristida congesta</i>	<i>Nemesia sp.</i>	
	<i>Pteronia sordida</i>		<i>Aristida congesta</i>	<i>Peliostomum</i>	
	<i>Schistostephium</i>		<i>Aristida diffusa</i>	<i>Peliostomum</i>	
	<i>Senecio isatideus</i>		<i>Aristida diffusa</i>	<i>Selago albida</i>	
	<i>Senecio leptophyllus</i>		<i>Aristida vestita</i>	<i>Selago geniculata</i>	
	<i>Senecio niveus</i>		<i>Brachiaria eruciformis</i>	<i>Selago paniculata</i>	
	<i>Heliotropium ciliatum</i>		<i>Cenchrus ciliaris</i>	<i>Selago saxatilis</i>	
Boraginaceae	<i>Heliotropium</i>		<i>Chloris virgata</i>	Solanaceae	<i>Zaluzianskya karrooica</i>
	<i>Heliotropium lineare</i>		<i>Cymbopogon pospischilii</i>		<i>Lycium horridum</i>
	<i>Lithospermum</i>		<i>Cynodon incompletus</i>		<i>Lycium pumilum</i>
	<i>Erucastrum strigosum</i>		<i>Cynodon polevansii</i>		<i>Solanum humile</i>
Brassicaceae	<i>Heliophila minima</i>		<i>Digitaria eriantha</i>	<i>Solanum retroflexum</i>	
	<i>Rorippa fluviatilis</i>	<i>Digitaria sp.</i>	Tecophilaeaceae	<i>Cyanella lutea</i>	
Bryaceae	<i>Bryum argenteum</i>	<i>Elionurus muticus</i>	Thymelaeaceae	<i>Lasiosiphon</i>	
	<i>Bryum sp.</i>	<i>Enneapogon desvauxii</i>	Verbenaceae	<i>Chascanum</i>	
Campanulaceae	<i>Wahlenbergia nodosa</i>	<i>Enneapogon scaber</i>		<i>Roepera</i>	
Caryophyllaceae	<i>Dianthus micropetalus</i>	<i>Enneapogon scoparius</i>	Zygophyllaceae	<i>Tetraena microcarpa</i>	
	<i>Spergularia bocconeii</i>	<i>Eragrostis barrelieri</i>		<i>Tribulus terrestris</i>	
Colchicaceae	<i>Colchicum asteroides</i>				

### APPENDIX 3.2: Potential protected flora species

Potential protected floral species that have been recorded by the Northern Cape Conservation Act.

Family	Species	Family	Species	
Aizoaceae	<i>Chasmatophyllum maninum</i>	Fabaceae	<i>Lessertia annularis</i>	
	<i>Delosperma sp.</i>	Geraniaceae	<i>Pelargonium aestivale</i>	
	<i>Galenia pubescens</i>		<i>Pelargonium althaeoides</i>	
	<i>Galenia sarcophylla</i>		<i>Pelargonium pseudofumarioides</i>	
	<i>Galenia secunda</i>		<i>Pelargonium tragacanthoides</i>	
	<i>Mesembryanthemum coriarium</i>	Hyacinthaceae	<i>Daubenya comata</i>	
	<i>Oscularia deltoides</i>		<i>Lachenalia ensifolia</i>	
	<i>Ruschia sp.</i>		<i>Ornithogalum nanodes</i>	
<i>Tetraonia fruticosa</i>	<i>Gladiolus dalenii</i>			
Amaryllidaceae	<i>Brunsvigia radulosa</i>	Iridaceae	<i>Gladiolus ecklonii</i>	
	<i>Cyrtanthus huttonii</i>		<i>Gladiolus permeabilis</i>	
Apiaceae	<i>Apium graveolens</i>			<i>Moraea falcifolia</i>



Apocynaceae	<i>Asclepias qibba</i>	Orchidaceae	<i>Moraea pallida</i>
	<i>Brachystelma rubellum</i>		<i>Syringodea concolor</i>
	<i>Ceropegia multiflora</i>		<i>Disa pulchra</i>
	<i>Gomphocarpus fruticosus</i>		<i>Orthochilus foliosus</i>
	<i>Microloma armatum</i>		<i>Satyrium longicauda</i>
	<i>Pachypodium succulentum</i>		<i>Satyrium membranaceum</i>
	<i>Stapelia grandiflora</i>		Oxalidaceae
Carvophyllaceae	<i>Stenostelma eustegioides</i>	Scrophulariaceae	<i>Jamesbrittenia aurantiaca</i>
	<i>Dianthus micropetalus</i>		<i>Jamesbrittenia filicaulis</i>
Crassulaceae	<i>Adromischus caryophyllaceus</i>	Tecophilaeaceae	<i>Manulea fragrans</i>
	<i>Crassula corallina</i>		<i>Nemesia linearis</i>
	<i>Tylecodon ventricosus</i>		<i>Cyanella lutea</i>
Euphorbiaceae	<i>Euphorbia arida</i>		
	<i>Euphorbia flanaganii</i>		
	<i>Euphorbia juttae</i>		

#### APPENDIX 4: POTENTIAL FAUNAL SPECIES

##### APPENDIX 4.1: POTENTIAL AVIFAUNA SPECIES

Common name	Scientific name	Status
Long-tailed Widowbird	<i>Euplectes progne</i>	LC
Laughing Dove	<i>Streptopelia senegalensis</i>	LC
Blacksmith Lapwing	<i>Vanellus armatus</i>	LC
Southern Red Bishop	<i>Euplectes orix</i>	LC
Hadedda Ibis	<i>Bostrychia hagedash</i>	LC
Southern Masked-Weaver	<i>Ploceus velatus</i>	LC
Common Fisca	<i>Lanius collaris</i>	LC
Egyptian Goose	<i>Alopochen aegyptiacus</i>	LC
Yellow-billed Duck	<i>Anas undulata</i>	LC
Cape Sparrow	<i>Passer melanurus</i>	LC
Cape Longclaw	<i>Macronyx capensis</i>	LC
African Stonechat	<i>Saxicola torquatus</i>	LC
Red-knobbed Coot	<i>Fulica cristata</i>	LC
Cape Turtle-Dove	<i>Streptopelia capicola</i>	LC
Swainson's Spurfow	<i>Pternistis swainsonii</i>	LC
Black-headed Heron	<i>Ardea melanocephala</i>	LC
Black-shouldered Kite	<i>Elanus caeruleus</i>	LC
African Pipit	<i>Anthus cinnamomeus</i>	LC
Helmeted Guineafowl	<i>Numida meleagris</i>	LC
South African Cliff-Swallow	<i>Hirundo spilodera</i>	LC
Reed Cormorant	<i>Phalacrocorax africanus</i>	LC
Yellow-crowned Bishop	<i>Euplectes afer</i>	LC
Cattle Egret	<i>Bubulcus ibis</i>	LC

Speckled Pigeon	<i>Columba guinea</i>	LC
Spur-winged Goose	<i>Plectropterus gambensis</i>	LC
Little Grebe	<i>Tachybaptus ruficollis</i>	LC
Greater Striped Swallow	<i>Hirundo cucullata</i>	LC
Levaillant's Cisticola	<i>Cisticola tinniens</i>	LC
Red-billed Quelea	<i>Quelea quelea</i>	LC
African Sacred Ibis	<i>Threskiornis aethiopicus</i>	LC
Barn Swallow	<i>Hirundo rustica</i>	LC
Black-throated Canary	<i>Crithagra atrogularis</i>	LC
Red-capped Lark	<i>Calandrella cinerea</i>	LC
Cape Wagtail	<i>Motacilla capensis</i>	LC
Common Myna	<i>Acridotheres tristis</i>	LC
White-rumped Swift	<i>Apus caffer</i>	LC
Zitting Cisticola	<i>Cisticola juncidis</i>	LC
Red-eyed Dove	<i>Streptopelia semitorquata</i>	LC
Fan-tailed Widowbird	<i>Euplectes axillaris</i>	LC
White-throated Swallow	<i>Hirundo albigularis</i>	LC
Common Moorhen	<i>Gallinula chloropus</i>	LC
African Spoonbill	<i>Platalea alba</i>	LC
Pin-tailed Whydah	<i>Vidua macroura</i>	LC
Amur Falcon	<i>Falco amurensis</i>	LC
Red-billed Teal	<i>Anas erythrorhyncha</i>	LC
House Sparrow	<i>Passer domesticus</i>	LC
Glossy Ibis	<i>Plegadis falcinellus</i>	LC
Crowned Lapwing	<i>Vanellus coronatus</i>	LC
Spotted Thick-knee	<i>Burhinus capensis</i>	LC
Common Waxbill	<i>Estrilda astrild</i>	LC
Common Quail	<i>Coturnix coturnix</i>	LC
Grey Heron	<i>Ardea cinerea</i>	LC
White-winged Widowbird	<i>Euplectes albonotatus</i>	LC
Little Swift	<i>Apus affinis</i>	LC
Three-banded Plover	<i>Charadrius tricollaris</i>	LC
Speckled Mousebird	<i>Colius striatus</i>	LC
Rock Dove	<i>Columba livia</i>	LC
Pink-billed Lark	<i>Spizocorys conirostris</i>	LC

Southern Pochard	<i>Netta erythrophthalma</i>	LC
Southern Grey-headed Sparrow	<i>Passer diffusus</i>	LC
Yellow-billed Egret	<i>Egretta intermedia</i>	LC
African Quailfinch	<i>Ortygospiza atricollis</i>	LC
Cape Shoveler	<i>Anas smithii</i>	LC
Cape Robin-Chat	<i>Cossypha caffra</i>	LC
African Darter	<i>Anhinga rufa</i>	LC
Little Egret	<i>Egretta garzetta</i>	LC
Blue Korhaan	<i>Eupodotis caerulescens</i>	NT
Whiskered Tern	<i>Chlidonias hybrida</i>	LC
Brown-throated Martin	<i>Riparia paludicola</i>	LC
Common Greenshank	<i>Tringa nebularia</i>	LC
Pied Crow	<i>Corvus albus</i>	LC
Wood Sandpiper	<i>Tringa glareola</i>	LC
Black-winged Stilt	<i>Himantopus himantopus</i>	LC
Ruff Ruff	<i>Philomachus pugnax</i>	LC
Black-chested Prinia	<i>Prinia flavicans</i>	LC
Cloud Cisticola	<i>Cisticola textrix</i>	LC
Yellow Canary	<i>Crithagra flaviventris</i>	LC
White-faced Duck	<i>Dendrocygna viduata</i>	LC
Lesser Swamp-Warbler	<i>Acrocephalus gracilirostris</i>	LC
Cape Crow	<i>Corvus capensis</i>	LC
White-breasted Cormorant	<i>Phalacrocorax carbo</i>	LC
Diderick Cuckoo	<i>Chrysococcyx caprius</i>	LC
African Snipe	<i>Gallinago nigripennis</i>	LC
Greater Kestrel	<i>Falco rupicoloides</i>	LC
Common Sandpiper	<i>Actitis hypoleucos</i>	LC
Karoo Thrush	<i>Turdus smithi</i>	LC
African Palm-Swift	<i>Cypsiurus parvus</i>	LC
Black-crowned Night-Heron	<i>Nycticorax nycticorax</i>	LC
African Black Duck	<i>Anas sparsa</i>	LC
Pale-crowned Cisticola	<i>Cisticola cinnamomeus</i>	LC
Red-headed Finch	<i>Amadina erythrocephala</i>	LC
Greater Flamingo	<i>Phoenicopterus ruber</i>	NT
Grey-winged Francolin	<i>Scleroptila africanus</i>	LC



Hamerkop Hamerkop	<i>Scopus umbretta</i>	LC
Yellow-fronted Canary	<i>Crithagra mozambicus</i>	LC
Pallid Harrier	<i>Circus macrourus</i>	NT
Maccoa Duck	<i>Oxyura maccoa</i>	LC
Secretarybird Secretarybird	<i>Sagittarius serpentarius</i>	NT
Red-footed Falcon	<i>Falco vespertinus</i>	LC
Mountain Wheatear	<i>Oenanthe monticola</i>	LC
Black-winged Pratincole	<i>Glareola nordmanni</i>	NT
Lesser Grey Shrike	<i>Lanius minor</i>	LC

#### APPENDIX 4.2 POTENTIAL AMPHIBIANS SPECIES

Family	Scientific Name	Common Name	Data Source	Status
Brevicipitidae	<i>Breviceps adspersus</i>	Bushveld Rain Frog	FrogMAP, GBIF	LC
Bufonidae	<i>Poyntonophrynus</i>	Southern Pygmy Toad	FrogMAP	LC
	<i>Vandijkophrynus</i>	Karoo Toad	FrogMAP, GBIF	LC
	<i>Amietophrynus</i>	Marbled Toad	GBIF	LC
	<i>Amietophrynus rangeri</i>	Raucous Toad	GBIF	LC
	Hyperoliidae	<i>Kassina senegalensis</i>	Bubbling Kassina	FrogMAP, GBIF
Pipidae	<i>Xenopus laevis</i>	African Clawed Frog	GBIF	LC
Pyxicephalidae	<i>Amietia fuscicula</i>	Cape River Frog	FrogMAP	LC
	<i>Cacosternum boettgeri</i>	Common Caco	FrogMAP, GBIF	LC
	<i>Pyxicephalus</i>	Giant Bull Frog	FrogMAP	NT
	<i>Tomopterna tandyi</i>	Tandy's Sand Frog	FrogMAP, GBIF	LC
	<i>Stronaxolopus aravii</i>	Grav's Grass Frog	GBIF	LC
	<i>Tomopterna cryptotis</i>	Striped Pyxie	GBIF	LC

#### APPENDIX 4.3 POTENTIAL INVERTEBRATES SPECIES

Family	Scientific Name	Common Name	Data Source	Status
Carabidae	<i>Anthia thoracica</i>	Gewone Ooapister	GBIF	NE
Coenagrionidae	<i>Pseudaagrion newtoni</i>	Harlequin Sprite	GBIF	VU
	<i>Africallagma glaucum</i>	Swamp Bluet	OdonataMAP	LC
	<i>Africallagma</i>	Sapphire Bluet	GBIF	LC
	<i>Pseudaagrion cafferum</i>	Sprinkwater Sprite	GBIF	LC
	<i>Pseudaagrion vaalense</i>	Vaal Sprite	GBIF	LC
	<i>Pseudaagrion citricola</i>	Yellow-Faced Sprite	GBIF	LC
Crambidae	<i>Loxostege frustalis</i>		LepiMAP, GBIF	NE
Ctenizidae	<i>Stasimopus unispinosus</i>		GBIF	NE
Cyrtoucheniidae	<i>Ancylotrypa pusilla</i>		GBIF	NE
Daesiidae	<i>Biton schreineri</i>		GBIF	NE
Eupterotidae	<i>Rhabdosia vaninia</i>		LepiMAP	NE

Gnaphosidae	<i>Drassodes tessellatus</i>		GBIF	NE	
	<i>Theuma schreineri</i>		GBIF	NE	
	<i>Zelotes fuliginus</i>		GBIF	NE	
	<i>Zelotes invidus</i>		GBIF	NE	
	<i>Notogomphus</i>	Yellowjack Longlegs	GBIF	LC	
Gomphidae	<i>Ceratogomphus pictus</i>	Common Thorntail	GBIF	LC	
Hesperiidae	<i>Spialia sataspes</i>	Boland sandman	LepiMAP	LC	
	<i>Spialia agylla</i>	Grassveld Sandman	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Metisella malgacha</i>	Grassveld Svløh	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Kedestes lepenula</i>	Chequered Ranger	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Kedestes barberae</i>	Freckled Ranger	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Gomalia elma</i>	Green-marbled Skipper	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Eretis umbra</i>	Small Marbled Elf	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Spialia spio</i>	Mountain Sandman	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Spialia nanus</i>	Dwarf Sandman	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Spialia mafa</i>	Mafa Sandman	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Spialia diomus</i>	Common Sandman	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Spialia asterodia</i>	Star Sandman	GBIF	LC	
		<i>Galeosoma schreineri</i>		GBIF	NE
		<i>Goravrella schreineri</i>		GBIF	NE
Libellulidae	<i>Crocothemis erythraea</i>	Broad Scarlet	OdonataMAP	LC	
	<i>Sympetrum</i>	Red-veined Darter or	OdonataMAP	LC	
	<i>Trithemis arteriosa</i>	Red-veined Dropwing	OdonataMAP	LC	
	<i>Acisoma panorpoides</i>	Grizzled Pintail	GBIF	LC	
Liocranidae	<i>Rhaeboctesis</i>		GBIF	NE	
	<i>Argyraspodes</i>	Warrior silver-spotted	LepiMAP, GBIF	LC	
	<i>Chrysoritis chrysaor</i>	Burnished opal	LepiMAP, GBIF	LC	
	<i>Tylopaedia sardonyx</i>	King Copper	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Trimenia macmasteri</i>	McMaster's Silver-	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Trimenia argyroplaga</i>	Large Silver-spotted	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Thestor protumnus</i>	Boland Skolly	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Thestor basutus</i>	Basuto Skolly	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Oraidium barberae</i>	Dwarf Blue	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Lycaena clarki</i>	Eastern Sorrel Copper	GBIF	LC	
Lycaenidae	<i>Leptotes brevidentatus</i>	Short-toothed Zebra	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Lepidochrysops patricia</i>		GBIF	LC	
	<i>Lepidochrysops ortvaia</i>	Koppie Blue	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Lepidochrysops letsea</i>	Free State Blue	GBIF	LC	
	<i>Iolaus bowkeri</i>		GBIF	LC	

#### APPENDIX 4.4 POTENTIAL MAMMALS

Family	Scientific Name	Common Name	Data	Status	Likelihood
Bathyergidae	<i>Cryptomys</i>	African Mole Rat	GBIF	LC	High
	<i>Redunca fulvorufula</i>	Southern Mountain	GBIF	EN	High
	<i>Syncerus caffer</i>	African Buffalo	GBIF	LC	Low
	<i>Pelea capreolus</i>	Grev Rhebok	GBIF	NT	High
	<i>Oryx gazella</i>	Gemsbok	MammalMAP	LC	Low
	<i>Raphicerus</i>	Steenbok	MammalMAP	LC	High

Bovidae	<i>Antidorcas</i>	Springbok	GBIF	LC	Low
	<i>Tragelaphus</i>	Greater Kudu	GBIF	LC	High
	<i>Sylvicapra arimmia</i>	Common Duiker	GBIF	LC	High
	<i>Alcelaphus</i>	Bubal Hartebeest	GBIF	LC	Low
	<i>Damaliscus</i>	Bontebok	GBIF	LC	Low
	<i>Connochaetes anou</i>	Black Wildebeest	GBIF	LC	Low
Cercopithecidae	<i>Otocyon megalotis</i>	Bat-eared Fox	MammalMAP	LC	High
	<i>Vulpes chama</i>	Cape Fox	GBIF	LC	High
	<i>Chlorocebus</i>	Vervet Monkey	GBIF	LC	High
Erinaceidae	<i>Atelerix frontalis</i>	South African	GBIF	NT	High
Felidae	<i>Felis nigripes</i>	Black-footed Cat	MammalMAP	VU	High
	<i>Leptailurus serval</i>	Serval	GBIF	LC	High
	<i>Felis catus</i>	Domestic Cat	MammalMAP	INT	High
Gliridae	<i>Graphiurus ocellaris</i>	Spectacled	GBIF	NT	High
Herpestidae	<i>Cynictis penicillata</i>	Yellow Mongoose	MammalMAP	LC	High
	<i>Suricata suricatta</i>	Meerkat	GBIF	LC	High
	<i>Atilax paludinosus</i>	Marsh Mongoose	GBIF	LC	High
Hyaenidae	<i>Proteles cristata</i>	Aardwolf	MammalMAP	LC	High
Hystricidae	<i>Hystrix</i>	Cape Porcupine	MammalMAP	LC	High
Leporidae	<i>Bunolagus</i>	Riverine Rabbit	GBIF	CR	High
	<i>Lepus saxatilis</i>	Scrub Hare	MammalMAP	LC	High
	<i>Lepus capensis</i>	Cape Hare	GBIF	LC	High
	<i>Pronolagus</i>	Hewitt's Red Rock	GBIF	LC	High
	<i>Elephantulus</i>	Cape Elephant	GBIF	LC	High
	<i>Elephantulus</i>	Eastern Rock	GBIF	LC	High
Macroscelididae	<i>Macroscelides</i>	Round-Eared	GBIF	LC	High
	<i>Elephantulus</i>	Western Rock	GBIF	LC	High
Muridae	<i>Otomys auratus</i>	Vlei Rat	GBIF	NT	High
	<i>Otomys sloggetti</i>	Sloggett's Vlei Rat	GBIF	LC	Low
	<i>Aethomys ineptus</i>	Tete Veld	GBIF	LC	Low

#### APPENDIX 4.5 POTENTIAL REPTILES

Familv	Scientific Name	Common Name	Data Source	Status
Agamidae	<i>Agama aculeata</i>	Common Ground Agama	ReptileMAP	LC
	<i>Agama atra</i>	Southern Rock Agama	GBIF	LC
Cordylidae	<i>Karusasaurus polyzonus</i>	Karoo Girdled Lizard	ReptileMAP	LC
Elapidae	<i>Aspidelaps lubricus</i>	Cape Coral Snake	GBIF	LC
	<i>Chondrodactylus</i>	Bibron's Thick-toed Gecko	GBIF	LC

Gekkonidae	<i>Pachydactylus</i>	Common Banded Gecko	GBIF	LC
Lacertidae	<i>Pedioplanis</i>	Namaqua Sand Lizard	ReptileMAP	LC
	<i>Nucras holubi</i>	Holub's Sandveld Lizard	GBIF	LC
	<i>Lycophidion capense</i>	Cape Wolf Snake	ReptileMAP	LC
	<i>Psammophylax</i>	Rhombic Skaapsteker	GBIF	LC
Lamprophiidae	<i>Psammophis trinasalis</i>	Fork-marked Sand Snake	GBIF	LC
	<i>Lamprophis aurora</i>	Aurora House Snake	GBIF	LC
	<i>Duberria lutrix</i>	Common Slug-Eater	GBIF	LC
Pelomedusidae	<i>Pelomedusa subrufa</i>	Marsh Terrapin	GBIF	LC
	<i>Trachylepis sulcata</i>	Western Rock Skink	Observed	LC
	<i>Acontias gracilicauda</i>	Thin-tailed Legless Skink	GBIF	LC
Testudinidae	<i>Homopus boulengeri</i>	Karoo Padloper	GBIF	NT (EN*)
	<i>Psammobates tentorius</i>	Tent Tortoise	GBIF	LC
	<i>Homopus areolatus</i>	Parrot-Beaked Tortoise	GBIF	LC
	<i>Stigmochelys pardalis</i>	Leopard Tortoise	GBIF,	LC
	<i>Homopus femoralis</i>	Greater Padloper	GBIF	LC
	<i>Psammobates</i>	Serrated Tortoise	GBIF	NE
	Varanidae	<i>Varanus albigularis</i>	Rock Monitor	ReptileMAP

## APPENDIX 5: CV'S OF THE TEAM

### 1. MILAMBO FREDDY TSHIALA

Email: mftshiala@gmail.com

Tel/Cell: 0836691702

Total Years of Experience: 16

#### Education:

Qualification	Institution	Completed
Doctor of Philosophy in Environment and Society	University of Pretoria	2014
Master's Degree in Environment and Society at	University of Pretoria	2006
BSC (Honours Degree) in Agronomy	University of Kongo	2000
Occupational health and safety, NQF Level 5	NOSA (Pty) Ltd	2015
Applying SHE principles and Procedures	NOSA (Pty) Ltd	2015
Construction Regulations and Training Course	NOSA (Pty) Ltd	2015
Introduction to OHSACT	NOSA (Pty) Ltd	2014
Wetlands Management: Introduction and Delineation	University of Free State	2013
Horticultural Management Training	University of Pretoria	2006
Learning ArcGis	University of Pretoria	2004

#### Membership of Relevant Professional:

Membership	Professional Organisations
Registration Number 1519/2018	SACPCMP
Registration Number 4000021/18	SACNASP

#### Membership of Professional Associations:

Membership	Professional Associations
Registration Number 5358	IAIAsa Membership

#### Countries of Work Experience:

South Africa and DR Congo
---------------------------

#### Languages:

Language	Speaking	Reading	Writing
English	Excellent	Excellent	Excellent
French	Excellent	Excellent	Excellent

### WORKS EXPERIENCE

PERIOD	PROJECT NAME	SCOPE	RESPONSIBILITIES
August 2018	Ecological assessment for the proposed development in Borakalalo Nature Reserve, North West	Ecological Assessment	Field work Plant and animal identification Report writing
March 2017	Ecological assessment for the proposed upgrade of the National route Ne section 34	Ecological Assessment	Field work Plant and animal identification Report writing

	(Piet retief to Ermelo): Link and grade-separation scheme for road P97/2 and road D803 for Kangra mine coal haulage at Panbult, Mpumalanga proposed road expansion, Panbult		
September 2016	Proposed construction of an 18km long pipeline with an internal diameter of 2100 for the remainder of B16 pipeline starting from Zuikerbosch Pumping Station to Slangfontein with associated cross connections and end connections	Ecological Assessment	Environmental Assessment Practitioner and Public Participation Compile Environmental Impact Assessment Engage with client and authorities Social Impact Assessment
July 2018	Construction for Ekurhuleni township automotive aftermarket hubs in Labore Brakpan	Agricultural Study	Field investigation; Agricultural potential analysis, Soils Analysis, Report writing
September 2016	Agricultural Potential Study for the Proposed Construction of an 18km long pipeline with an internal diameter of 2100 for the remainder of B16 pipeline starting from Zuikerbosch Pumping Station to Slangfontein with associated cross connections and end connections.	Agricultural Study	Field investigation; Agricultural potential analysis, Soils Analysis, Report writing
September 2016	Ecological Assessment For the Proposed Construction of an 18km long pipeline with an internal diameter of 2100 for the remainder of B16 pipeline starting from Zuikerbosch Pumping Station to Slangfontein with associated cross connections and end connections.	Flora and Fauna Assessment	Field work Plant and animal identification Report writing
March 2015	Illiondale Wetland Rehabilitation Project in Ekurhuleni Municipality. (Quotation No.: KEQ. ERM. 03.39).	Flora and Fauna Assessment	Field work Plant and animal identification Report writing

July 2014	The Soutpansberg Drive Wetland Rehabilitation Project in Ekurhuleni Municipality.	Flora and Fauna Assessment	Field work Plant and animal identification Report writing
July 2013	Proposed Construction and Establishment of Beef Feedlot and Associated Infrastructures on Portion 2, 8, 9, 11 and 15 of the Kleinwater Farm Project, Mpumalanga Province.	Flora and Fauna Assessment	Field work Plant and animal identification Report writing
September 2013	Proposed Expansion and Construction of Poultry Houses for Broiler Production for Farm Puntlyf Bronkhorspruit Project, Gauteng Province.	Flora and Fauna Assessment	Field work Plant and animal identification Report writing
September 2017	Proposed N2 Panbult Interchange upgrade for South African National Roads Agency Limited (SANRAL) Project at Panbult Siding in Mpumalanga Province.	Wetland Assessment and Delineation Report	Site visit; Delineation and plant identification; Report writing Project manager
May 2013	Proposed township situated on portion 27 and 28 of the farm Hartherley 331-JR at Mamelodi, City of Tshwane Municipality.	Wetland Assessment and Delineation Report	Site visit; Delineation and plant identification; Report writing Project manager
March 2015	Investigation on the Nature and Extent of Invasive Alien Plant Infestations on Rand Water Sites: Rietvlei Site.	Invasive Alien Plant Specialist	Field investigation IAPs identification Scientific Report Writing
March 2015	Investigation on the Nature and Extent of Invasive Alien Plant Infestations on Rand Water Sites: Zwartkopjes Site (Mapleton, Palmiet and Eikenhof).	Invasive Alien Plant Specialist	Field investigation IAPs identification Scientific Report Writing

## REFERENCES

Name	Company Name	Position	Contact No	Email Address
Joshua Olokun	Environet Engineering	Director	073 406 8051	<a href="mailto:molokun@gmail.com">molokun@gmail.com</a>
Thokozani Masilela	Rand Water	Environmental Assessor	011 724 9369	<a href="mailto:tmasilel@randwater.co.za">tmasilel@randwater.co.za</a>
Palesa Mathibeli	Lyma Consulting	Director	0824486243	<a href="mailto:Palesa_mathibeli@yahoo.com">Palesa_mathibeli@yahoo.com</a>

## 2. Nonkanyiso Zungu

### CURRICULUM VITAE

Female, South African  
ID-82030905700088  
Cell-084 800 0187

#### Profile Summary

Nonkanyiso Zungu is a Professional Natural Scientist (Pr.Sci.Nat) with 16 years' experience in the environmental field, including GIS. She is currently a Ph.D. candidate at the University of Cape Town doing research on climate change effects on freshwater ecology. She obtained her master's degree in Environmental Management from the University of Pretoria with a specialty in Water Resource Management. She has extensive experience in water resource management, waste management, and obtaining environmental authorizations (air, water, waste) across sectors that include: Power generation, infrastructure (Construction), transportation (rail), waste disposal, water purification & sewage works. The projects she has undertaken include Environmental Impact Assessments, Basic Assessments, Environmental Feasibility Studies, Environmental scoping studies, Environmental legal compliance audits, Waste management licenses, Water use licenses, and Baseline risk assessments.

Nonkanyiso Zungu is a Health & Safety and Environmental (SHE) auditor and is knowledgeable on internal integrated SHEQ auditing. She has experience in the development and implementation of ISO 14001: 2004 management system and undertaking internal audits. Nonkanyiso is also a wetland specialist with experience in wetland delineation, determination of present ecological status, ecological importance and sensitivity evaluations, and wetland rehabilitation planning using packages that include Wet-Health, Wet-Ecoservices, and Wet-Rehab Evaluate.

#### Tertiary Education:

Qualification: Ph.D. Ecology, University of Cape Town, Year: 2017-Current

Qualification: MSc Environmental Management, University of Pretoria, Year: 2011

Qualification: BSc Honours (Ecology), University of KwaZulu-Natal, Year 2005

Qualification: BSc Biological Science, University of KwaZulu-Natal Year: 2003

#### Professional Registration

- South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP, Pr. Nat. Sci. (Practice No. 400194/10): Ecological Science
- Member of the Gauteng Wetland Task Group
- Member of WISA (Gauteng Region)

#### Short Courses

- ISO 14001 implementation and internal auditing
- ISO 18001 implementation and internal auditing
- ISO 9001 implementation and internal auditing



- Lead auditing (saatca)
- Incident and accident investigations
- Qualified wetland assessment practitioner (wet-health; wet ihi, spatsim)
- Esri Gis Mapping, ArcMap 10

### Key Skills

- ESRI GIS MAPPING, ARCMAP 10
- ISO 14001: 2004 internal auditing
- Legal compliance auditing
- Wetland delineation and assessment
- Environmental Impact Assessment
- Waste Management Licence Applications
- Water Use Licence Applications
- Basic Assessments
- Feasibility Studies (Fatal flaw analysis)

### Employment History

2014 – Current Sazi Environmental Consulting cc  
 2011– 2014 Sebata Group of Companies (Pty) Ltd  
 2009 – 2011 Department of Water Affairs  
 2007 – 2009 Wetland Consulting Services (Pty) Ltd  
 2005 – 2006 University of KwaZulu-Natal (Maluti Transfontier Conservation Program)  
 2004 – 2005 University of KwaZulu-Natal (Welgevonden Elephant Program)

### WORKS EXPERIENCES

WETLANDS			
PERIOD	PROJECT NAMES	SCOPE	clients
2018	Natalspruit river rehabilitation	Wetland delineation, Wetland PES and EIS description, Wetland classification, Rehabilitation	Company: Silver Horns Contact: Thabo Munyai Tel: 076 126 8387
2018	Brakpan automotive hub wetland assessment	Wetland delineation, Wetland PES and EIS description, Wetland classification, Rehabilitation	Company: Vungandze Projects Contact Person: Khosi Mngomezulu Tel: 083 256 1292
2018	K2 and K3 pipeline	Wetland delineation,	Company: Rand Water

	wetland assessment	Wetland PES and EIS description, Wetland classification, Rehabilitation	Contact Person: Nomkhosi Mohlahlo Tel: 011 724 9191
2018	Desktop wetland assessment on portion 10 on Reserve 16 of Farm no 15638 in Ngwavuma, KwaZulu Natal Province, South Africa	Desktop study	Company: Beyond Greening Environmental Services Pty (Ltd) Contact Person: Nonkululeko Khumalo Tel: 072 172 8374
2017	Lanseria business park wetland delineation and assessment report	Wetland delineation, Wetland PES and EIS description, Wetland classification, Rehabilitation	Company: Arengo 6 Contact Person: Kagiso Mohlamme Tel: 072 591 5237
<b>ECOLOGICAL ASSESSMENT (FAUNA AND FLORA)</b>			
2018	K2 and K3 pipeline ecological assessment	Flora and fauna assessment, Sensitivity areas	Company: Rand Water Contact: Nomkhosi Mohlahlo Tel: 011 724 9191
2018	Brakpan automotive hub ecological assessment	Flora and fauna assessment, Sensitivity areas	Company: Vungandze Projects Contact Person: Khosi Mngomezulu Tel: 083 256 1292
2017	Amandebult Section biodiversity assessment	Flora and fauna assessment, Sensitivity areas	Company: Phuka tsa Nong Contact: Kelebogile Mogajane Tel: 083 478 5753
2017	Leliefontein biodiversity assessment	Flora and fauna assessment, Sensitivity areas	Company: Ndlelenhle Mining and consulting Contact: Abraham Maphoso Tel: 082 088 3283

# HERITAGE IMPACT ASSESSMENT



**DESKTOP STUDY**

**FOR THE PROPOSED IKOMKHULU SOLAR PLANT**

**ON FARM RIETPUTS 15 NEAR WINDSORTON,**

**NORTHERN CAPE PROVINCE, SOUTH AFRICA.**



**Prepared**

**by**

**Millennium Heritage Pty (Ltd)**

**141 Thabo Mbeki Street**

**Polokwane**

**South**

**Africa**

## **Executive Summary**

Millennium Heritage Pty (Ltd) was appointed by Thoalana Consulting to conduct a desktop study of the heritage resources of the Farm Rietputs 15 near Windsorton, in the northern Cape Province. The study forms part of the Environmental Management Plan for the proposed Ikomkhulu Solar Plant and associated infrastructure in the Northern Cape province of South Africa. The area under study lies north east of the Vaal River situated next to the R374 road between Windsorton-Barkely west and the N12 national road that links Warrenton, and Kimberley in the Northern Cape Province. The desktop study was augmented by a site visit, conducted on the 12 November 2022. Despite Rietputs 15 being part of the diamond concessions that have a legacy of vandalism by mining activities for more than a century, the area is layered with rich heritage resources that span from the deep past to the recent past. Among these include Stone Age Acheulean lithics, vertebrate fossils, rock gongs, rock art engravings, Iron Age stone-walled settlements, and historical graveyards. Given that the Windsorton area is archaeologically rich, there is a high possibility for more heritage resources within the area proposed for hosting solar projects, perhaps needing mitigation. Based on this assessment which includes desktop and a site visit identified a historical site within the proposed development footprint.

The study reached the following conclusions:

A historical site was geo-referenced on the bottom slope of the hill, characterised by rectangular house foundations, ash midden with broken pieces of porcelain, rusted iron pieces, and stone walled enclosures, the site is of high significance and is respectively protected by the NHRA (Act 25 of 1999).

**Section 34 (1)** No person may alter or demolish any structure or part of a structure, which is older than 60 years without a permit issued by the relevant Provincial Heritage Resources Authority. Therefore, recorded historical site is highly significant and warrants protection.

It is strongly recommended that the geo-referenced site should be regarded as a No GO area by construction crew and the site could be circumvented and avoided by the proposed solar plant development. A 50 Meters corridor between the site and the proposed development should be maintained. It is strongly recommended that this site should be fenced to alleviate future

damages and vandalism, this recommendations should form part of the drafted Environmental Management Plan .

Based on this assessment which found a historical site within the proposed development footprint should above recommendation be followed we strongly recommend that the heritage authorities approve the project as planned.

## Introduction

Millennium Heritage Pty (Ltd) was appointed by Tholoana Consulting to conduct a desktop study of the archaeological, paleontological, and historical heritage resources of the Windsorton area as part of the Basic Assessment for a proposed Ikomkhulu Solar Plant and associated infrastructure on sections of Farm Rietputs 15 in the Northern Cape province of South Africa (Fig 1). The area under study lies north east of the Vaal River in proximity to the main regional tarred road (R374) which connect Windsorton and the N12 national road that links Warrenton and Kimberley in the Northern Cape Province. Farm Rietputs 15 is part of the diamond concessions that have been vandalised by open mining activities for more than a century.



**Figure 1:** Location of the proposed Ikomkhulu Solar Plant ( $28^{\circ}19'38.09''S$   $24^{\circ}45'18.09''E$ ) on sections of Farm Rietputs 15 near Windsorton in the Northern Cape province of South Africa

As demonstrated in Fig 1, the footprint of the proposed Ikomkhulu Solar Plant will cover 359 ha of land drained by the Vaal River. The project will involve the construction of access roads, a plant site, a substation, and transmission lines. Therefore as part of the non-invasive preparation, a desktop study coupled with a site visit was conducted to generate an

understanding of the paleontology, archaeology, and history of the area targeted to host the Ikomkhulu Solar Plant project.

## **Background**

Windsorton is an agricultural and mining town situated in the Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme - one of the largest irrigation schemes in the world covering 369.50 square kilometers on the banks of the Vaal River in the Northern Cape province of South Africa. The Vaal River extends from the mountains in Mpumalanga in the East. Over the last 20 million years, the river channel has migrated across the floodplain eventually finding its current path (De Wit *et al.* 2000; Leader 2009). During this process, it has laid down billions of tons of alluvial sands and gravel. It is these same gravels that contain the diamonds that have made South Africa famous.

The geology of the Windsorton area is characterised, by dolerite inselbergs (koppies) of the Karoo Supergroup including the Ventersdorp Supergroup, Dwyka tillites, and shales (Gibbon 2009). The dolerite dykes within the area of the proposed development are not paleontologically significant. However, Stone Age quarry sites are usually found at the foot of dolerite hills where hornfels outcrops occur. Similarly, dolerite is usually associated with engraving sites. The area and adjacent environs are also characterised by layers of 'young' and 'old' gravels (De Wit *et al.* 2000; Gibbon 2009). The Rietputs and Riverton Formations and the other 'young' gravel deposits occur at elevations of 12 to 14 m above river level (De Wit *et al.* 2000). These are followed by the 'old' gravel deposits which occur at elevations of 21 to 60 m above the river level and these are conventionally thought to be reworked clasts from pre-existing fluvial deposits (Helgren 1979; Gibbon 2009). The young' deposits such as Rietputs Formation from the site of Rietputs 15 (named after the farm) were dated between 1.57+/- 0.22Ma and ca 1.26+/-0.10Ma (Gibbon *et al.* 2009). These are made up of a complex valley fill that includes sand and coarse gravel covered by sporadic palaeosols, and fine alluvium (Helgren 1979; Gibbon 2009). The Riverton Formation is associated with the late Pleistocene and Holocene epochs, it is made up of fine-grained sand and silts. As noted by Helgren (1979) these are made up of several terraces that make up the Vaal River floodplain. As noted by Gibbon *et al.* (2009), there are no fossils present in the gravels investigated at Rietputs 15 hence the area proposed to host the Moya Construction CC and Ikomkhulu Solar Plant is regarded as paleontologically insignificant.



As a semi- desert landscape, Windsorton is characterised by rugged terrain with a diverse range of flora and fauna. The scenery consists mainly of sand with grasses and sometimes shrubs, coastal plains, craggy sharp mountains of volcanic rock, and the lushness of the Vaal River.

The climate of Windsorton is semi-arid, it is characterized by severe summer temperatures which have been recorded to reach approximately 32 °C in January (<https://www.south-africa-info.co.za>). On the contrary, nights are cool and bring with them heavy dew. Water is scarce hence life depends on moisture from the early morning fog. During winter, temperatures drop to more temperate levels. Rainfall in Windsorton varies from 5 mm per annum in the east to 168 mm per annum.



**Figure 2.** A view from Farm Rietputs 15 showing part of the Windsorton landscape



**Figure 3:** Promontary hill, where rock gongs have been documented by previous researchers



**Figure 4:** Existing power substation on the property

## **RELEVANT LEGISLATION**

Two sets of legislation are relevant for the purposes of this study in as far as they contain provisions for the protection of tangible and intangible heritage resources including burials and burial grounds.

### **The National Heritage Resource Act (25 of 1999)**

This Act established the South African Heritage Resource Agency (SAHRA) as the prime custodian of the heritage resources and makes provision for the undertaking of heritage resources impact assessment for various categories of development as determined by section 38. It also provides for the grading of heritage resources (Section, 7) and the implementation of a three-tier level of responsibly and functions from heritage resources to be undertaken by the State, Provincial and Local authorities, depending on the grade of heritage resources (Section, 8)

In terms of the National Heritage Resource Act 25, (1999) the following is of relevance:

#### **Historical remains**

**Section 34 (1)** No person may alter or demolish any structure or part of a structure, which is older than 60 years without a permit issued by the relevant Provincial Heritage Resources Authority.

#### **Archaeological remains**

**Section 35(3)** Any person who discovers archaeological and paleontological materials and meteorites during development or agricultural activity must immediately report the find to the responsible heritage resource authority or the nearest local authority or museum.

**Section 35(4)** No person may, without a permit issued by the responsible heritage resources authority-

- destroy, damage, excavate, alter, deface or otherwise disturb any archaeological or paleontological site or any meteorite;
- destroy, damage, excavate, remove from its original position, collect or own any archaeological or paleontological material or object or any meteorite;
- trade in, sell for private gain, export or attempt to export from republic any category of archaeological or paleontological material or object or any meteorite; or
- bring onto or use at an archaeological or paleontological site any excavation equipment or any equipment which assist with the detection or recovery of metal or archaeological material or object or such equipment for the recovery of meteorites.

**Section 35(5)** When the responsible heritage resource authority has reasonable cause to believe that any activity or development which will destroy, damage or alter any archaeological or paleontological site is underway, and where no application for a permit has been submitted and no heritage resource management procedures in terms of section 38 has been followed, it may

- serve on the owner or occupier of the site or on the person undertaking such development an order for the development to cease immediately for such period as is specified in the order
- carry out an investigation for obtaining information on whether an archaeological or paleontological site exists and whether mitigation is necessary;
- if mitigation is deemed by the heritage resources authority to be necessary, assist the person on whom the order has been served under paragraph (a) to apply for a permit as required in subsection (4); and
- recover the cost of such investigation from the owner or occupier of the land on which it is believed an archaeological or paleontological site is located or from the person proposing to undertake the development if no application for a permit is received within two weeks of the order being served.

**Subsection 35(6)** the responsible heritage resource authority may, after consultation with the owner of the land on which an archaeological or paleontological site or meteorite is situated; serve a notice on the owner or any other controlling authority, to prevent activities within a specified distance from such site or meteorite.

### **Burial grounds and graves**

**Section 36 (3)** No person may, without a permit issued by SAHRA or a provincial heritage resources authority:

- (i) destroy, damage, alter, exhume, remove from its original position or otherwise disturb any grave or burial ground older than 60 years which is situated outside a formal cemetery administered by a local authority; or
- (ii) bring onto or use at a burial ground or grave any excavation equipment, or any equipment which assists in detection or recovery of metals.

**Subsection 36 (6)** Subject to the provision of any person who during development or any other activity discover the location of a grave, the existence of which was previously unknown, must immediately cease such activity and report the discovery to the responsible heritage resource authority which must, in co-operation with the South African Police service and in accordance with regulation of the responsible heritage resource authority-

- (I) carry out an investigation for obtaining information on whether such grave is protected in terms of this act or is of significance to any community; and  
if such grave is protected or is of significance, assist any person who or community which is a direct descendant to decide for the exhumation and re-interment of the contents of such grave or, in the absence of such person or community, make any such arrangement as it deems fit.

### **Cultural Resource Management**

**Section 38(1)** Subject to the provisions of subsection (7), (8) and (9), any person who intends to undertake a development\*...

- must at the very earliest stages of initiating such development notify the responsible heritage resources authority and furnish it with details regarding the location, nature and extent of the proposed development.

**development** means any physical intervention, excavation, or action, other than those caused by natural forces, which may in the opinion of the heritage authority in any way result in a

change to the nature, appearance or physical nature of a place, or influence its stability and future well-being, including:

- (i) Construction, alteration, demolition, removal or change of use of a place or a structure at a place;
- (ii) Any change to the natural or existing condition or topography of land, and
- (iii) Any removal or destruction of trees, or removal of vegetation or topsoil;

**place** means a site, area or region, a building or other structure

**structure** means any building, works, device or other facility made by people and which is fixed to the ground.

### **The Human Tissue Act (65 of 1983)**

This act protects graves younger than 60 years, these falls under the jurisdiction of the National Department of Health and the Provincial Health Department. Approval for the exhumation and reburial must be obtained from the relevant provincial MEC as well as relevant Local Authorities.

### **Methodology**

The desktop study was undertaken as part of the documentation of the physiographic settings and history of the Windsorton landscape as well as determining the presence/absence of any archaeological, or cultural landmarks in the area proposed to host the Ikomkhulu Solar Plant project. It is common knowledge that a desktop study is an essential component of any primary research. The desktop study was focused on both published and unpublished archaeological, and historical documentary works. These included maps, photographs, site registers, journals, monographs and autobiographies, and fieldwork reports - particularly AIAs and HIAs hosted by heritage databases such as SAHRA. The latter formed a key component of this study it provided background information, which aided in understanding the archaeology, and history of the Windsorton landscape.



## Limitations

Like any other research, the desktop study had its fair share of problems despite being a fairly exhaustive inquiry. Access to some archives housed in some museums and libraries institutions such as the McGregor Museum, National Library of South Africa, and the Cape Town City Library proved difficult, particularly during this Covid-19 era. Nevertheless, to augment the data from the desktop research, a site visit was conducted on the 11<sup>th</sup> of November 2022. Systematic fieldwalking and drive-throughs surface surveys were conducted on the area earmarked to host the Solar Plant.

## Desktop Findings

The town of Windsorton is commonly known as Chaib in Khoekhoen language, which translates to mean the 'place of the kudu'. It was founded in 1869 as a diamond diggers camp and was administered by a village management board (<https://www.south-africa-info.co.za>). The town started as Hebron, a mission station, but when diamonds were discovered, the area was flooded with prospectors and the town became a diggers' camp. The missionaries were sent packing and the town of Windsorton took root in the diggers' camp. Eventually, the town was renamed after P F (Peter Ford) Windsor, the original owner of the land, who was instrumental in its development. Today, many mining companies have claims in the region and regularly dig massive pits to expose these gravels, to acquire diamonds (<https://www.south-africa-info.co.za>; Leader 2009).



**Figure 5.** Diamond mining in the Vaal river. Coutesey of Günter Grundmann's

During the late 19th century, it is believed that Windsorton formed part of the area that was ruled by Chief Galeshewe, who repeatedly clashed with the Cape Colony government (Küsel 2015). Galeshewe led an uprising in 1897 and was consequently arrested. Because of his activism, his land was later confiscated by the government (<https://www.south-africa-info.co.za>). In 1886, before the construction of the irrigation scheme, Cecil John Rhodes wanted to divert the water from the Harts River to the diamond fields at Kimberley. He was granted land for this venture but could not raise the necessary funds, and the government was not willing to fund the project (Küsel 2015). Eventually, Rhode's dream was fulfilled when the then government, initiated the Vaalharts Water Scheme began in 1934. Water was diverted from the Vaalharts Main Canal, to serve the North Canal, Klipdam-Barkly Canal, and Taung Canal. Today, the canal system consists of a total of 1,176 km of concrete-coated canals which provide irrigation water to a total of 39,820 ha of scheduled land, industrial water to six towns and other industrial water users, and also domestic and livestock water, for primary use, to various properties.

Despite Windsorton being part of the diamond concessions that have a legacy of vandalism from mining activities for more than a century, the area is layered with rich heritage resources that span from the deep past to the recent past. Archaeological records depict the area as generally rich in Stone, and Iron Age settlements including those dating to the historical period (Kuman & Gibbon 2016). Early Stone Age (ESA) research by C. van Riet Lowe and The Abbé Breuil (van Riet Lowe 1945) was largely focused on the Windsorton 'young' gravels deposits close to the Vaal River where early humans are thought to have lived. Here they collected handaxes, core-axes, and cleavers (Cooke 1949; Helgren 1978; Leader 2009; Rossouw 2016) from the dumps of the diamond miners who first established the town of Windsorton (Leader 2009:1). Vertebrate fossils were also identified in the deposits including those associated with the Rietputs Formation (Helgren 1977). More recently, Gibbon (2009) recorded the first open-air EIA Acheulean sites in Windsorton. Most of these were recovered in alluvial deposits of the lower Vaal River basin deeply buried in alluvial sands and gravels exposed by the diamond mining activities. Early EIA Acheulean lithic assemblage recorded at Rietputs 15 had similar affinities with those at Sterkfontein and Swartkrans hence the Rietputs 15 assemblage forms part the oldest Acheulean artefacts in Southern Africa (Kuman & Gibbon 2018).


Several EIA Acheulean handaxes and associated lithics that were once preserved within the subsurface gravels were recovered scattered on spoil heaps and backfilled areas from the



diamond mining area at Farm Rietputs 15 without context (see Rossouw 2016). Later Stone Age (LSA) sites have been also recorded along the lower Vaal River valley including rock art engraving around Nazareth Warrenton, and Four Streams. Similarly to ESA, secluded LSA lithics were recorded occasionally around Baskop and further east towards the Vaal River. Rossouw (2016), recorded three rock gongs at Farm Rietputs 15 along the northern rim of Baskop.

The peopling of Bantu agropastoralist communities in Windsorton was recorded mostly during the Late Iron Age and historical epochs of the 18th and early 19th centuries where remnants of stone-walled settlements of Tswana communities were identified (Humphreys 1976; Rossouw 2016). On the rocky outcrop near the edge of Farm Rietputs 15, Rossouw identified a large stone-walled Tswana settlement covering an approximately 9ha area, (Fig. 2) which the locals suspect to have been continuously inhabited until the late 1960s. Rossouw (2016) identified more Tswana settlements with similar stone-walled structures on the western slopes of Baskop, however, he could not establish their distribution due to dense vegetation that covered large parts of the lower slopes around the mountain. Numerous rectangular stone foundations dating to the historical period were also recorded at Farm Rietputs 15 adjacent to the northern slope of Baskop. This included an ashy midden with scatters of European glassware, ungulate bones, and ceramics (Rossouw 2016). Marked and unmarked graveyards dating to the recent past were also recorded by Rossouw (see Table 1). The formal graves had formal head markers and may probably be of the previous owners of Farm Rietputs 15. The informal graves are suspected to belong to the previous farm workers, and a section of these was destroyed by earlier mining activities.

**Table 1.** The range of heritage resources that were recorded at Farm Rietputs 15 and adjacent environs

Type Site	Description	Photos	Source
Early Stone Age Sites	<p>Found on open-air sites with gravels deposits situated a considerable distance from the Vaal River</p> <p>Finds include hand axes, core axes, cleavers, and vertebrate fossils</p>		<p>Cooke 1949; Helgren 1978; Leader 2009; Gibbon 2009; Rossouw 2016; Kuman &amp; Gibbon 2018</p>
Late Stone Age Sites	<p>Sites including material remains are usually found scattered along the lower Vaal River valley</p>		<p>Rossouw 2016; Cooke 1949; Helgren 1978; Leader 2009; Gibbon 2009</p>
Rock gongs	<p>Three rock gongs were recorded along the northern rim of Baskop</p>		<p>Rossouw 2016</p>
Stone-walled settlements	<p>Large stone-walled Tswana settlement which the locals</p>		<p>Humphreys 1976; Rossouw 2016; Own fieldwork</p>

suspect to have been  
continuously inhabited  
until the late 1960s




Rectangular  
stone  
foundations


These were recorded at Farm Rietputs 15 and they are situated adjacent to the northern slope of Baskop. The settlements had ashy middens with scatters of European glassware, ungulate bones, and ceramics which all date to the historical period




Rossouw 2016;  
Own fieldwork

			
Marked graveyard	covering approximately 2200 m <sup>2</sup> is located about 235 m east of the Vaal River. The graveyard dates from around the turn of the previous century and consists of a loose arrangement of some heavily overgrown graves, the		Rossouw 2016



	<p>majority with formal head markers.</p>		
<p>Unmarked graveyard 1</p>	<p>Covers approximately 7200 m<sup>2</sup> is located about 600 m east of the historical graveyard. The graves are clearly visible, but unmarked and considered to be that of local farm workers. It is noted that a section of the cemetery was destroyed by earlier mining</p>		<p>Rossouw 2016</p>

	<p>activities, which apparently happened under previous management</p>		
<p>Unmarked graveyard 2</p>	<p>Covering approximately 1800 m<sup>2</sup> is located about 90 m from the riverbank near the south-eastern boundary of the study area The graves are clearly visible but unmarked and considered to be that of local farm workers</p>		<p>Rossouw 2016</p>





## Site visit Findings

### Historical Site: (GPS S28°.19, 34.02" & E 24°.45.21.01")

The site extends from the flat section of the land toward the bottom slope of the hill. The area is characterised by two separate stone enclosures, rectangular stone house foundations with evidence of baked clay bricks. Ash midden with broken pieces of porcelain, pots and rusted metals.



**Figure 6:** Historical site, indicated by stone and claybricks foundation, remains of ceramics and stone wall enclosures.



**Figure 7:** View of the geo-referenced historical site

### **Conclusion & recommendations**

Although Rietputs 15, and Windsorton, have a legacy of vandalism by diamond mining activities for more than a century, they have numerous heritage resources that date back as far as the Early Stone Age particularly the area drained by the Vaal River.

The study reached the following conclusions:

A historical site geo-referenced on the bottom slope of the hill, characterised by rectangular house foundations, ash midden with broken pieces of porcelain, rusted iron pieces, and stone walled enclosures is of high significance and is respectively protected by the NHRA (Act 25 of 1999).

**Section 34 (1)** No person may alter or demolish any structure or part of a structure, which is older than 60 years without a permit issued by the relevant Provincial Heritage Resources Authority. Therefore, recorded historical site is highly significant and warrant protection.

It is strongly recommended that the georeferenced site should be regarded as a No GO area by construction crew and the site could be circumvented and avoided by the proposed solar plant. A 50 Meters corridor between the site and the proposed development should be maintained. It

is strongly recommended that this site should be fenced to alleviate future damages and vandalism, this recommendations should form part of the drafted Environmental Management Plan . Based on this assessment which found a historical site within the proposed development footprint should the recommendation be followed we recommend that the heritage authorities approve the project as planned.

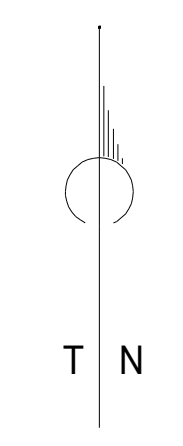
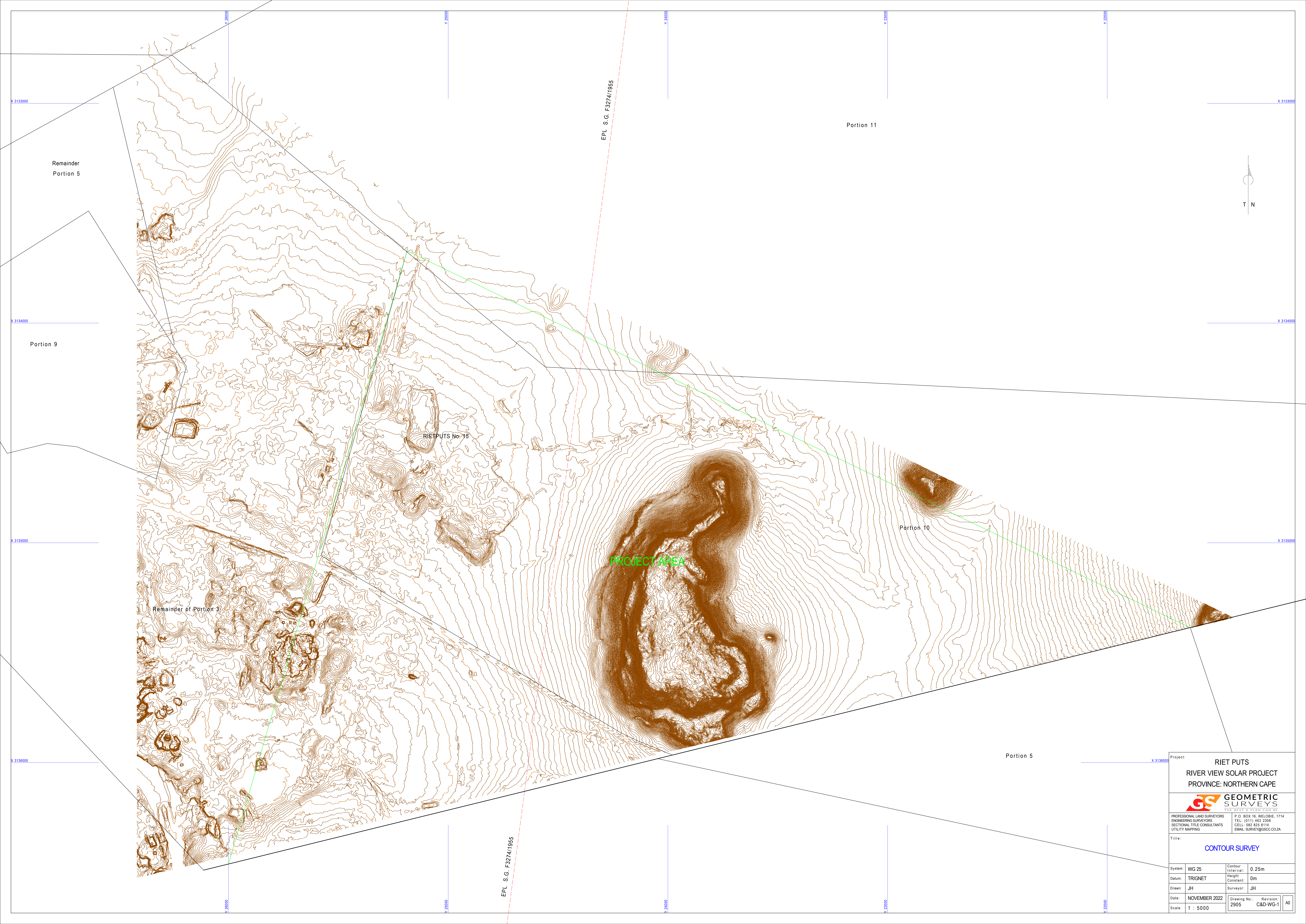
## References

- Cooke, H. B. S. 1949. Fossil mammals of the Vaal River deposits. In: Sohngé, P. G., Visser, D. J. L. & van Riet Lowe, C. (eds) Geological Survey (South Africa), Memoir 35: 1–109.
- De Wit, M. C. J., Marshall, T. R. & Partridge, T. C. 2000. Fluvial deposits 175 and drainage evolution. In: Partridge, T. C. & Maud, R. R. (eds) *The Cenozoic of Southern Africa*: 55–72. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Gibbon, R.J., 2009. *The Fluvial History of the Lower Vaal River Catchment*. PhD thesis. University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg, South Africa.
- Gibbon, R.J., Granger, D.E., Kuman, K., Partridge, T.C., 2009. Early Acheulean technology in the Vaal River gravels, South Africa, dated with cosmogenic nuclides. *J. Hum. Evol.* 56, 152e160.
- Helgren, D. M. 1977. Geological context of the Vaal River faunas. *South African Journal of Science* 73: 303–307.
- Helgren, D.M., 1978. Acheulian Settlement along the Lower Vaal River, South Africa. *Journal of Archaeological Science* 5, 39–60.
- Helgren, D. M. 1979. *Rivers of diamonds: an alluvial history of the lower Vaal Basin, South Africa*. Chicago: The University of Chicago.
- <https://www.south-africa-info.co.za/country/town/489/windsorton>.
- Humphreys 1976. Note on the Southern Limits of Iron Age Settlement in the Northern Cape. *South African Archaeological Bulletin* 31(121/122): 54-57.
- Kuman, K. and Gibbon, R.J., 2018. The Rietputs 15 site and early acheulean in South Africa. *Quaternary International*, 480, pp.4-15.
- Leader. G. M. 2009. *Early Acheulean in the Vaal River basin, Rietputs Formation, Northern Cape Province, South Africa*. Unpublished Master of Science Dissertation. University of the Witwatersrand.
- Rossouw. L. 2016. *Phase 1 Heritage Impact Assessment of Farm Rietputs 15 near Windsorton, Northern Cape Province*. National Museum. Bloemfontein



# LAND SURVEY





Project: **RIET PUTS**  
**RIVER VIEW SOLAR PROJECT**  
 PROVINCE: NORTHERN CAPE

**GEOMETRIC SURVEYS**  
 THE BEST A PLAN CAN BE

PROFESSIONAL LAND SURVEYORS  
 ENGINEERING SURVEYORS  
 SECTIONAL TITLE CONSULTANTS  
 UTILITY MAPPING

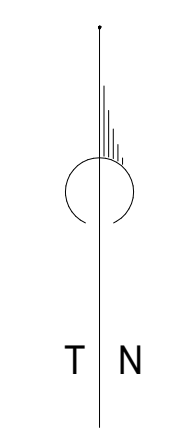
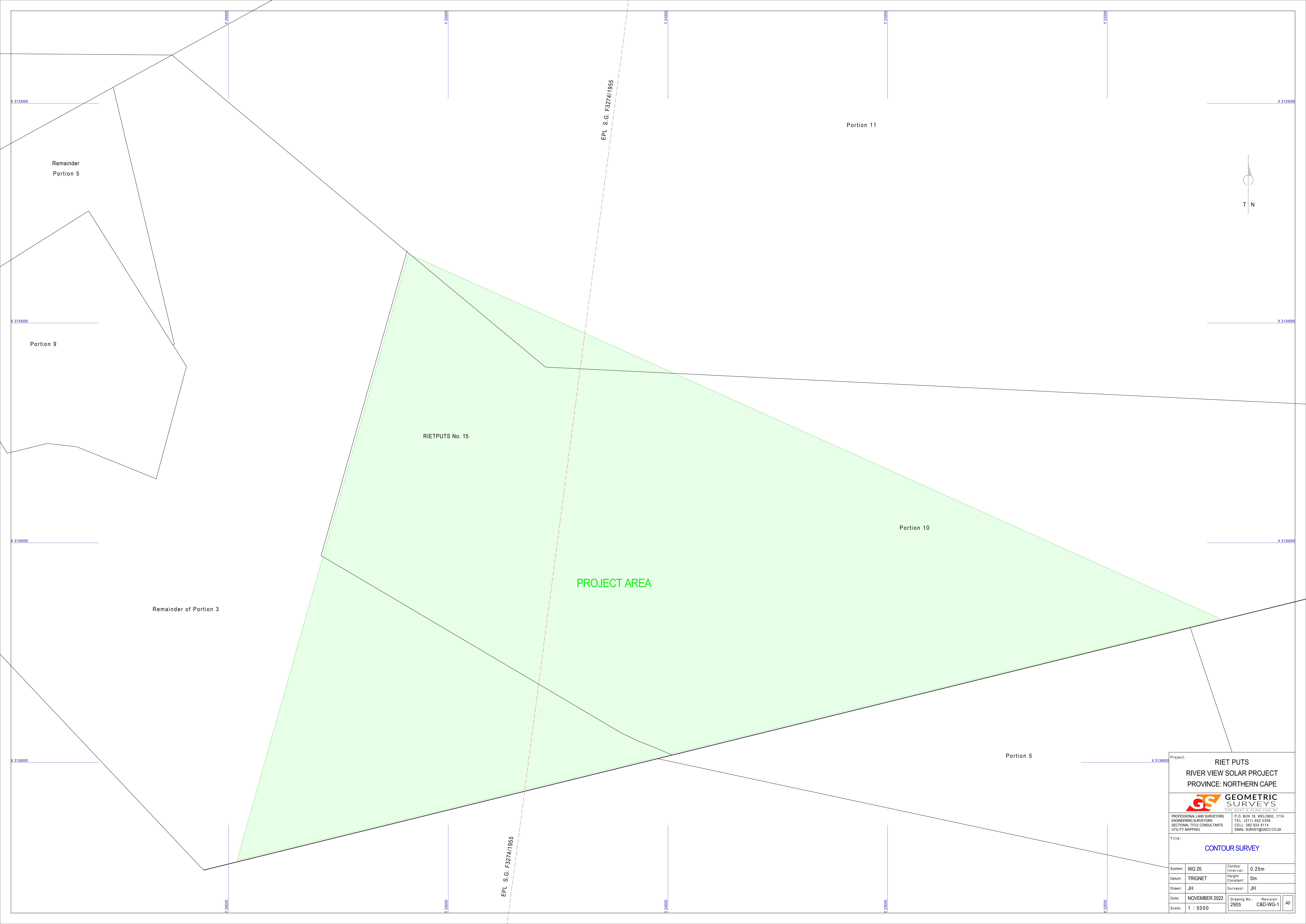
P.O. BOX 16, WELBIE, 7714  
 TEL: (011) 462 2388  
 CELL: 082 825 8114  
 EMAIL: SURVEY@GSCCC.CO.ZA


Title: **CONTOUR SURVEY**

System:	WG 25	Contour Interval:	0.25m
Datum:	TRIGNET	Height Constant:	0m
Drawn:	JH	Surveyor:	JH
Date:	NOVEMBER 2022	Drawing No.:	2905
Scale:	1 : 5000	Revision:	C&D-WG-1

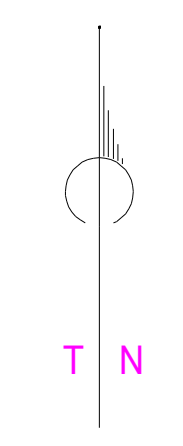
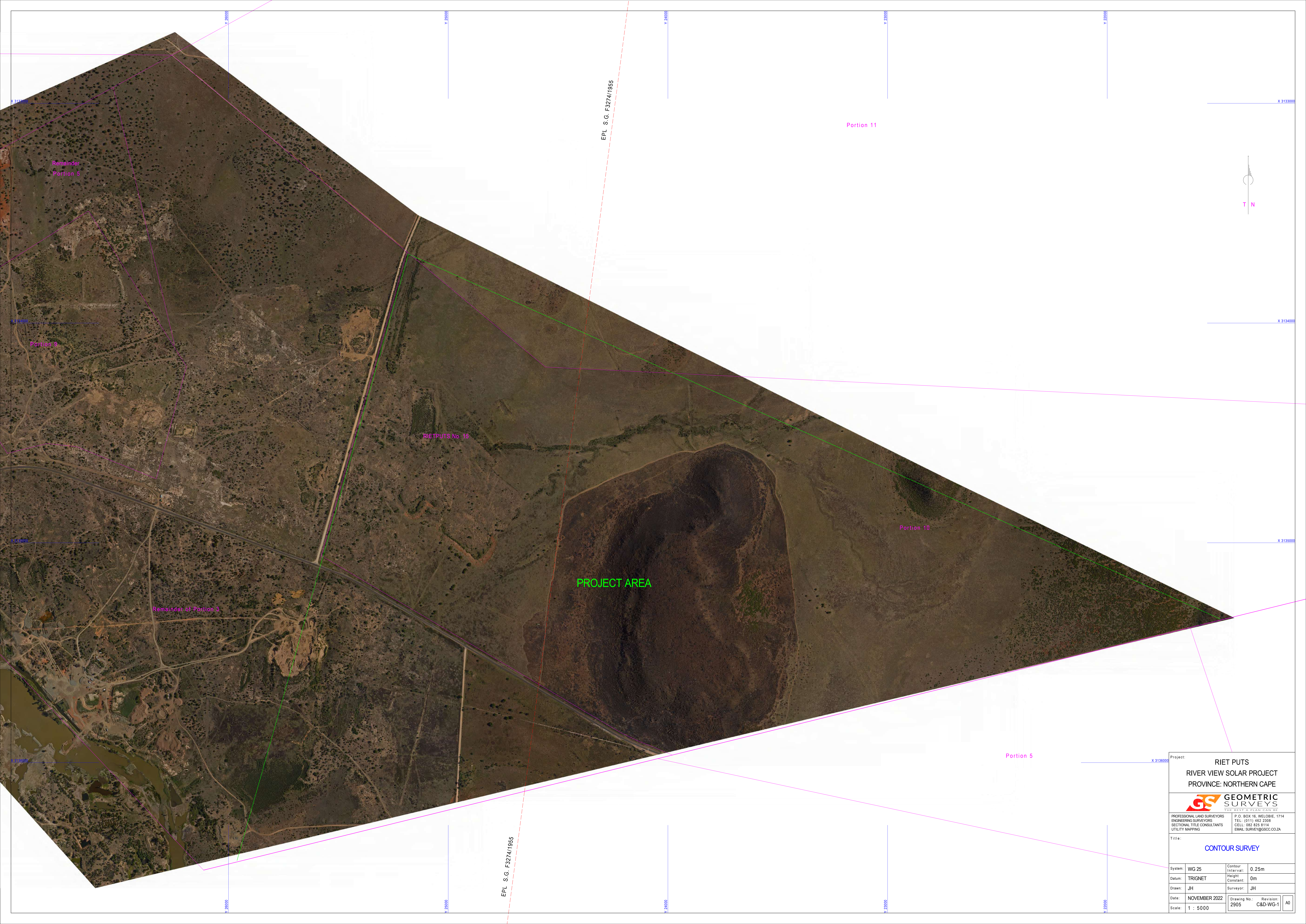
A0






Project: RIET PUTS			
RIVER VIEW SOLAR PROJECT			
PROVINCE: NORTHERN CAPE			
 <b>GEOMETRIC SURVEYS</b> <small>THE BEST A PLAN CAN BE</small>		P.O. BOX 16, WELDBIE, 1714 TEL: (011) 462 2308 CELL: 082 825 8114 EMAIL: SURVEY@GSCC.CO.ZA	
<small>PROFESSIONAL LAND SURVEYORS          ENGINEERING SURVEYORS          SECTIONAL TITLE CONSULTANTS          UTILITY MAPPING</small>			
Title: <b>CONTOUR SURVEY</b>			
System:	WG 25	Contour Interval:	0.25m
Datum:	TRIGNET	Height Constant:	0m
Drawn:	JH	Surveyor:	JH
Date:	NOVEMBER 2022	Drawing No.:	2905
Scale:	1 : 5000	Revision:	C&D-WG-1
			A0





Project: RIET PUTS RIVER VIEW SOLAR PROJECT PROVINCE: NORTHERN CAPE		
 <b>GEOMETRIC SURVEYS</b> <small>THE BEST A PLAN CAN BE</small>		
PROFESSIONAL LAND SURVEYORS ENGINEERING SURVEYORS SECTIONAL TITLE CONSULTANTS UTILITY MAPPING	P.O. BOX 16, WELBIE, 1714 TEL: (011) 462 2388 CELL: 082 825 8114 EMAIL: SURVEY@GSCC.CO.ZA	
Title: <b>CONTOUR SURVEY</b>		
System: WG 25	Contour Interval: 0.25m	
Datum: TRIGNET	Height Constant: 0m	
Drawn: JH	Surveyor: JH	
Date: NOVEMBER 2022	Drawing No.: 2905	Revision: C&D-WG-1
Scale: 1 : 5000		A0



# WETLAND ASSESSMENT



**Maanakana Projects**

**and Consulting (Pty) Ltd**

**WETLAND ASSESSMENT AND DELINEATION REPORT IN SUPPORT OF THE  
PROPOSED RIVER VIEW SOLAR PLANT AT THE REMAINING EXTENT OF PORTION 3  
OF THE FARM RIETPUTS 15, MAGARENG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, FRANCES BAARD  
DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY IN THE NORTHERN CAPE PROVINCE.**

**PREPARED FOR**

**IKOMKHULU SOLAR (PTY) LTD**

**PREPARED BY: MAANAKANA PROJECTS AND  
CONSULTING (PTY) LTD**

**REPORT REFERENCE:**

**NOVEMBER 2022**

## DOCUMENT CONTROL AND PROJECT TEAM

	Client	SPECIALIST
	Ikomkhulu Solar (Pty) Ltd	Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd
<b>Contact</b>	Ms Zodwa Joyce	Dr Milambo Freddy Tshiala
<b>Contact Details</b>	<b>Tel/Cell:</b> <b>Email:</b>	<b>Tel/Cell:</b> 0836691702 <b>Email:</b> <a href="mailto:maanakanaprojects@gmail.com">maanakanaprojects@gmail.com</a>
	SPECIALIST NAMES	QUALIFICATIONS
<b>Fieldwork Specialist &amp; Report Writing</b>	Milambo Freddy Tshiala	BSc in Agriculture, MSc & PhD in Environment and Society (SACNASP: 4000021/18)
<b>Report Reviewer 1</b>		
<b>Report Reviewer 2</b>		
<b>Draft Report Ref. No.</b>		
<b>Final Report Ref.No.</b>		

## DECLARATION

We, Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd, in our capacity as specialist consultant, hereby declare that we:

- Act as an independent consultant;
- Do not have any financial interest in the undertaking of the activity, other than remuneration for the work performed in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998);
- Undertake to disclose to the competent authority, any material and/or information that has or may have the potential to influence the decision of the competent authority or the objectivity of any report, plan or document required in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998);
- As a registered member of the South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions, will undertake our profession in accordance with the Code of Conduct of the Council, as well as any other societies to which we are members; and
- Based on information provided to us by the project proponent, and in addition to the information obtained during desktop study, fieldwork investigations have presented the results and conclusion to the best of our professional judgment.

.....

Dr. Milambo Freddy Tshiala

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

### i. Introduction

Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd was appointed by Ikomkhulu Solar (Pty) Ltd to conduct a wetland delineation and assessment as part of the environmental assessment and authorization process for the proposed river view solar plant at the remaining extent of portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15, Magareng Local Municipality, Frances Baard District Municipality in the Northern Cape Province.

### ii. Approach and Methodology

- The wetlands were delineated according to the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS) (DWAF, 2005) guidelines and procedures, and assessed based on the WET-Health (Macfarlane et al., 2020) and WET-Eco services scoring systems (Kotze et al., 2020).
- Desktop assessment of the site where various data sources were utilized to obtain background information, including 1:50000 Maps, NFEPA (2011) data, and Ecosystem Sensitivity data.
- DEA Screening tool was used to identify sensitive aquatic areas.
- The site visit was undertaken from the 12<sup>th</sup> of November 2022.
- ArcGIS and Google map used to analyse data.

### iii. Wetland Assessment Results

During the site visit, 1 HGM unit was observed on-site and assessed since it will be directly impacted by the proposed development and it was discussed in detail within this report.

### iv. Impact Assessment

An impact assessment, considering the impacts currently observed on the water resources, has been determined and proposed mitigation measures were developed to minimize the impacts, where possible. Several impacts/land uses of the respective wetlands were observed, and this included the presence of alien invasive plants, clearance or disturbance of natural habitat (in a form of roads and other anthropogenic (mainly sand mining, grazing farms, etc) activities), within the study area.

## v. Recommendations and Conclusion

This study has reviewed the available literature and assessed the wetlands within the vicinity of the proposed development site in the form of a site visit undertaken on the 12<sup>th</sup> of November 2022. According to the National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas (NFEPA) data, there are several wetlands identified close to the proposed development sites. Within the study area, 1 HGM unit was assessed as it is the one likely to be impacted directly by the development. A flat wetland was observed. During the site visit a dry valley was observed and through the use of Spatial data (Non-perennial streams) are present on site, therefore, It is the opinion of the Specialist that the area be assessed during rainy season and an Aquatic Specialist be consulted.

In a case where this study is for the Competent Authorities to make a decisive conclusion on an Authorisation or permit, it is the opinion of the Specialist that this development be approved. However, all essential mitigation measures and recommendations presented in this report should be adhered to. This will ensure that the water quality and ecology within the proposed development areas as well as the surrounding zone of influence are protected or adequately rehabilitated. This will minimize the deviations from the present state. Particular attention needs to be paid to the location and extent of sensitive aquatic and terrestrial (riparian) habitat to ensure that development-related activities do not unnecessarily encroach into these zones and that the ongoing functionality of these systems is ensured.



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

DOCUMENT CONTROL AND PROJECT TEAM .....	i
DECLARATION .....	ii
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY .....	iii
LIST OF TERMS.....	vii
1 INTRODUCTION AND BACKGROUND .....	1
1.1 INTRODUCTION.....	1
1.2 PROJECT DESCRIPTION .....	1
1.3 DETAILS AND EXPERTISE OF THE SPECIALIST .....	4
1.4 TERMS OF REFERENCE AND OBJECTIVES .....	4
1.5 ASSUMPTIONS AND LIMITATIONS.....	5
1.6 INDEMNITY AND TERMS OF USE OF THIS REPORT .....	6
1.7 LEGISLATIVE REQUIREMENTS .....	7
1.7.1 THE CONSTITUTION OF THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA, 1996 (ACT 108 OF 1996).....	7
1.7.2 NATIONAL WATER ACT, 1998.....	7
1.7.3 NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT ACT (NEMA) .....	8
1.7.4 OTHER LEGAL REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS .....	9
2 BASELINE SITE DISCRIPTION.....	11
2.1 SITE DESCRIPTION AND PROPOSED SITE ACTIVITIES.....	11
2.2 PROJECT DESCRIPTION .....	11
3 METHODOLOGY .....	14
3.1 WETLAND DELINEATION .....	14
3.1.1 DESKTOP STUDY .....	16
3.1.2 FIELD SURVEY .....	16
3.2 WETLAND CLASSIFICATION.....	17
3.2.1 DESCRIBING THE HYDROGEOMORPHIC TYPE OF A WETLAND .....	18
3.2.2 FUNCTIONAL ASSESSMENT .....	19
3.2.3 WETLAND HEALTH ASSESSMENT .....	20
3.3 WETLAND ECOLOGICAL IMPORTANCE AND SENSITIVITY (EIS).....	22
3.4 IMPACT ASSESSMENT .....	23
3.5 BUFFER ZONES.....	24
4 RESULTS AND DISCUSSIONS.....	27
4.1 DRAINAGE AND QUATERNARY CATCHMENTS.....	27
4.2 NATIONAL FRESHWATER ECOSYSTEM PRIORITY AREAS (NFEPAs).....	28
4.3 WETLAND EDGE DELINEATION.....	29
4.4 CLASSIFICATION OF HGM UNIT 1; UVB WETLAND .....	31
4.4.1 WET-HEALTH ASSESSMENT ON HGM UNIT 1 .....	32
4.5 WETLAND ECOLOGICAL IMPORTANCE AND SENSITIVITY (EIS) OF HGM UNITS.....	33
5 BUFFER ZONE.....	35
6 IMPACT ASSESSMENT.....	36
6.1 Impact Analyses .....	36
6.2 Impact discussion.....	37
7 RECOMMENDATION AND CONSIDERATION.....	39

7.1	Mitigation measures for the current wetland.....	39
7.1.1	General measures .....	39
7.1.2	Erosion Control.....	40
7.1.3	Removal of Vegetation .....	40
7.1.4	Re-vegetation and prevention of compaction .....	41
7.1.5	Prevention of pollution .....	41
8	CONCLUSION AND RECOMMENDATIONS .....	42
9	REFERENCES .....	43
10	APPENDIX A: CV's OF THE PROJECT TEAM .....	44

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1-1:	Typical Solar Plant.....	2
Figure 1-2:	Typical layout for the operations and maintenance centre .....	3
Figure 1-3:	Example of a fixed tilt mountings.....	3
Figure 2-1:	Proposed development Locality Map .....	12
Figure 3-1:	Wetland hydro-geomorphic setting.....	19
Figure 3-2:	The relationship between wetland health and delivery of goods and services (Macfarlane <i>et al.</i> , 2009).....	20
Figure 4-1:	Study Area Water Resources Map .....	28
Figure 4-2:	NFEPA (2011) map of wetlands within and around the study area.....	29
Figure 4-3:	Delineated wetland within the study area .....	30
Figure 4-4:	Ecological score for the assessed HGM units in a Spider diagram .....	34
Figure 5-1:	Assessed HGM unit 100 m Buffer Zone Map .....	36

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 1:	Specialist Details .....	4
Table 2:	Proposed development property details.....	14
Table 3:	Criteria used to inform the delineation of wetland habitat based on wetland vegetation.....	15
Table 4:	Soil criteria used to inform wetland delineation using soil wetness as an indicator .....	16
Table 5:	Wetland classification (based on SANBI, 2009).....	18
Table 6:	Health categories used by WET-Health for describing the integrity of wetlands .....	21
Table 7:	Example of the scoring sheet for Ecological Importance and sensitivity.....	22
Table 8:	Ecological Importance and Sensitivity rating table .....	23
Table 9:	Ranking scales for impact assessment.....	23
Table 10:	Generic functions of buffer zones relevant to the study site (adapted from Macfarlane <i>et al.</i> , 2010) .....	25
Table 11:	HGM 1 Wetland classification as per SANBI guideline (Ollis, <i>et al.</i> , 2013).....	31
Table 12:	HGM unit 1 classification as per Brinson, 1993; Kotze, 1999; and Marneweck and Batchelor, 2002 .....	31
Table 13:	PES summary for HGM unit 1 .....	32
Table 14:	Ecosystem Services Score for the assessed HGM Units .....	33
Table 15:	Risk Assessment Matrix for the wetland within the proposed project .....	38

## LIST OF TERMS

**Alien vegetation:** Plants that do not occur naturally within the area but have been introduced either intentionally or unintentionally. Vegetation species that originate from outside of the borders of the biome -usually international in origin.

**Alluvial soil:** A deposit of sand, mud, etc. formed by flowing water or the sedimentary matter deposited thus within recent times, especially in the valleys of large rivers.

**Biodiversity:** The number and variety of living organisms on earth, the millions of plants, animals, and micro-organisms, the genes they contain, the evolutionary history and potential they encompass, and the ecosystems, ecological processes, and landscape of which they are integral parts.

**Buffer:** A strip of land surrounding a wetland or riparian area in which activities are controlled or restricted, in order to reduce the impact of adjacent land uses on the wetland or riparian area.

**Catchment:** The area contributing to runoff at a particular point in a river system.

**Delineation:** the technique of establishing the boundary of an aquatic resource such as a wetland or riparian area.

**Drain** – In the context of wetlands, refers to a natural or artificial feature such as a ditch or trench created for the purpose of removing surface and sub-surface water from an area (commonly used in agriculture).

**Ecological Importance** – An expression of the importance of an environmental resource for the maintenance of biological diversity and ecological functioning on local and wider scales.

**Ecological Sensitivity** – A system's ability to resist disturbance and its capability to recover from disturbance once it has occurred.

**Ecoregion:** An ecoregion is a "recurring pattern of ecosystems associated with characteristic combinations of soil and landform that characterize that region".

**Facultative species:** Species usually found in wetlands (76%-99% of occurrences) but occasionally found in non-wetlands areas.

**Groundwater:** Subsurface water in the saturated zone below the water table.

**Gulley** (or erosion gulley) - A gully (commonly called a "donga") is an erosion landform or feature, created by running water eroding sharply into the soil. Gullies generally resemble small ditches that can be several meters in depth and width. Gullying or gully erosion is the process by which gullies are formed.

**Hydromorphic soil:** A soil that in its undrained condition is saturated or flooded long enough to develop anaerobic conditions favoring the growth and regeneration of hydrophytic vegetation (vegetation adapted to living in anaerobic soils).

**Hydromorphy:** A process of gleying and mottling resulting from the intermittent or permanent presence of excess water in the soil profile

Indigenous vegetation: Vegetation occurring naturally within a defined area.

**NFEPA** – National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas, identified to meet national freshwater conservation targets (CSIR, 2010).

**Obligate species:** Species are almost always found in wetlands (>99% of occurrences).

**PES** – Present Ecological State, referring to the current state or condition of an environmental resource in terms of its characteristics and reflecting the change from its reference condition.

**Perennial:** Flows all year round.

**Ramsar:** The Ramsar Convention (The Convention on Wetlands of International Importance, especially as Waterfowl Habitat) is an international treaty for the conservation and sustainable utilization of wetlands, i.e., to stem the progressive encroachment on and loss of wetlands now and in the future, recognizing the fundamental ecological functions of wetlands and their economic, cultural, scientific, and recreational value. It is named after the city of Ramsar in Iran, where the Convention was signed in 1971.

**Reserve** - The quantity and quality of water needed to sustain basic human needs and ecosystems (e.g. estuaries, rivers, lakes, groundwater, and wetlands) to ensure ecologically sustainable development and utilization of a water resource. The Ecological Reserve pertains specifically to aquatic ecosystems.

**Seasonal zone of wetness:** The zone of a wetland that lies between the Temporary and Permanent zones and is characterized by saturation from three to ten months of the year, within 50cm of the surface.

**Temporary zone of wetness:** The outer zone of a wetland is characterized by saturation within 50cm of the surface for less than three months of the year.

# **1 INTRODUCTION AND BACKGROUND**

## **1.1 INTRODUCTION**

Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd was appointed by Ikomkhulu Solar (Pty) Ltd to conduct a wetland delineation and assessment as part of the environmental assessment and authorization process for the proposed river view solar plant at the remaining extent of portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15, Magareng Local Municipality, Frances Baard District Municipality in the Northern Cape Province.

To identify all freshwater ecosystems that may potentially be impacted by the activities associated with the proposed infrastructure, a 500 m “zone of investigation” around the study area, in accordance with Government Notice (GN) 509 of 2016 as it relates to the National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998) (NWA) was used as a guide in which to assess possible sensitivities of the receiving environment. This 500 m “zone of investigation” will henceforth be referred to as the investigation area. The National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998, NWA), wetlands are referred to as areas that are transitional between aquatic and terrestrial environments, where the water table is usually at or near the surface, where the land is periodically covered with shallow water, and which land in normal circumstances will support vegetation typically adapted to life in saturated soils. Wetlands are classified as water resources, and as such are protected and should not be subject to pollution or damage.

The purpose of this report is to define the ecology of the proposed developments in terms of freshwater resource characteristics, mapping of the resources, discuss key ecological drivers and defining areas of increased Ecological Importance and Sensitivity (EIS), and to define the Present Ecological State (PES) of the freshwater resources associated with the proposed developments. It is a further objective of this study to provide current impacts on the wetlands and provide mitigation measures.

This Wetland Assessment was conducted as a specialist study and was done in accordance with requirements of appendix 6 as per the National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998) (NEMA): Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations (2017).

## **1.2 PROJECT DESCRIPTION**

The proposed River View Solar Plant project entails the construction of Solar Photovoltaic (PV) power plant to feed into the National Grid (Eskom), at the Remaining Extent of Portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15, where the size of the property is approximately 1 313.5298 Ha, however the footprint for the plant is approximately 359Ha. The site area falls within ward 4, Magareng Local Municipality, Frances Baard District Municipality in the Northern Cape Province, country South Africa. Refer to Figure 1, below.

### **SOLAR PLANT SETUP**

- Solar PV panels which receives the energy from the sun, from which the Direct Current (DC) energy goes through a combiner box, which combines the outputs of the different strings of PV modules to the inverter. Batteries are used for the storage of energy before the conversion takes place using the inverter.
- The energy from the sun in the form of DC is converted (factor in the stored energy from the batteries) to Alternating Current energy (electricity), by the inverter. The next phase is the smart transformer station facility which consists of equipment with controls for switching (this mainly comprises of various facilities for operational controls, including operational offices and protection of the current) from which it goes to the substation (Eskom), then transferred to the Eskom grid line for distribution. Refer to **Error! Reference source not found.**, below.

# Components of Solar Power Plant

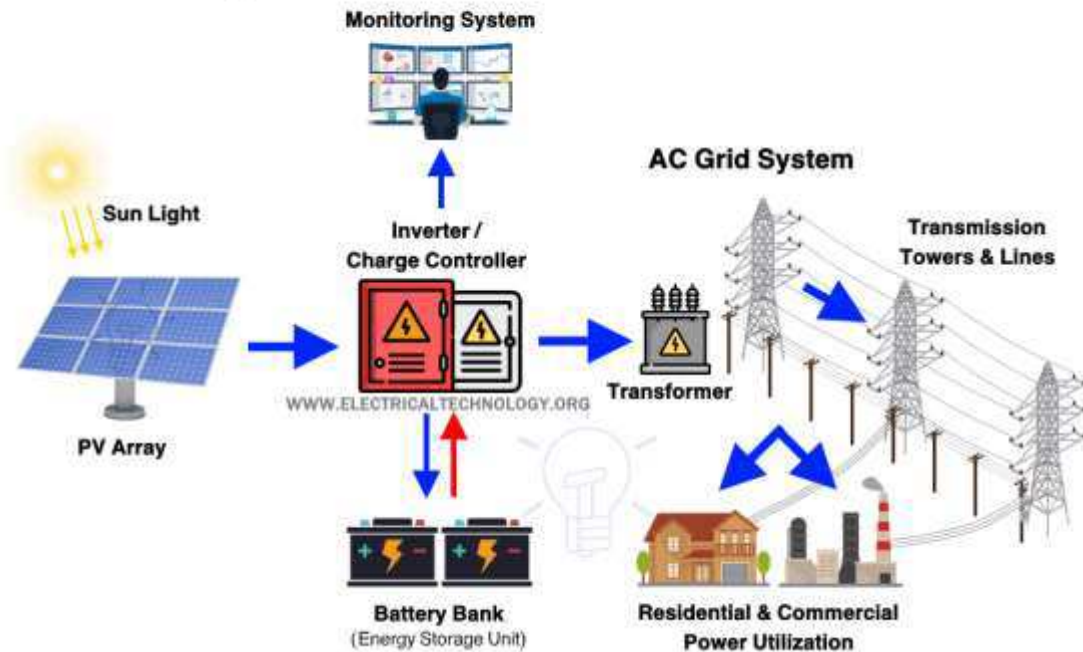


Figure 1-1: Typical Solar Plant

- Other key features for the solar plant, includes but not limited to Materials and equipment storage areas, security areas (access control). Refer to Figure 1-2: to the typical setup below.

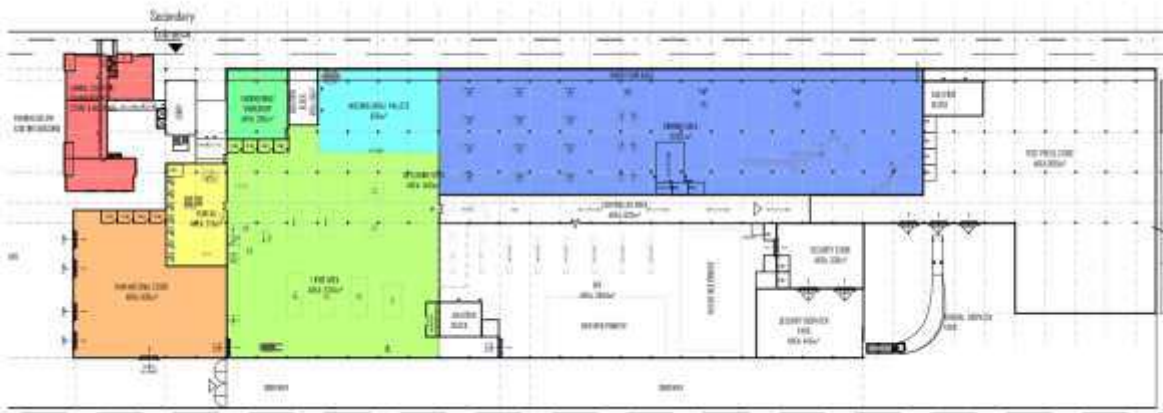


Figure 1-2: Typical layout for the operations and maintenance centre

## INSTALLATION PARAMETERS

- Mounting: The proposed system for mounting the solar panels is the fixed tilt systems, which are rack mounted at 30 degrees for capturing the energy from the sun. As compared to the single axis tracking systems the fixed tilt mountings has the following



advantages and disadvantages, although best suited for the proposed development on the basis of the energy from the sun (Location setting):

- o Less weight and cost.
- o The only disadvantage is the less energy production.

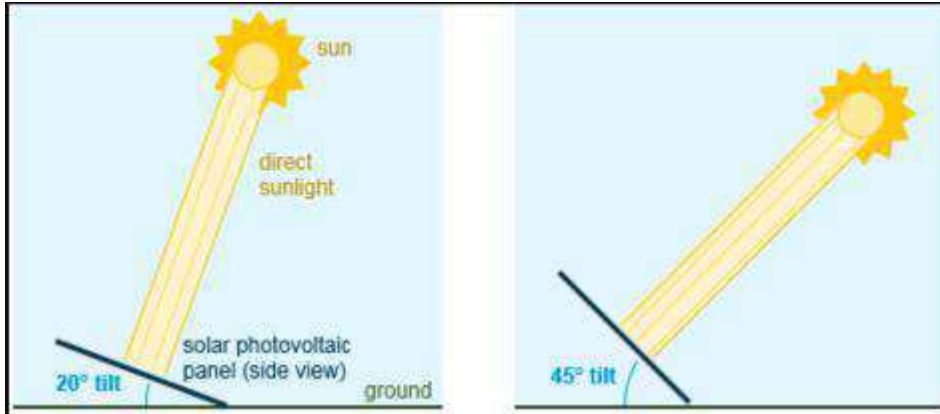


Figure 1-3: Example of a fixed tilt mountings

- PV Panels: There are generally two types of panel system in the market, which are monocrystalline and polycrystalline solar panels. The difference between the two panels is mainly the materials i.e. the silicon ratio. Other than the silicon ratio, other factors includes but not limited to availability on the market, maintenance costs and the amount of energy the panel can produce. The polycrystalline panels are the preferred option for the proposed development, as they would supplement the type of mounting proposed in order to get more energy and do not degrade easily.

#### **OTHER SPECIFICATIONS**

- The surface area for the panels is approximately 1.752m<sup>2</sup>, with an estimated energy output of 250W, each.
- A total number of 628 320 panels is proposed on the land for the proposed development, wherein the total land for consideration is approximately 359 Ha, this will accommodate the associated infrastructure i.e. inverter, the smart tanks (acting as reservoirs), the existing substation and control room.
- The given recommendation as per the feasibility study area for land allocation within the 359Ha is an allocation of 2Ha per MW.

### **1.3 DETAILS AND EXPERTISE OF THE SPECIALIST**

According to Appendix 6, section 1 (1) A specialist report prepared in terms of these Regulations must contain—(a) details of—(i) the specialist who prepared the report; and(ii) the expertise of

that specialist to compile a specialist report including a curriculum vitae;”, provided below are the details of the Specialist who prepared this Wetland assessment and delineation Report, as well as the expertise of the individual members of the study team. Table 1 below outlines the Project Team with their details and qualifications.

Table 1: Specialist Details

Specialist	Dr. Milambo Freddy Tshiala
Qualifications	Ph.D of Philosophy in Environment and Society
Affiliations	SACNASP, EAPASA
Company	Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd
Address	1262 Embankment Road 302 Lougardia Building Centurion-Highveld, 0157
Cellphone	0836691702
Email	<a href="mailto:maanakanaprojects@gmail.com">maanakanaprojects@gmail.com</a>

#### 1.4 TERMS OF REFERENCE AND OBJECTIVES

Specific outcomes in terms of this report are outlined below:

- Determine and ground truth of the wetlands assessed previously on-site and those shown by the NFEPA data (Site assessment undertaken from the 12<sup>th</sup> of November 2022).
- A wetland delineation was conducted following the guidelines contained in the DWAF (DWS) Guideline document entitled “A Practical Field Procedure for Identification and delineation of wetlands and riparian areas” (DWAF, 2005a).
- Determine the functionality of wetlands, using the Version 2 Wet-EcoServices (Kotze et al. (2020)) assessment for wetlands tool.
- Determine the Present Ecological Status (PES) of identified wetlands within the study area by applying a Level 1B Wet-Health assessment (Macfarlane et al., 2020).
- Determine the Ecological Importance and Sensitivity (EIS) for the identified wetlands by utilizing the methodology described by Rountree (2013).
- Document field and desktop data and classify confirmed wetlands into hydrogeomorphic units.
- Recommendations on management and mitigation measures (including opportunities and constraints) with regards to the development and operation of the proposed development to improve, manage and mitigate impacts on the freshwater ecology of the area will be provided.

## **1.5 ASSUMPTIONS AND LIMITATIONS**

The following assumptions and limitations are applicable to this report:

- A single season baseline assessment was conducted, thus limiting the amount of biota identified at the site;
- Accuracy of the maps, aquatic ecosystems, routes, and desktop assessments was made using the current 1:50 000 topographical map series of South Africa
- Site assessment was limited to the development area.
- The GPS used for water resource delineations was accurate to within five meters. Therefore, the wetland delineation plotted digitally may be offset by at least five meters to either side.
- The freshwater resource delineations as presented in this report are regarded as the best estimate of the freshwater resource boundaries based on the site conditions at the time of the assessment.
- Aquatic, wetland and riparian ecosystems are dynamic and complex. The effects of natural seasonal and long-term variations in the ecological conditions are therefore largely unknown.
- The study area is also used for residential and commercial purposes, therefore most of the biodiversity distribution has changed over time and has been highly impacted.
- Although background information was gathered, the information provided in this report was mainly derived from what was observed on the study site at the time of the field survey.
- Description of the depth of the regional water table and geohydrological processes falls outside the scope of the current assessment.

## **1.6 INDEMNITY AND TERMS OF USE OF THIS REPORT**

The findings, results, observations, conclusions and recommendations given in this report are based on the author's best scientific and professional knowledge as well as available information. The report is based on survey and assessment techniques which are limited by time and budgetary constraints relevant to the type and level of investigation undertaken and Maanakana Projects and Consulting as well as its staff reserve the right to modify aspects of the report including the recommendations if and when new information may become available from ongoing research or further work in this field or pertaining to this investigation.

Although Maanakana Projects and Consulting exercises due care and diligence in rendering

services and preparing documents, Maanakana Projects and Consulting accepts no liability and the client, by receiving this document, indemnifies Maanakana Projects and Consulting and its directors, managers, agents and employees against all actions, claims, demands, losses, liabilities, costs, damages and expenses arising from or in connection with services rendered, directly or indirectly by Maanakana Projects and Consulting and by the use of the information contained in this document.

This report must not be altered or added to without the prior written consent of the author. This also refers to electronic copies of this report which are supplied for the purposes of inclusion as part of other reports, including main reports. Similarly, any recommendations, statements or conclusions drawn from or based on this report must refer to this report. If these form part of a main report relating to this investigation or report, this report must be included in its entirety as an appendix or separate section to the main report.

## **1.7 LEGISLATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

The following legislations are important and applicable to the proposed construction of Kempton Park reservoir zone water supply system.

### **1.7.1 THE CONSTITUTION OF THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA, 1996 (ACT 108 OF 1996)**

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 has major implications for environmental management. The main effects are the protection of environmental and property rights, the drastic change brought about by the sections dealing with administrative law such as access to information, just administrative action and broadening of the locus standi of litigants. These aspects provide general and overarching support and are of major significance in the effective implementation of the environmental management principles and structures of the Environment Conservation Act and NEMA. Section 24 in the Bill of Rights of the Constitution specifically states:

*"Everyone has the right –*

- o To an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being; and*
- o To have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that -*
  - Prevent pollution and ecological degradation.*
  - Promote conservation; and*

- *Secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development."*

**Section 24 of the Constitution therefore places a duty on all spheres of government to take reasonable steps, including making laws, preventing pollution, promoting conservation, and ensuring sustainable development. Undertaking a wetland assessment that supports the environmental impact assessment, cover the sensitivity of aquatic systems and provides mitigation measures where impacts are envisioned.**

#### 1.7.2 NATIONAL WATER ACT, 1998

In a South African legal context, the term watercourse is often used rather than the terms wetland, or river. The National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998) (NWA) includes wetlands and rivers into the definition of the term watercourse (DWA, 2005).

The NWA defines a riparian habitat as follows: "Riparian habitat includes the physical structure and associated vegetation of the areas associated with a watercourse, which are commonly characterized by alluvial soils, and which are inundated or flooded to an extent and with a frequency sufficient to support vegetation of species with composition and physical structure distinct from those of adjacent land areas."

The NWA defines a wetland as "land which is transitional between terrestrial and aquatic systems where the water table is usually at or near the surface and the land is periodically covered with shallow water, and which land in normal circumstances supports or would support vegetation typically adapted to life in saturated soil."

**If there is any encroachment into wetlands, or within the boundaries of wetlands and/or riparian zones, a Water Use License will be required from DWS under Section 21 of the National Water Act (Act 36 of 1998). Government Notice 1199 is also applicable, that any activity within the 500m boundary of a wetland is excluded in the GA and therefore a water use authorization must be applied for.**

#### 1.7.3 NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT ACT (NEMA)

**1 (1) A Specialists' reports must comply with Appendix 6 of Government Notice No. 326 of 07 April 2017 as published under sections 24(5), and 44 of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998), as amended and whereby the following are to be included:**

- a) The details of:
  - a. The specialist who prepared the report; and
  - b. The expertise of that specialist to compile a specialist report including curriculum vitae.
- b) A declaration that the specialist is independent in a form as may be specified by the competent authority;
- c) An indication of the scope of, and the purpose for which, the report was prepared;
- d) The date and season of the site investigation and the relevance of the season to the outcome of the assessment;
- e) a description of the methodology adopted in preparing the report or carrying out the specialized process inclusive of equipment and modeling used;
- f) details of an assessment of the specifically identified sensitivity of the site related to the proposed activity or activities and its associated structures and infrastructure, inclusive of a site plan identifying site alternative;
- g) an identification of any areas to be avoided, including buffers;
- h) a map superimposing the activity including the associated structures and infrastructure on the environmental sensitivities of the site including areas to be avoided, including buffers;
- i) a description of any assumptions made and any uncertainties or gaps in knowledge;
- j) a description of the findings and potential implications of such findings on the impact of the proposed activity, including identified alternatives on the environment or activities;
- k) any mitigation measures for inclusion in the EMPr;
- l) any conditions for inclusion in the environmental authorization;
- m) any monitoring requirements for inclusion in the EMPr or environmental authorization;
- n) a reasoned opinion—
  - i. (as to) whether the proposed activity, activities or portions thereof should be authorized;
  - ii. (iA) regarding the acceptability of the proposed activity or activities; and
  - iii. if the opinion is that the proposed activity, activities or portions thereof should be authorized, any avoidance, management, and mitigation measures that should be included in the EMPr, and where applicable, the closure plan;

- o) a description of any consultation process that was undertaken during the course of preparing the specialist report;
- p) a summary and copies of any comments received during any consultation process and where applicable all responses thereto; and
- q) any other information requested by the competent authority.

#### 1.7.4 OTHER LEGAL REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

In addition to the above, the proponent must also comply with the provisions of the following relevant national legislation, conventions, and regulations applicable to wetlands and riparian zones:

- Convention on Wetlands of International Importance - the Ramsar Convention and the South African Wetlands Conservation Programme (SAWCP).
- National Environment Management Protected Areas Act, 2003 (Act No. 57 of 2003).
- Regulations GN R.543, R.544 and R.545 of 2010, promulgated under NEMA.
- Conservation of Agriculture Resources Act, 1983 (Act 43 of 1983).
- Regulations and Guidelines on Water Use under the NWA.
- South African Water Quality Guidelines under the NWA.
- Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act No. 73 of 1989).
- Other Provincial ordinances and municipal by laws



## **2 BASELINE SITE DISCRIPTION**

### **2.1 SITE DESCRIPTION AND PROPOSED SITE ACTIVITIES**

### **2.2 PROJECT DESCRIPTION**

The proposed River View Solar Plant project entails the construction of Solar Photovoltaic (PV) power plant to feed into the National Grid (Eskom), at the Remaining Extent of Portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15, where the size of the property is approximately 1 313.5298 Ha, however the footprint for the plant is approximately 359Ha. The site area falls within ward 4, Magareng Local Municipality, Frances Baard District Municipality in the Northern Cape Province, country South Africa. Refer to Figure 2-1, below. Shows the exact areas of the proposed development.





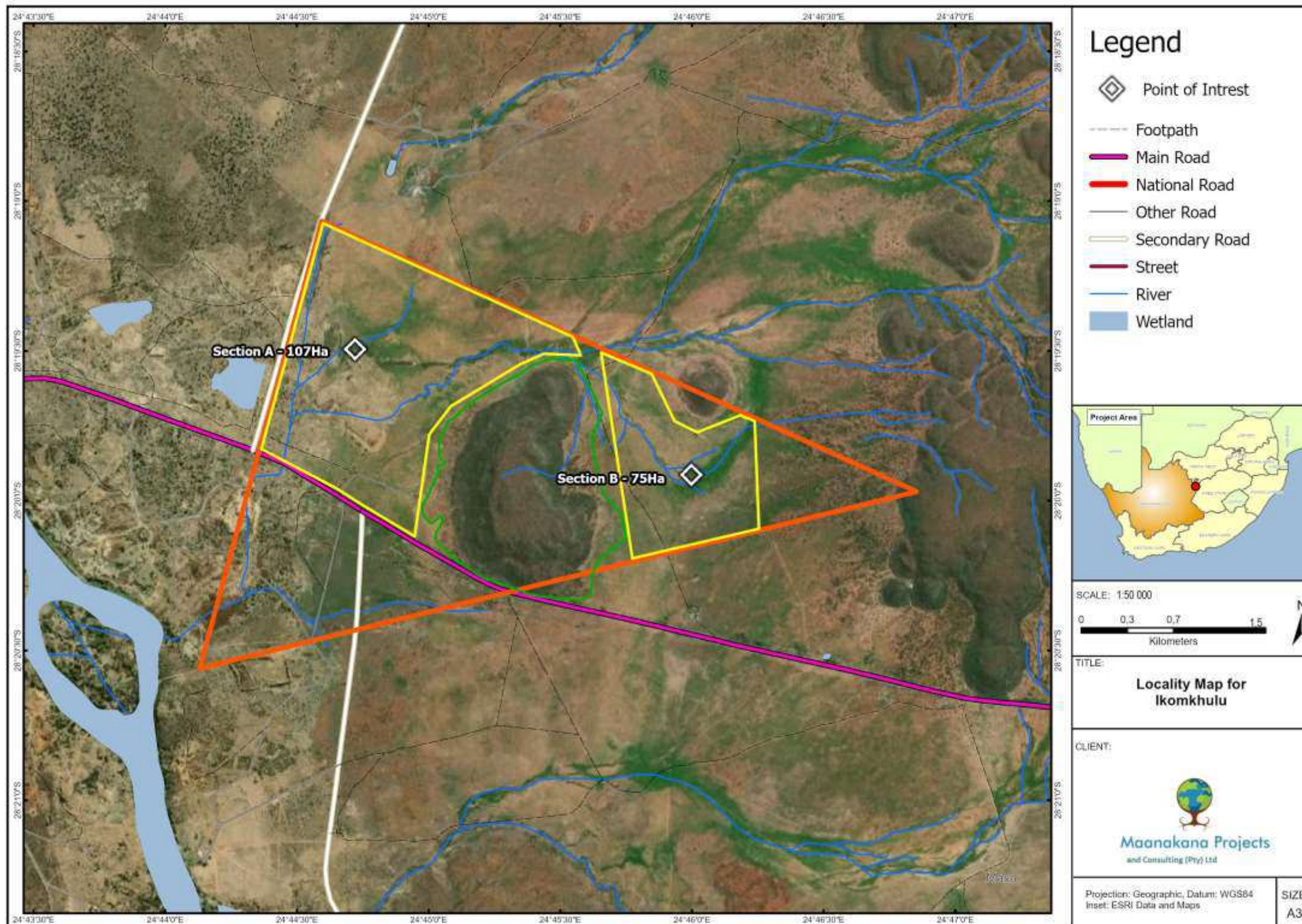


Figure 2-2: Section A and B of Portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15

The development site/land has been surveyed therefore there is a 21-digit Surveyor General (SG) code available for each cadastral land parcel, Table 2 below outlines the property at which the proposed development will be taking place.

Table 2: Proposed development property details

Province	Northern Cape
Local Municipality	Magareng Local Municipality
District Municipality	Frances Baard District Municipality
Ward Number (s)	4
Farm Name and Number	Portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15
21-digit SG Code	C03700000000001500011
Centre Coordinates	28°19'56.39"S 24°44'49.58"E

### 3 METHODOLOGY

#### 3.1 WETLAND DELINEATION

The outer boundary of wetlands was identified and delineated according to the Department of Water Affairs wetland delineation manual '*A Practical Field Procedure for Identification and Delineation of Wetland and Riparian Areas*' (DWAF, 2005a). The guidelines state that a wetland delineation procedure must identify the outer edge of the temporary zone of the wetland, which marks the boundary between the wetland and adjacent terrestrial areas and is that part of the wetland that remains flooded or saturated close to the soil surface for only a few weeks in the year, but long enough to develop anaerobic conditions and determine the nature of the plants growing in the soil.

The guidelines list four indicators to be used for the finding of the outer edge of a wetland. These are:

1. Terrain unit indicator
  - ❖ A practical index is used for identifying those parts of the landscape where wetlands are likely to occur based on the general topography of the area.
  - ❖ The terrain unit indicator does not only identify valley bottom wetlands but also wetlands on steep and mild slopes in the crest, midslope, and foot slope positions.
2. Wetland vegetation indicator
  - ❖ Vegetation in an untransformed state is a useful guide in finding the boundary of a wetland as plant communities generally undergo distinct changes in species



composition as one proceeds along the wetness gradient from the center of a wetland towards adjacent terrestrial areas. An example of criteria used to classify wetland vegetation and inform the delineation of wetland zones is provided in Table 3 below and it was adapted from Macfarlane et al., 2007 and DWAF, 2005a.

- ❖ Although vegetation is the key component of the definition of a wetland in the National Water Act (No 36 of 1998), it is often the case that wetland areas have been disturbed in the past. This alters the type of vegetation currently growing in the wetland because vegetation communities are dynamic and react rapidly to external factors. The delineation guidelines, therefore, place greater emphasis on soil wetness indicators, as these are more permanent indicators of wetland presence.

Table 3: Criteria used to inform the delineation of wetland habitat based on wetland vegetation

Vegetation	Temporary wetness zone	Seasonal wetness zone	Permanent wetness zone
<b>Herbaceous</b>	Mixture of non-wetland species and hydrophilic plant species restricted to wetland areas	Hydrophilic sedges and grasses restricted to wetland areas	Emergent plants including reeds and bulrushes; floating or submerged aquatic plants
<b>Woody</b>	Mixture of non-wetland and hydrophilic species restricted to wetland areas	Hydrophilic woody species restricted to wetland areas	Hydrophilic woody species restricted to wetland areas with morphological adaptations to prolonged wetness (e.g.: prop roots)
SYMBOL	HYDRIC STATUS	DESCRIPTION/OCCURRENCE	
<b>ow</b>	Obligate wetland species	Almost always grow in wetlands (>90% occurrence)	
<b>fw</b>	Facultative wetland species	Usually grow in wetlands (67-99% occurrence) but occasionally found in non-wetland areas	
<b>f</b>	Facultative species	Equally likely to grow in wetlands (34-66% occurrence) and non-wetland areas	
<b>fd</b>	Facultative dry-land species	Usually grow in non-wetland areas but sometimes grow in wetlands (1-34% occurrence)	
<b>d</b>	Dryland species	Almost always grow in drylands	

### 3. Soil wetness indicator

- ❖ According to the wetland definition used in the National Water Act (NWA, 1998), vegetation is the primary indicator that must be present under normal circumstances. However, in practice, the soil wetness indicator (informed by investigating the top 50cm of wetland topsoil) tends to be the most important, and the other three indicators are used to refine the assessment. The reason for this is that vegetation responds relatively quickly to changes in soil moisture and may be transformed by local impacts; whereas the soil morphological indicators are far more permanent and will retain the signs of frequent saturation (wetland conditions) long after a

wetland has been transformed/drained (DWAF, 2005a). Thus the on-site assessment of wetland indicators focused largely on using soil wetness indicators, determined through soil sampling with a soil auger, with vegetation and topography being a secondary indicator. A Munsell Soil Colour Chart was used to ascertain soil colour values including hue, colour value, and matrix chroma as well as a degree of mottling to inform the identification of wetland (hydric) soils. An example of soil criteria used to assess the presence of wetland soils is provided below in Table 4.

Table 4: Soil criteria used to inform wetland delineation using soil wetness as an indicator

Soil depth	Temporary wetness zone	Seasonal wetness zone	Permanent wetness zone
0 – 10cm	<p><b>Matrix chroma:</b> 1-3 (Grey matrix &lt;10%)</p> <p><b>Mottles:</b> Few/None high chroma mottles</p> <p><b>Organic Matter:</b> Low</p> <p><b>Sulphidic:</b> No</p>	<p><b>Matrix chroma:</b> 0-2 (Grey matrix &gt;10%)</p> <p><b>Mottles:</b> Many low chroma mottles</p> <p><b>Organic Matter:</b> Medium</p> <p><b>Sulphidic:</b> Seldom</p>	<p><b>Matrix chroma:</b> 0-1 (Prominent grey matrix)</p> <p><b>Mottles:</b> Few/None high chroma mottles</p> <p><b>Organic Matter:</b> High</p> <p><b>Sulphidic:</b> Often</p>
30 – 50cm	<p><b>Matrix chroma:</b> 0 – 2</p> <p><b>Mottles:</b> Few/Many</p>	As Above	As Above

### 3.1.1 DESKTOP STUDY

Wetland identification were done at a desktop level prior to the site survey. NFEPA (2011) and other spatial data was used.

### 3.1.2 FIELD SURVEY

The types of vegetation present were used as a guideline for interpreting current moisture levels and likely degree of disturbance. Soil forms were identified and separated into terrestrial soils forms and hydric soils forms (although several soil forms have to be utilized with caution as several soil forms could exhibit a high degree of variation with regards to hydric properties). Specific attention was given to the following redoximorphic features used to identify and delineate wetlands, as discussed by Richardson and Vepraskas (2001):

- A reduced matrix- Identified as having relative grey colours with a low chroma of less than or equal to 4 (Soil Classification working group, 1991). This is due to the presence of Fe<sup>2+</sup> (the absence of Fe<sup>3+</sup>), meaning that the soil has been reduced for significant periods.
- Redox depletions- Bodies of soil with a low chroma grey colour, indicating that the Fe and Mn oxides in the soil have been stripped out. Redox depletions occur in the form



of iron depletion and clay depletions. In structured soils, soil peds indicative of redox depletions have a low chroma on their surfaces, while the matrix of the ped has a higher chroma. In structure fewer soils, grey mottles are indicative of iron depletion. Clay depletions occur when silicate clay minerals are decomposed, and the elementary chemical components are removed by leaching. These areas then contain less iron, manganese, and clay than the adjacent soils.

- Redox concentrations- An accumulation of iron and manganese oxides that occur as Fe-Mn concretions, mottles, and pore linings. Fe-Mn concretions that are indicative of hydric soils are firm to extremely firm irregularly shaped bodies with diffuse boundaries. Mottles are soft bodies of irregular shape within a soil matrix, recognized as blotches or spots of high chroma (usually red or yellow for iron and black for manganese). Pore linings are zones of Fe and Mn accumulation along the route of plant roots. They can occur as coatings on a pore surface or impregnations of the matrix adjacent to the pore (Vepraskas, 1995).

### **3.2 WETLAND CLASSIFICATION**

For this study, wetlands were classified according to HGM (hydrogeomorphic) type (Level 4A classification level) using the National Wetland Classification System which was developed for the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI, 2009) as outlined in Table 5 below.

Table 5: Wetland classification (based on SANBI, 2009)

LEVEL 3		LEVEL 4A	
Landscape Setting	HGM Type	Description	
SLOPE	Channel (river)	Areas of channelled flow including rivers and streams where water is largely confined to a main channel during low flows. Flood waters may over top the banks of the channel and spread onto an adjacent floodplain	
	Hillslope seep	Wetlands on slopes formed mainly by the discharge of sub-surface water.	
VALLEY FLOOR	Channel (river)	River channels in a valley floor setting.	
	Channelled valley-bottom wetland	Valley floors with one or more well-defined stream channels, but lacking characteristic floodplain features.	
	Unchannelled valley-bottom wetland	Valley floors with no clearly defined stream channel.	
	Floodplain wetland	Valley floors with a well-defined stream channel, gently sloped and characterised by floodplain features such as oxbows and natural levees.	
	Depression	Basin-shaped areas that allow for the accumulation of surface water, an outlet may be absent (e.g. pans).	
	Valleyhead seep	Seeps located at the head of a valley, often the source of streams.	
PLAIN	Channel (river)	River channels in a plain landscape setting.	
	Floodplain wetland	Floodplain wetlands as above but in a plain landscape setting.	
	Unchannelled valley-bottom wetland	Unchannelled valley bottom type wetlands as above but in a plain landscape setting.	
	Depression	Depression type wetlands as above but in a plain landscape setting.	
	Flat	Extensive areas characterised by level, gently undulating or uniformly sloping land with a very gentle gradient.	
BENCH (HILLTOP / SADDLE / SHELF)	Depression	Depression wetlands located on a bench.	
	Flat	Flat wetlands located on a bench.	

### 3.2.1 DESCRIBING THE HYDROGEOMORPHIC TYPE OF A WETLAND

Wetlands were classified according to HGM (hydrogeomorphic) type which is defined based on geomorphic setting (e.g. hillslope or valley bottom), water source (surface water dominated, or sub-surface water dominated), and how water flows through the wetland unit (diffusely or channelled). Each wetland unit distinguished based on hydro-geomorphic type were assessed individually. Figure 3-1 below indicates the wetland hydro-geomorphic setting of inland wetlands in South Africa.

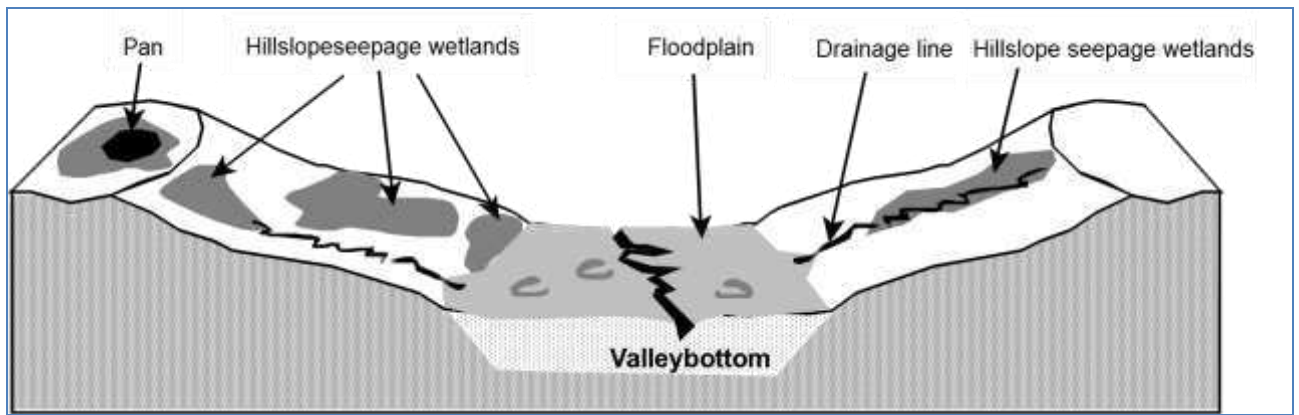


Figure 3-1: Wetland hydro-geomorphic setting

Since the importance of wetland goods and benefits is dictated not only by the supply (benefit availability) of a particular good/benefit but also on the need or demand (user requirement) for such a benefit, the overall importance of the ecosystem service or benefit is ultimately derived from a combination of supply and demand scores. For example, a wetland may supply a particular service relatively freely; however, this service may not be in great demand, limiting the importance of the benefit to society.

### 3.2.2 FUNCTIONAL ASSESSMENT

The functionality of wetlands was determined through a combination of the wetland's present ecological state and the ecosystem services that the wetland provides. These were assessed using WET-Health (McFarlane *et al.*, 2020) and WET-Eco services (Kotze *et al.*, 2020), where the Level 1B wetland assessment tool was deployed. Wetland "health" and wetland ecosystem services have a generic relationship, where a wetland that is near its pristine, non-impacted state, should provide a higher amount of ecosystem services compared to a wetland that has been heavily degraded and therefore has lost its ability to provide these ecosystem services. The tools are therefore meant to complement each other (Figure 3-2).

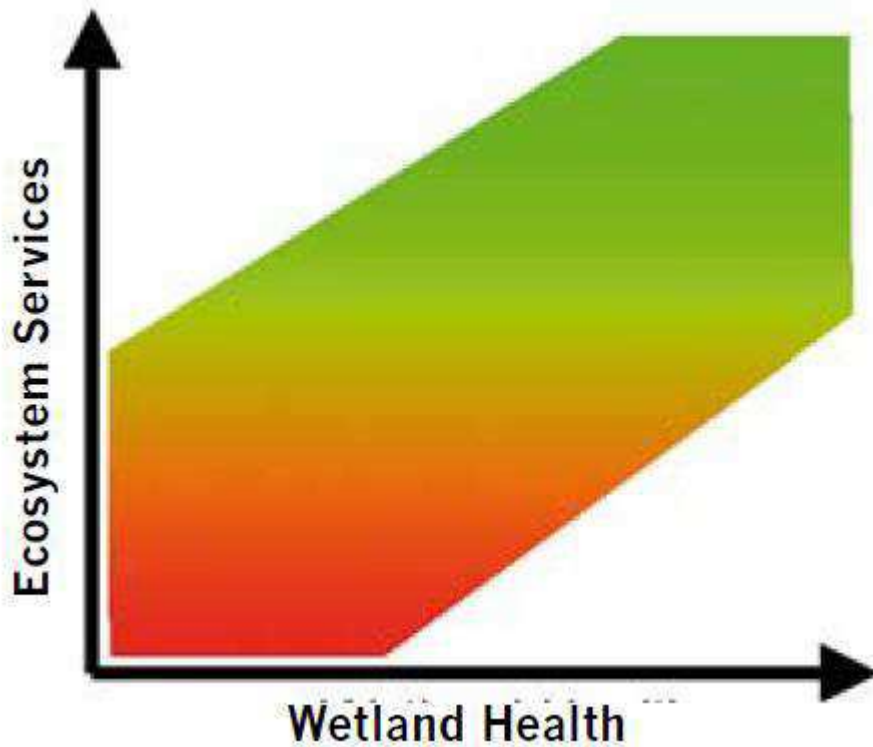


Figure 3-2: The relationship between wetland health and delivery of goods and services (Macfarlane *et al.*, 2009).

### 3.2.3 WETLAND HEALTH ASSESSMENT

The ecological state of a wetland can be defined according to the wetland's reference condition, which is the state of the wetland before anthropogenic influences. This is in line with the ecosystem integrity definition of Anderson (1991) where the reference condition is an un-impacted condition in which ecosystems show little or no influence of human actions. The assessment is based on the approach where the impacts that underpin wetland ecosystems are quantified.

An assessment tool known as WET-Health (Macfarlane *et al.*, 2020) was used for the present ecological state (PES) assessment, where the Level 1B wetland assessment tool was used. WET-Health examines the present ecological status "Health" of a wetland by determining the degree of deviation from the natural reference condition for three components, namely: hydrology, geomorphology, water quality, and vegetation (Kotze *et al.*, 2020). The hydrological component examines the quantity and timing of water inputs and the pattern of water flow through the wetland, geomorphology examines sedimentary inputs and

outputs and geomorphic indicators of these, while vegetation examines the relative abundance of plant functional groups (Kotze *et al.*, 2020).

These three components are assessed separately to avoid double-counting, although it is recognized that they are closely interlinked in that geomorphological integrity affects hydrological integrity, and both affect vegetation, which may, in turn, have feedback effects on the wetland system (Kotze *et al.*, 2020). Once classified according to the wetland's HGM unit, the ecological condition of the wetland is determined by separately assessing the spatial extent, intensity, and magnitude of human modifications on each HGM unit (Macfarlane *et al.*, 2008).

The spatial extent refers to the proportion of the wetland and/or its catchment affected by a given activity. The intensity refers to the degree to which wetland characteristics have been altered within the affected area and is informed by several predetermined criteria that are rated and aggregated in an algorithm to obtain an intensity score. A procedure is then followed whereby the results from different modules can be integrated into a single score that can be used to categorize the overall present ecological condition of a wetland (Macfarlane *et al.*, 2008), and are shown in Table 6 below.

The formula is as follows:

$$\text{Overall health rating} = \frac{[(\text{Hydrology} \times 3) + (\text{Geomorphology} \times 2) + (\text{Vegetation} \times 2)]}{7}$$

Table 6: Health categories used by WET-Health for describing the integrity of wetlands

HEALTH CATEGORY	DESCRIPTION	Min Score
A	Unmodified, natural.	0 – 0.9
B	Largely natural with few modifications. A slight change in ecosystem processes is discernible and a small loss of natural habitats and biota may have taken place.	1 – 1.9
C	Moderately modified. A moderate change in ecosystem processes and loss of natural habitats has taken place but the natural habitat remains predominantly intact.	2 – 3.9
D	Largely modified. A large change in ecosystem processes and loss of natural habitat and biota and has occurred.	4 – 5.9
E	The change in ecosystem processes and loss of natural habitat and biota is great but some remaining natural habitat features are still recognizable.	6 – 7.9

F	Modifications have reached a critical level and the ecosystem processes have been modified completely with an almost complete loss of natural habitat and biota.	8 – 10
---	--	--------

### 3.3 WETLAND ECOLOGICAL IMPORTANCE AND SENSITIVITY (EIS)

The Ecological Importance and Sensitivity was determined by utilizing a rapid scoring system (Table 7). The system has been developed to provide a scoring approach for assessing the Ecological, Hydrological Functions, and Direct Human Benefits of importance and sensitivity of wetlands. These scoring assessments for these three aspects of wetland importance and sensitivity have been based on the requirements of the NWA, the original Ecological Importance and Sensitivity assessments developed for riverine assessments, and the work conducted by Kotze *et al.*, (2020) on the assessment of wetland ecological goods and services from the WET-EcoServices tool (Rountree *et al.*, 2013). The maximum score for these components was taken as the importance rating for the wetland which is rated using Table 7 below and using the average as your EIS.

Table 7: Example of the scoring sheet for Ecological Importance and sensitivity

<b>Ecological Importance</b>	<b>Score (0-4)</b>	<b>Confidence (1-5)</b>
Biodiversity support		
Presence of Red Data species		
Populations of unique species		
Migration/breeding/feeding sites		
Landscape-scale		
Protection status of the wetland		
Protection status of the vegetation type		
Regional context of the ecological integrity		
Size and rarity of the wetland type/s present		
Diversity of habitat types		
The sensitivity of the wetland		
Sensitivity to changes in floods		
Sensitivity to changes in low flows/dry season		
Sensitivity to changes in water quality		



Table 8: Ecological Importance and Sensitivity rating table

ECOLOGICAL IMPORTANCE AND SENSITIVITY CATEGORIES	RANGE OF EIS SCORE
<p><u>Very high:</u> Wetlands that are considered ecologically important and sensitive on a <b>national or even international</b> level. The biodiversity of these systems is usually very sensitive to flow and habitat modifications. They play a major role in moderating the quantity and quality of water of major rivers.</p>	<p>&gt;3 and +4</p>
<p><u>High:</u> Wetlands that are considered to be ecologically important and sensitive. The biodiversity of these systems may be sensitive to flow and habitat modifications. They play a role in moderating the quantity and quality of water of major rivers.</p>	<p>&gt;2 and &lt;=3</p>
<p><u>Moderate:</u> Wetlands that are considered to be ecologically important and sensitive on a provincial or local scale. The biodiversity of these systems is not usually sensitive to flow and habitat modifications. They play a small role in moderating the quantity and quality of water of major rivers.</p>	<p>&gt;1 and &lt;=2</p>
<p><u>Low/marginal:</u> Wetlands that are not ecologically important and sensitive at any scale. The biodiversity of these systems is ubiquitous and not sensitive to flow and habitat modifications. They play an insignificant role in moderating the quantity and quality of water of major rivers.</p>	<p>&gt;0 and &lt;=1</p>

### 3.4 IMPACT ASSESSMENT

The information gained from the functional integrity and EIS assessments were used to inform an assessment of the likelihood and significance of potential impacts associated with the proposed mining activities. The following methodology (Table 9) has been adopted from the DWS's Operational Guideline, 2010 entitled "*Operational Guideline: Integrated Water and Waste Management Plan*".

Table 9: Ranking scales for impact assessment

<b>DURATION (D)</b>	<b>MAGNITUDE (M)</b>
---------------------	----------------------

5 – Permanent	10 - Very high/do not know
4 - Long term (ceases with operational life)	8 - High
3 - Medium-term (5-15 years)	6 - Moderate
2 - Short term (0-5 years)	4 - Low
1 – Immediate	2 – Minor
<b>SCALE (S)</b>	<b>PROBABILITY (P)</b>
5 – International	5 - Definite/do not know
4 - National	4 - Highly probable
3 - Regional	3 - Medium probability
2 - Local	2 - low probability
1 - Site	1- Improbable
0 – None	0 – None
<b>SIGNIFICANCE POINTS (SP) = (D+M+S) X P</b>	
<b>HIGH (H) = &gt;60 POINTS</b>	
<b>MODERATE (M) = 30-60 POINTS</b>	
<b>LOW (L) = &lt;30 POINTS</b>	
<b>NO SIGNIFICANCE = 0</b>	
<b>POSITIVE IMPACT</b>	

The maximum value of significance points is 100. Environmental effects could therefore be rated as either high (H), moderate (M), or low (L) significance.

### 3.5 BUFFER ZONES

A buffer zone is defined as a strip of land surrounding a wetland or riparian area in which activities are controlled or restricted (DWAF, 2005). A development has several impacts on the surrounding environment and a wetland. The development changes habitats, the

ecological environment, infiltration rate, amount of runoff, and runoff intensity of the site, and therefore the water regime of the entire site. An increased volume of stormwater runoff, peak discharges, and frequency and severity of flooding is therefore often characteristic of transformed catchments.

Buffer zones have been shown to perform a wide range of functions and have therefore been widely proposed as a standard measure to protect water resources and their associated biodiversity. These include (i) maintaining basic hydrological processes; (ii) reducing impacts on water resources from upstream activities and adjoining land uses; (iii) providing habitat for various aspects of biodiversity. A brief description of each of the functions and associated services are outlined in Table 10 below.

Table 10: Generic functions of buffer zones relevant to the study site (adapted from Macfarlane et al, 2010)

<b>Primary Role</b>	<b>Buffer Functions</b>
Reducing impacts from upstream activities and adjoining land uses	Sediment removal: Surface roughness provided by vegetation, or litter, reduces the velocity of overland flow, enhancing the settling of particles. Buffer zones can, therefore, act as effective sediment traps, removing sediment from runoff water from adjoining lands thus reducing the sediment load of surface waters.
	Removal of toxics: Buffer zones can remove toxic pollutants, such as hydrocarbons that would otherwise affect the quality of water resources and thus their suitability for aquatic biota and human use.
	Nutrient removal: Wetland vegetation and vegetation in terrestrial buffer zones may significantly reduce the number of nutrients (N & P), entering a water body reducing the potential for excessive outbreaks of microalgae that can harm both freshwater and estuarine environments.
	Removal of pathogens: By slowing water contaminated with fecal material, buffer zones encourage the deposition of pathogens, which soon die when exposed to the elements.

Buffer zones are therefore proposed as a standard mitigation measure to reduce impacts of land uses / activities planned adjacent to water resources. This must, however, be considered in conjunction with other mitigation measures.

Local government policies require that protective buffer zones be calculated from the outer edge of the temporary zone of a wetland and the riparian zone of a river (KZN DAEA, 2002; CoCT, 2008; GDACE, 2009). An understanding of the origin of the water that results in the wetland/riparian conditions should ideally form the basis of refining this generic buffer zone through an analysis of empirical data.

## **4 RESULTS AND DISCUSSIONS**

### **4.1 DRAINAGE AND QUATERNARY CATCHMENTS**

South Africa is divided into 9 Water Management Areas (WMA) (Revised National Water Resource Strategy, 2012), managed by their water boards. Each of the WMAs is made up of quaternary catchments which relate to the drainage regions of South Africa, ranging from A to X (excluding O). These drainage regions are subdivided into four known divisions based on size. For example, the letter A represents the primary drainage catchment; A2 for example will represent the secondary catchment; A21 represents the tertiary catchment and A21D would represent the quaternary catchment which is the lowest subdivision in the Water Resources of South Africa, 2012 manual. Each of the quaternary catchments has associated hydrological parameters (DWS, 2016).

The study area is situated in the lower Vaal Catchment within C91D quaternary catchment, with Vaal being the main river system in the area (Figure 4-1).

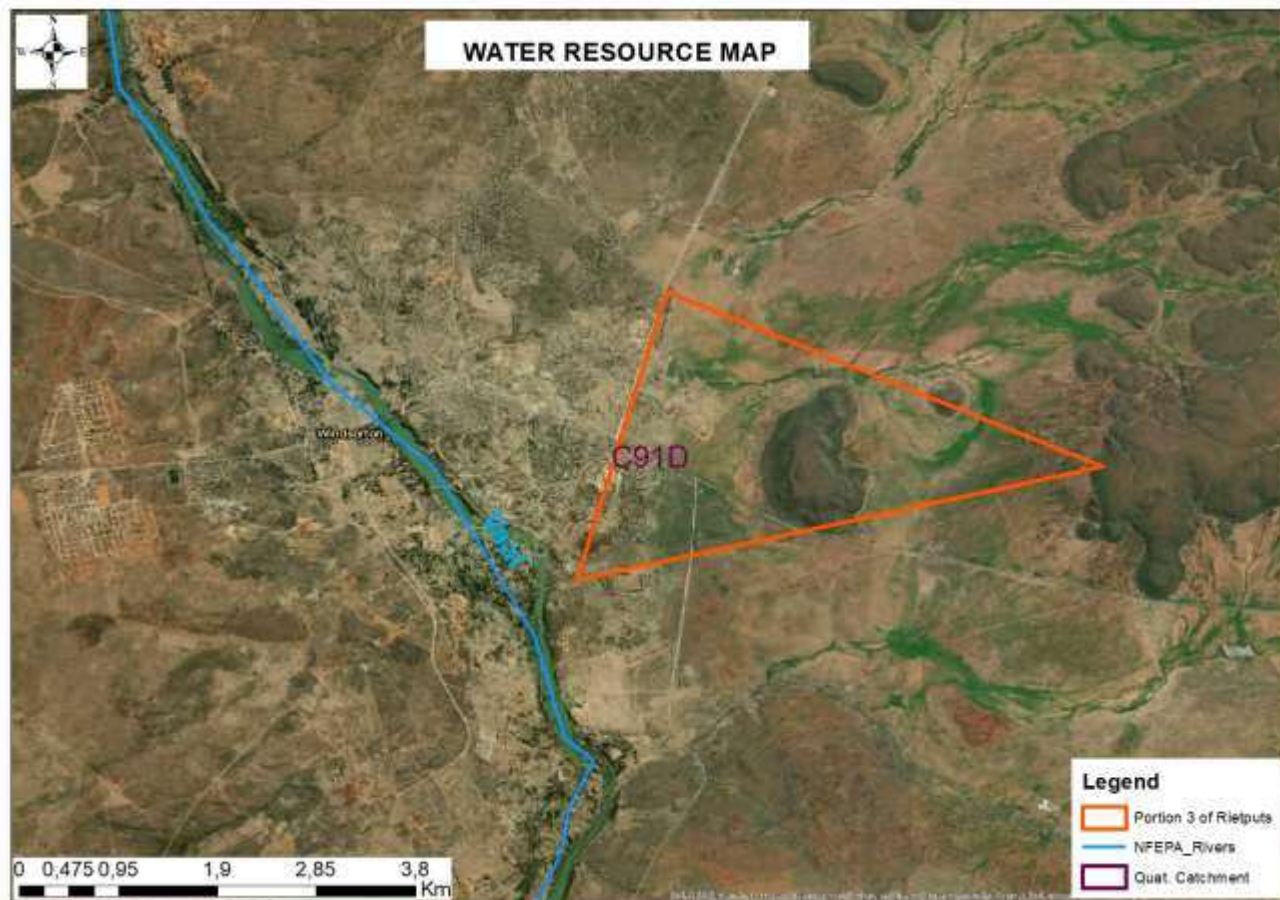


Figure 4-1: Study Area Water Resources Map

## 4.2 NATIONAL FRESHWATER ECOSYSTEM PRIORITY AREAS (NFEPAs)

Based on current outputs of the NFEPAs project (Nel et al., 2011), there are several NFEPAs wetlands or wetland clusters located within the study area and several kilometers from the study area's catchment (Figure 4-2). The National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas, more specifically, the NFEPAs project aims to:

- Identify Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas (hereafter referred to as "FEPAs") to meet national biodiversity goals for freshwater ecosystems; and
- Develop a basis for enabling effective implementation of measures to protect FEPAs, including free-flowing rivers.

The first aim uses systematic biodiversity planning to identify priorities for conserving South Africa's freshwater biodiversity, within the context of equitable social and economic development. The second aim comprises a national and sub-national component. The national component aims



to align DWS and DEA policy mechanisms and tools for managing and conserving freshwater ecosystems. The sub-national component aims to use three case study areas to demonstrate how NFEPA products should be applied to influence land and water resource decision-making processes at a sub-national level (Driver et al., 2011). The project further aims to maximize synergies and alignment with other national-level initiatives such as the National Biodiversity Assessment (NBA) and the Cross-Sector Policy Objectives for Inland Water Conservation.

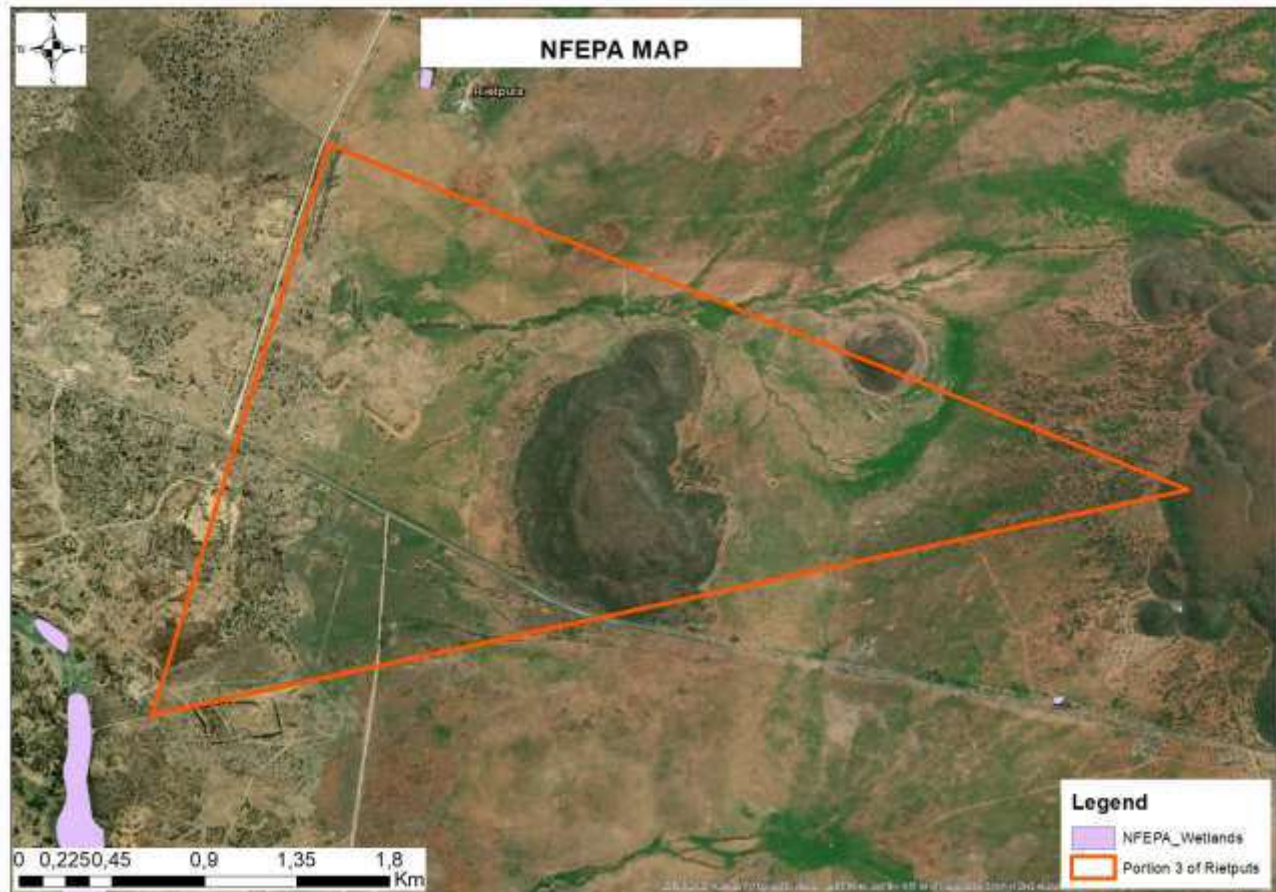


Figure 4-2: NFEPA (2011) map of wetlands within and around the study area

### 4.3 WETLAND EDGE DELINEATION

The edge of the wetland was delineated on the 12<sup>th</sup> of November 2022. To cover a representative area of the wetlands in the study area, several transect surveys were necessary. Areas in between these transects were also traversed by foot and spot surveys contributed to a more complete survey. Some wetland areas defined on the NFEPA (2011) layers data were

found to be consistent with what was observed on site. Figure 4-3 below shows the delineated wetland.

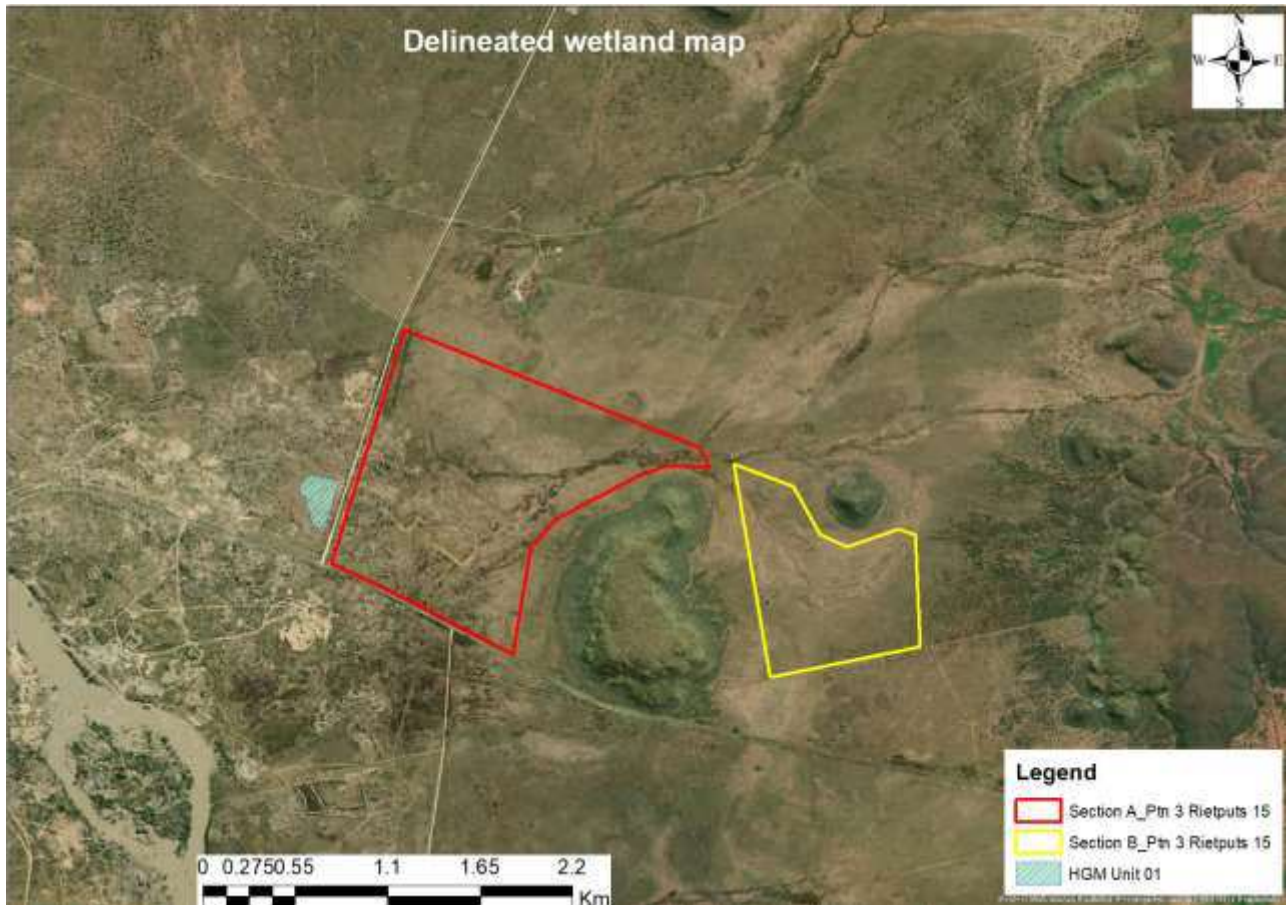


Figure 4-3: Delineated wetland within the study area

The following section shows the results of the wetland delineation and discusses the respective wetland hydrology as well as the functional assessment of the hydrogeomorphic (HGM) affected by the proposed development. This section further discusses the impacts observed within the wetland and its vicinity.

For this report and to suitably quantifying and assess the wetland system observed during the site assessment, namely:

- Flat Wetland (HGM unit 01)

The HGM units were delineated based on all four of the criteria listed in the delineation guidelines (Macfarlane, et.al., 2020), i.e. hydrology, geomorphology, vegetation, and water quality.

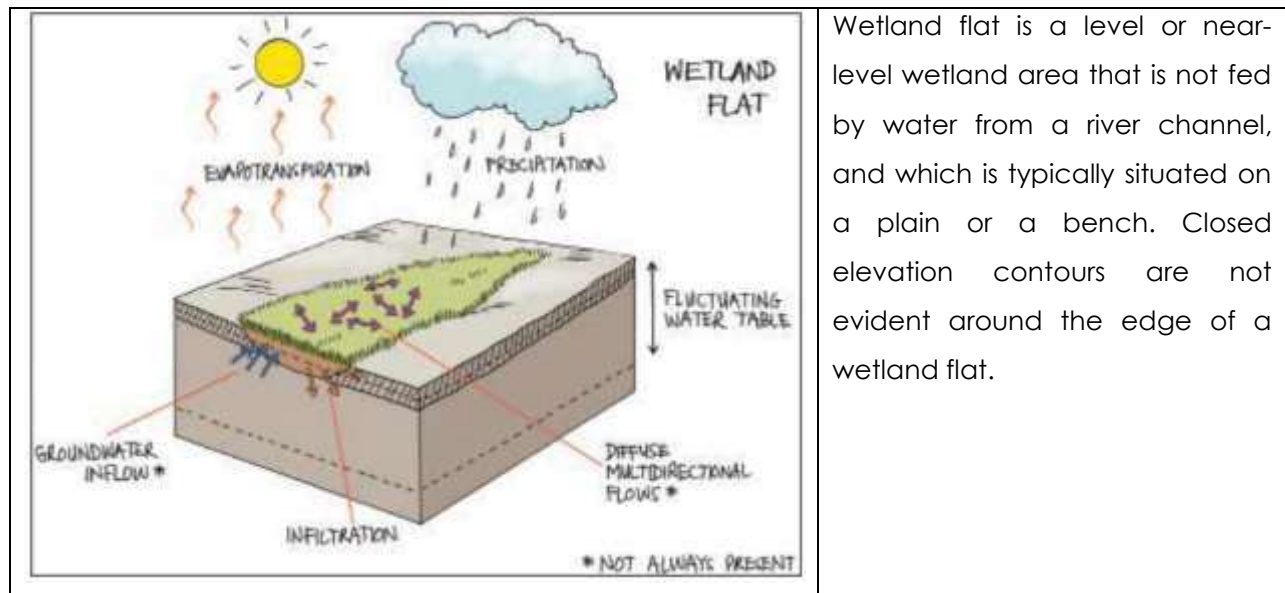
#### 4.4 CLASSIFICATION OF HGM UNIT 01; FLAT WETLAND

According to Kotze et al. (2007), Wetland flat is a level or near-level wetland area that is not fed by water from a river channel, and which is typically situated on a plain or a bench. Closed elevation contours are not evident around the edge of a wetland flat. Wetland flats are characterised by the dominance of vertical water movements associated with precipitation, groundwater inflow, infiltration and evapotranspiration. Horizontal water movements within these wetlands, if present, are multi-directional, due to the lack of any significant change in gradient within the wetland. The Wetland classification of HGM 1 as per the SANBI guideline (Ollis, et al., 2013) has been outlined in Table 11 below. Table 12 below shows the wetland classification according to Brinson, 1993; Kotze, 1999; and Marneweck and Batchelor, 2002.

Table 11: HGM 1 Wetland classification as per SANBI guideline (Ollis, et al., 2013)

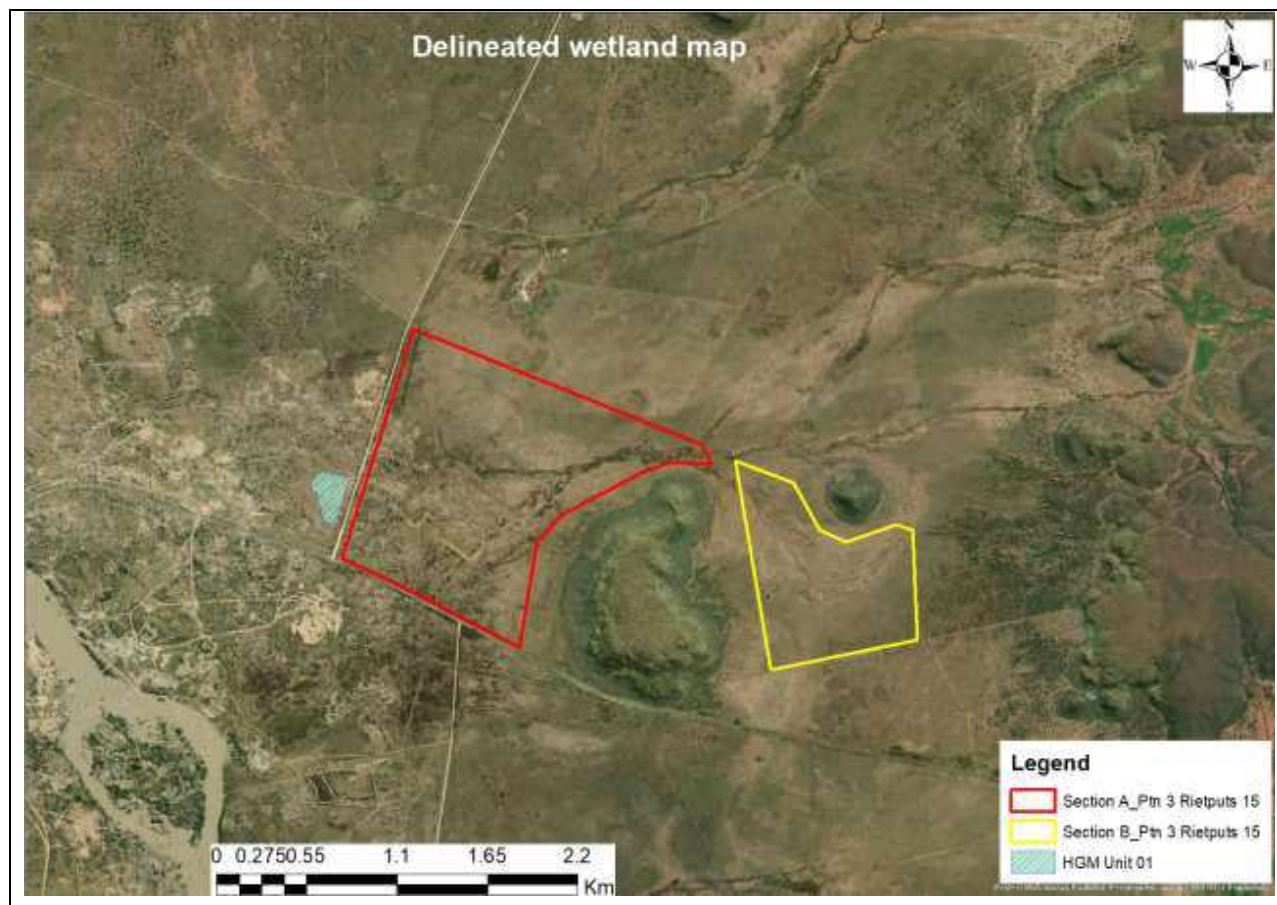
Wetland Name	Level 1	Level 2		Level 3	Level 4		
	System	DWS Ecoregion/s	NFEPA Wet Veg Group/s	Landscap e Unit	4A (HGM)	4B	4C
HGM 1	Inland	Bushveld	Eastern Kalahari Bushveld Group 3	Valley Floor	Wetland Flat	(N/A)	(N/A)

Table 12: HGM unit 1 classification as per Brinson, 1993; Kotze, 1999; and Marneweck and Batchelor, 2002



Wetland flat is a level or near-level wetland area that is not fed by water from a river channel, and which is typically situated on a plain or a bench. Closed elevation contours are not evident around the edge of a wetland flat.





#### 4.4.1 WET-HEALTH ASSESSMENT ON HGM UNIT 1

Table 13 below show the PES summary as calculated using the WET-Health Level 1B version 2 (Macfarlane, et.al., 2020) for the HGM Unit 1.

Table 13: PES summary for HGM unit 1

WET-Health Level 1B assessment: PES Summary				
Wetland name	HGM unit 01: Flat			
Assessment Unit	1			
HGM type	Flat			
Wetland area (Ha)	4.0 Ha			
PES Assessment	<b>Hydrology</b>	<b>Geomorphology</b>	<b>Water Quality</b>	<b>Vegetation</b>
Impact Score	6.8	5.4	5.2	8.6
PES Score (%)	32%	46%	48%	14%
<b>Ecological Category</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>F</b>

Trajectory of change				
Confidence (revised results)	Not rated	Not rated	Not rated	Not rated
<b>Combined Impact Score</b>	6.6			
<b>Combined PES Score (%)</b>	34%			
<b>Combined Ecological Category</b>	<b>E</b>			
<b>Hectare Equivalents</b>	1.4 Ha			

#### 4.5 WETLAND ECOLOGICAL IMPORTANCE AND SENSITIVITY (EIS) OF HGM UNITS

The HGM units have been assessed to have Very Low to Moderate ecologically functioning and this was based on the following reasons:

- There were no presence of red data species;
- No population of unique species were observed on-site or known to be there;
- The wetland is not situated within a protected area or RAMSAR site;
- No vulnerable vegetation was observed or known to be present on that site;
- The wetland is not rare;
- No one uses this wetland for recreational, tourism, or research purposes; and
- The biodiversity of this system is not highly sensitive to flow and habitat modifications and it plays a small role in moderating the quantity and quality of water of major rivers.

Table 14 below outlines the scoring for Ecological Importance and sensitivity and Figure 4-4 the spider diagram showing the Ecosystem Score for the HGM Unit 1.

Table 14: Ecosystem Services Score for the assessed HGM Units

ECOSYSTEM SERVICE		Supply	Demand	Importance Score	Importance
REGULATING AND SUPPORTING SERVICES	Flood attenuation	0.0	0.0	0.0	Very Low
	Stream flow regulation	0.0	0.0	0.0	Very Low
	Sediment trapping	0.5	0.0	0.0	Very Low
	Erosion control	0.6	0.3	0.0	Very Low
	Phosphate assimilation	0.3	0.0	0.0	Very Low
	Nitrate assimilation	0.4	0.0	0.0	Very Low

	Toxicant assimilation	0.5	0.0	0.0	Very Low
	Carbon storage	1.5	2.7	1.3	Moderately Low
	Biodiversity maintenance	0.8	0.0	0.0	Very Low
PROVISIONING SERVICES	Water for human use	0.0	0.0	0.0	Very Low
	Harvestable resources	0.5	0.0	0.0	Very Low
	Food for livestock	1.0	0.3	0.0	Very Low
	Cultivated foods	3.7	0.0	2.2	Moderate
CULTURAL SERVICES	Tourism and Recreation	2.0	0.0	0.5	Very Low
	Education and Research	0.0	0.0	0.0	Very Low
	Cultural and Spiritual	0.0	0.0	0.0	Very Low

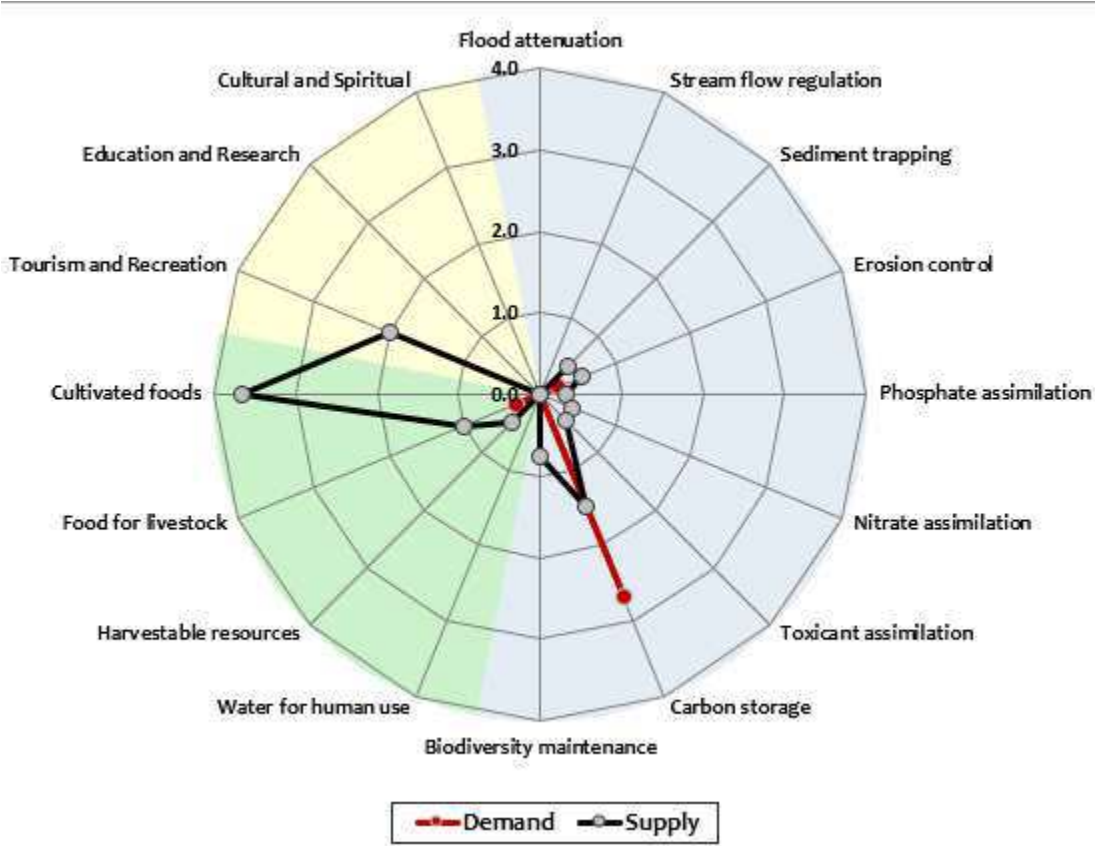


Figure 4-4: Ecological score for the assessed HGM units in a Spider diagram



## 5 BUFFER ZONE

Definitions of buffer zones vary depending on their purpose. In the context of this report, buffer zones have been defined as a strip of land with a use, function, or zoning specifically designed to protect one area of land against impacts from another. The main function of buffer zones is to act as a barrier between activities such as human developments and sensitive aquatic environments thereby protecting them from adverse negative impacts. Aquatic buffer zones are typically defined from the edge of the identified aquatic resource, extending outward, ending at the interface with another land use. Buffers would therefore typically be applied from the delineated edge of a wetland, river, or estuary (Macfarlane and Bredin, 2017). A document titled; "Preliminary Guideline for the Determination of Buffer Zones for Rivers, Wetlands, and Estuaries" by Macfarlane, et.al., (2014), was used to decide the buffer zone for the study area.

For the study area, likely, a buffer of >50 m may adequately fulfill several functions and values such as promoting bank stability and affecting stream microclimate. A larger buffer may, however, be necessary to adequately cater for biotic requirements. A decrease in the buffer width from 100 m to 32 m will have an impact on the buffer's ability to fulfill functions such as flood attenuation, general wildlife habitat, connectivity, habitat for semi-aquatic species, etc. In assessing a range of buffer widths, a width of a 100 m is recommended for the wetlands in the study area. This 100 m width should cater to most buffer functions as mentioned above (Figure 5-1). This buffer zone is largely based on biotic requirements and does not cater for geo-hydrological impacts. Any activities proposed within the wetland or riparian boundaries, including rehabilitation, must be authorized by the DWS in terms of Section 21 (c) & (i) of the National Water Act (Act 36 of 1998).

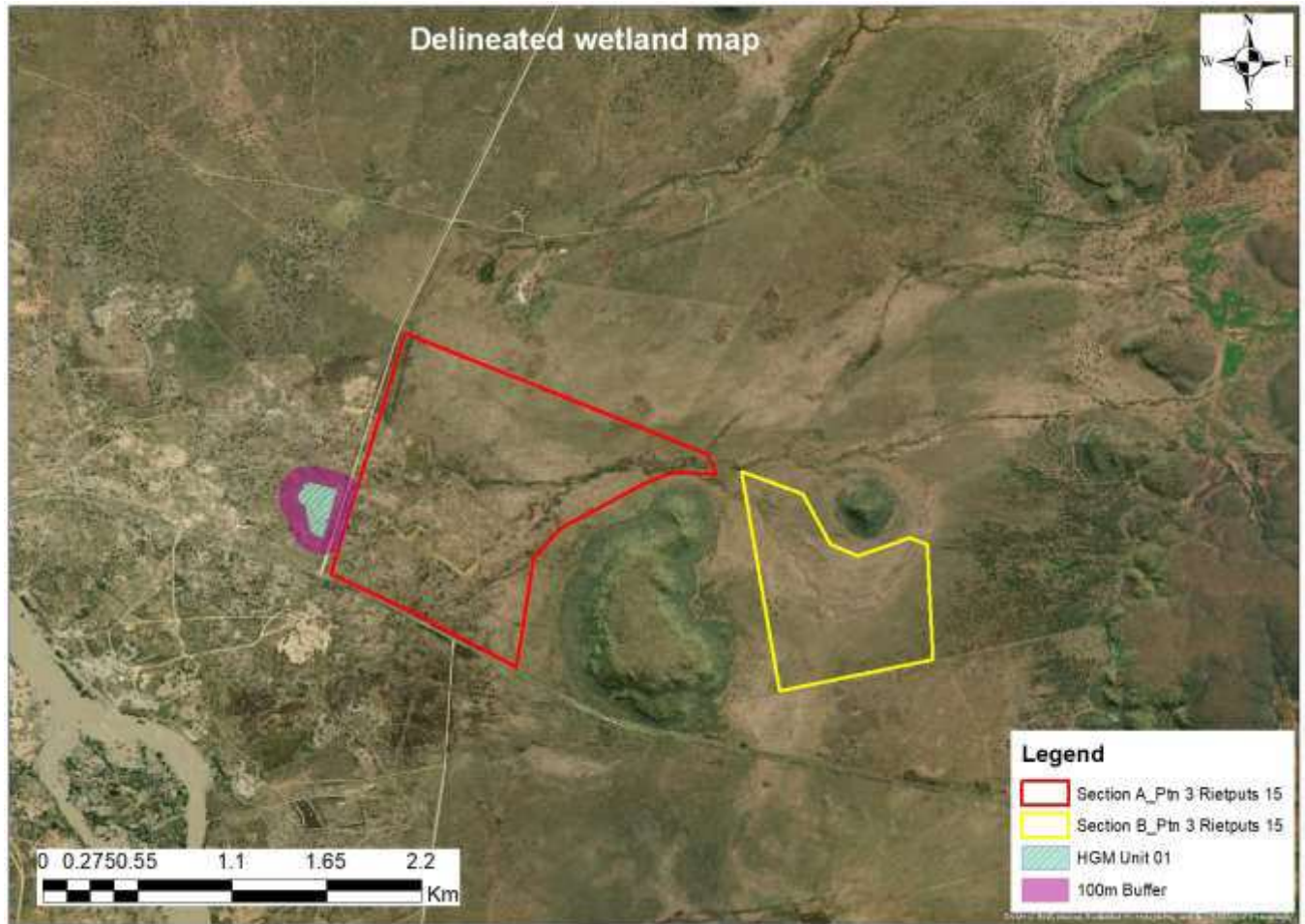


Figure 5-1: Assessed HGM unit 100 m Buffer Zone Map

## 6 IMPACT ASSESSMENT

This section presents the significance of potential impacts on the wetland ecology associated with the proposed development. In addition, it also indicates the required mitigation measures needed to minimise the impacts and presents an assessment of the significance of the impacts, taking into consideration the available mitigation measures and assuming that they are fully implemented.

### 6.1 Impact Analyses

Following the assessment of the wetlands around the proposed construction, a mitigation measures were compiled to serve as guidance throughout the various phases of the proposed development. The points below summarise the factors considered in the development of mitigation measures:

- All construction rubble must be cleared immediately and concrete as well as cement (if used) may not be allowed to enter the wetlands;
- Alien vegetation species that encroached in the wetlands following the proposed construction activities should be eradicated. In addition, ongoing alien vegetation control program must be implemented if any encroachment occurs within the wetlands;
- In case where the flow of water will have to be diverted, sandbags can be used to temporarily divert flow and prevent erosion along the channel banks;
- Edge effects (impacts on areas beyond the proposed construction footprint due to ineffective care and management) that might occur following the proposed construction activities need to be managed and where necessary, affected areas must be rehabilitated. It must be ensured that the banks of the wetlands channel are stable and suitably vegetated with no bare exposed soils remaining, and
- Any areas where active erosion is observed, as well as areas cleared for the construction and implementation of the proposed development must be immediately rehabilitated following the proposed construction activities (re-shaping of slopes, re-vegetation with indigenous species where necessary, etc.) in such a way as to ensure that the hydrology and geomorphological characteristics of the area are reinstated to condition which is as natural as possible.

## **6.2 Impact discussion**

The DWS 2016 risk assessment matrix was utilised to determine the class within which the proposed project development falls, which will then guide authorities in decision making. The assessment was undertaken based on the assumption that mitigation measures are implemented and summarises activities and the level of impacts that are anticipated to occur on the wetland post implementation of mitigation measures.

The main activity that could affect the wetland will be earthworks/excavations undertaken during the construction phase. During site preparation, vegetation clearing will result in patches of bare areas that are prone to erosion and proliferation of alien vegetation species. This might further lead to loss of biodiversity maintenance and assimilation abilities of the wetland. The proposed development activities will lower the PES of the wetlands, however with best practise construction method this impacts significance can be reduced.

The table below summarises the results obtained from the application of the DWS risk assessment matrix and present activities, impacts, significance and risk ratings. Table 15 presents risk

assessment results for the wetland near by the proposed development project.

Table 15: Risk Assessment Matrix for the wetland within the proposed project

Phases	Activity	Aspect	Impact	Risk Rating
<b>Construction</b>	Potential spills and leaks from vehicles delivering construction material	Refuelling of vehicles within the wetlands during delivery of construction material.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Vegetation disturbance.</li> <li>Contamination of soils and water within the wetlands</li> </ul>	<b>L</b>
		Leaks from hazardous material containers.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contamination of soil and water within the wetland</li> </ul>	
		Indiscriminate movement of vehicles within the wetland.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Soil compaction leading to increased runoff</li> <li>Sedimentation of the wetlands</li> <li>Vegetation disturbance</li> </ul>	
	Miscellaneous activities by construction personnel	Illegal trapping or hunting of faunal species.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Possible migration of wetland faunal species as a result of habitat disturbance</li> </ul>	
		Illegal Firewood Collection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Loss of floral species</li> </ul>	
		Creation of informal fires within the wetland.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Vegetation disturbance</li> <li>Temporary loss of faunal and floral habitat</li> </ul>	
	Vegetation clearing and disturbance	Site preparation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Encroachment of alien vegetation species</li> <li>Alteration of the vegetation communities</li> <li>Exposed bare areas prone to erosion</li> </ul>	<b>M</b>
		Creation of access roads where existing roads cannot be used.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Rendering the wetlands unsuitable to maintain biodiversity</li> <li>Loss of wetland assimilation abilities</li> </ul>	
		Construction of the contractor laydown area.		<b>M</b>
	Topsoil stock piling adjacent the wetland	Soil excavations to create trenches within	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alteration of the soil profile</li> <li>Soil disturbance within</li> </ul>	

		which pipes will be installed	the wetland	
		Infilling trenches	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Runoff from stockpiles resulting in sedimentation of the wetlands and</li> <li>smothering of the short vegetation</li> </ul>	
		Rehabilitation of disturbed areas		
	In case of Excavations within the wetland	To create trenches within which foundation will be installed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Disturbance of the interflow and the surface flow</li> <li>Alteration of wetland channel banks H</li> <li>Inundation of exposed trenches during rainfall and as a result of improper flow diversion</li> </ul>	H
	Disposal of waste material such as soil, rocks and concrete within the wetland	Littering and improper disposal of waste	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pollution of wetland soils and water</li> </ul>	L
<b>Operational</b>	Operation of the Proposed development within the wetland area.	Indiscriminate driving of vehicles and vegetation trampling within the wetland during maintenance activities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Vegetation disturbance</li> <li>Soil and surface water contamination as a result of oils and hydrocarbons from maintenance vehicles</li> <li>Encroachment of alien vegetation species</li> <li>Alteration of the vegetation community structure</li> <li>Soil compaction</li> <li>Ongoing soil disturbance.</li> </ul>	L

## 7 RECOMMENDATION AND CONSIDERATION

Recommendations regarding the protection of the wetlands on the proposed construction of the solar plant are provided below. These are based on the sensitivity analyses.

### 7.1 Mitigation measures for the current wetland

#### 7.1.1 General measures

- In case there will be a crossing, a methodology plan(method statement) must be approved by an ECO or a wetland specialist.
- Design features to prevent disturbance of the flow patterns and hydrologic regimes critical to conservation of the wetland.

- No stockpile areas (this excludes vegetation blocks removed from the trench) should be located within wetland boundary, or within the associated buffer zone.
- Rehabilitation of disturbed in-stream and riparian habitat must commence immediately after construction is completed. Any material removed from the in-stream or riparian zone must be returned and bedded in their original position as far as practicably possible.
- During the construction, the construction footprint must be kept outside of river/wetland areas.
- Ensure that construction-related waste and effluent do not affect the wetland areas and associated buffer zones.
- No dumping of waste should take place within the wetland and associated buffer zone. If any spills occur, they should be cleaned up immediately.
- Restrict construction to the drier summer months, if possible, to avoid sedimentation of wetland features in the vicinity of the proposed development.
- Connectivity of the wetland features in the system need to be maintained in order to ensure continuity of the habitats and resources.
- Ensure that all activities impacting on geohydrological resources of the development farm are managed according to the relevant DWS Licensing regulations and groundwater monitoring and management requirements.
- Contractors responsible for the proposed project within the vicinity of the wetland areas must sign a declaration stating that they will adhere to all stipulations of the Environmental Management Plan relating to wetland crossing if there is a need for crossing.

#### 7.1.2 Erosion Control

- Where possible, silt fences / barriers or other relevant measures should be installed along the edge of wetland to prevent soil erosion and ingress of runoff water carrying silt from the catchment of the wetland (i.e. the slopes surrounding the watercourse/wetland) to enter the water body.
- In sandy wetland where the risk of development of erosion and knick points is high, temporary drainage of water through the wetland can be considered to minimise the risk of erosion.
- Shoring up trench walls, close monitoring of development of head cuts during construction (precursors to donga erosion) and the correct rehabilitation of wetland vegetation after the trench has been backfilled must take place.
- The protection of wetland vegetation from damage through the implementation of measures such as the use of running tracks must be implemented to prevent soil erosion.

#### 7.1.3 Removal of Vegetation

- The vegetation within the footprint of the trench must be removed immediately prior to the onset of excavation.



- An ECO should be used to oversee this process.
- The vegetation must be removed in squares by means of 'turfing', to a depth of approximately 50 cm to ensure that the organic layer and topsoil are removed in an intact state, whilst retaining the root zone of the vegetation and herbaceous vegetation in an intact state.
- The vegetation blocks must be placed on the opposite side of the running track / work platform to the trenchline on a strip of geo-textile membrane. The vegetation blocks should be stockpiled in such a way that the vegetation has sufficient water and sunlight to survive. Care should be taken not to overly wet the vegetation, as this would result in minerals leaching out of the soils and the possible erosion and collapse of the blocks.
- As far as practicable immediately after the backfilling of the trench has been completed, the vegetation blocks must be returned and bedded into their original position of removal, and care must be taken to retain the original order / position of the blocks so as to retain the distribution of vegetation characteristic to each hydrological zone within the wetland as far as possible.

#### 7.1.4 Re-vegetation and prevention of compaction

- Blocks of wetland vegetation and underlying soil along the trench through the wetland must be removed from the footprint of the trench and preserved to be returned into the same location once the trench is backfilled.
- Watercourse/ Wetland soils should not be compacted as this could alter the hydrology of the watercourse/ wetland, restrict plant growth, and lead to erosion within the wetland.

#### 7.1.5 Prevention of pollution

- Access of people and vehicles to watercourse/ wetland along the proposed project must be managed under the supervision of an ECO.
- The placing of silt fences / silt barriers adjacent to the wetland to prevent discharge of silt into the watercourse/ wetland, and the inclusion of buffer zones in which no stockpiles, machinery, chemicals or construction camps must be included to prevent pollution into the watercourse/ wetland.
- Wetland must not be viewed in isolation from the surrounding slopes / catchment, as eroded material or other potential pollutants emanating from the surrounding non-wetland areas adjacent to the wetland boundaries may enter the wetland and cause significant pollution of the wetland.

- A copy of the Basic Assessment Report and associated Environmental Management Plan must be present at the work site for easy reference to specialist recommendations in sensitive areas.
- It is recommended that the construction crew be educated about the sensitivities involved in these areas as well as the potential species they could encounter.
- No hazardous materials (such as oil) should be kept within 50 m of the edge of a wetland buffer zone.

## **8 CONCLUSION AND RECOMMENDATIONS**

---

This study has reviewed the available literature and assessed the wetlands within the vicinity of the proposed development site in the form of a site visit undertaken on the 12<sup>th</sup> of November 2022. According to the National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas (NFEPA) data, there are several wetlands identified close to the proposed development sites. Within the study area, 1 HGM unit was assessed as it is the one likely to be impacted directly by the development. A flat wetland was observed. During the site visit a dry valley was observed and through the use of Spatial data (Non-perennial streams) are present on site, therefore, It is the opinion of the Specialist that the area be assessed during rainy season and an Aquatic Specialist be consulted.

In a case where this study is for the Competent Authorities to make a decisive conclusion on an Authorisation or permit, it is the opinion of the Specialist that this development be approved. However, all essential mitigation measures and recommendations presented in this report should be adhered to. This will ensure that the water quality and ecology within the proposed development areas as well as the surrounding zone of influence are protected or adequately rehabilitated. This will minimize the deviations from the present state. Particular attention needs to be paid to the location and extent of sensitive aquatic and terrestrial (riparian) habitat to ensure that development-related activities do not unnecessarily encroach into these zones and that the ongoing functionality of these systems is ensured.

## 9 REFERENCES

---

- » Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (DWAF) (1999). Water resources protection policy Implementation. Resource directed measures for protection of water resources. Vol. 5. River Ecosystems. Version 1.0. Pretoria;
- » Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (DWAF) (2004). A Practical Field Procedure for Identification and Delineation of Wetlands and Riparian Areas. Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, Pretoria;
- » Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (DWAF) (2005). Environmental Monitoring and Auditing Protocol (EM & AG). Integrated Environmental Management (IEM) Sub-series No. 1.7. Second Edition. Pretoria;
- » Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (DWAF) (2007). Manual for the assessment of a Wetland Index of Habitat Integrity for South African floodplain and channelled valley bottom wetland types. Report no. N/0000/00/WEI/0407. Resource Quality Services, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, Pretoria;
- » Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS) (2014). A Desktop Assessment of the Present Ecological State, Ecological Importance and Ecological Sensitivity per Sub Quaternary Reaches for Secondary Catchments in South Africa. Secondary: A2 Compiled by RQIS-RDM: Online available: <https://www.dwa.gov.za/iwqs/rhp/eco/peseismodel.aspx> as retrieved in July 2016;
- » IUCN (2002). IUCN Red List Categories. Prepared by the IUCN Species Survival Commission. Gland, Switzerland;
- » Kleynhans CJ (1999). A procedure for the determination of the ecological reserve for the purposes of the national water balance model for South African River. Institute of Water Quality Studies, Department of Water Affairs & Forestry, Pretoria;
- » Macfarlane DM, Kotze DC, Ellery WN, Walters D, Koopman V, Goodman P and Goge C. (2007). WET-Health: technique for rapidly assessing wetland health. WRC Report No TT 340/08, Water Research Commission, Pretoria;
- » Mucina L and Rutherford MC (2012). The vegetation of South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland, Strelitzia 19. 1:1 000 000 scale sheet maps. South African National Biodiversity Institute, Pretoria;
- » Ollis, D.J., Snaddon, C.D., Job, N.M. and Mbona, N. (2013). Classification System for Wetlands and other Aquatic Ecosystems in South Africa. User Manual: Inland Systems. SANBI Biodiversity Series 22. South African Biodiversity Institute, Pretoria;
- » SANBI (2009). Further Development of a Proposed National Wetland Classification System for South Africa. Primary Project Report. Prepared by the Freshwater Consulting Group (FCG) for the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI).
- » South African National Biodiversity Institute: BGIS: [www.bgis.sanbi.org](http://www.bgis.sanbi.org).

## 10 APPENDIX A: CV's OF THE PROJECT TEAM

### 1) CV FOR MILAMBO FREDDY TSHIALA

**Email:** mftshiala@gmail.com

**Tel/Cell:** 0836691702

**Total Years of Experience:** 16

#### Education:

Qualification	Institution	Completed
Doctor of Philosophy in Environment and Society	University of Pretoria	2014
Master's Degree in Environment and Society at	University of Pretoria	2006
BSC (Honours Degree) in Agronomy	University of Kongo	2000
Occupational health and safety, NQF Level 5	NOSA (Pty) Ltd	2015
Applying SHE principles and Procedures	NOSA (Pty) Ltd	2015
Construction Regulations and Training Course	NOSA (Pty) Ltd	2015
Introduction to OHSACT	NOSA (Pty) Ltd	2014
Wetlands Management: Introduction and Delineation	University of Free State	2013
Horticultural Management Training	University of Pretoria	2006
Learning ArcGis	University of Pretoria	2004

#### Membership of Relevant Professional:

Membership	Professional Organizations
Registration Number 1519/2018	SACPCMP
Registration Number 4000021/18	SACNASP

#### Membership of Professional Associations:

Membership	Professional Associations
Registration Number 5358	IAIAsa Membership

#### Countries of Work Experience:

South Africa and DR Congo
---------------------------

#### Languages:

Language	Speaking	Reading	Writing
English	Excellent	Excellent	Excellent
French	Excellent	Excellent	Excellent

#### WORKS EXPERIENCE

PERIOD	PROJECT NAME	SCOPE	RESPONSIBILITIES
August 2018	Ecological Assessment for	Ecological	Field work

	the proposed development in Borakalalo Nature Reserve, North West	Assessment	Plant and animal identification Report writing
March 2017	Ecological Assessment for the proposed upgrade of the National route Ne section 34 (Piet relief to Ermelo): Link and grade-separation scheme for road P97/2 and road D803 for Kangra mine coal haulage at Panbult, Mpumalanga proposed road expansion, Panbult	Ecological Assessment	Field work Plant and animal identification Report writing
September 2016	Proposed Construction of an 18km long pipeline with an internal diameter of 2100 for the remainder of B16 pipeline starting from Zuikerbosch Pumping Station to Slangfontein with associated cross connections and end connections	Ecological Assessment	Environmental Assessment Practitioner and Public Participation Compile Environmental Impact Assessment Engage with client and authorities Social Impact Assessment
July 2018	Construction for Ekurhuleni township automotive aftermarket hubs in Labore Brakpan	Agricultural Study	Field investigation; Agricultural potential analysis, Soils Analysis, Report writing
September 2016	Agricultural Potential Study for the Proposed Construction of an 18km long pipeline with an internal diameter of 2100 for the remainder of B16 pipeline starting from Zuikerbosch Pumping Station to Slangfontein with associated cross connections and end connections.	Agricultural Study	Field investigation; Agricultural potential analysis, Soils Analysis, Report writing
September	Ecological Assessment For	Flora and	Field work

2016	the Proposed Construction of an 18km long pipeline with an internal diameter of 2100 for the remainder of B16 pipeline starting from Zuikerbosch Pumping Station to Slangfontein with associated cross connections and end connections.	Fauna Assessment	Plant and animal identification Report writing
March 2015	Illiondale Wetland Rehabilitation Project in Ekurhuleni Municipality. (Quotation No.: KEQ.ERM. 03.39).	Flora and Fauna Assessment	Field work Plant and animal identification Report writing
July 2014	The Soutpansberg Drive Wetland Rehabilitation Project in Ekurhuleni Municipality.	Flora and Fauna Assessment	Field work Plant and animal identification Report writing
July 2013	Proposed Construction and Establishment of Beef Feedlot and Associated Infrastructures on Portion 2, 8, 9, 11 and 15 of the Kleinwater Farm Project, Mpumalanga Province.	Flora and Fauna Assessment	Field work Plant and animal identification Report writing
September 2013	Proposed Expansion and Construction of Poultry Houses for Broiler Production for Farm Puntlyf Bronkhorspruit Project, Gauteng Province.	Flora and Fauna Assessment	Field work Plant and animal identification Report writing
September 2017	Proposed N2 Panbult Interchange upgrade for South African National Roads Agency Limited (SANRAL) Project at Panbult Siding in Mpumalanga Province.	Wetland Assessment and Delineation Report	Site visit; Delineation and plant identification; Report writing Project manager
May 2013	Proposed township situated on portion 27 and 28 of the farm	Wetland Assessment and Delineation	Site visit; Delineation and plant identification; Report writing Project manager



	Hartherley 331-JR at Mamelodi, City of Tshwane Municipality.	Report	
March 2015	Investigation on the Nature and Extent of Invasive Alien Plant Infestations on Rand Water Sites: Rietvlei Site.	Invasive Alien Plant Specialist	Field investigation IAPs identification Scientific Report Writing
March 2015	Investigation on the Nature and Extent of Invasive Alien Plant Infestations on Rand Water Sites: Zwartkopjes Site (Mapleton, Palmiet and Eikenhof).	Invasive Alien Plant Specialist	Field investigation IAPs identification Scientific Report Writing

## REFERENCES

Name	Company Name	Position	Contact No	Email Address
Joshua Olokun	Environet Engineering	Director	073 406 8051	<a href="mailto:molokun@gmail.com">molokun@gmail.com</a>
Thokozani Masilela	Rand Water	Environmental Assessor	011 724 9369	<a href="mailto:tmasilel@randwater.co.za">tmasilel@randwater.co.za</a>
Palesa Mathibeli	Lyma Consulting	Director	0824486243	Palesa_mathibeli@yahoo.com

## 2) CV OF DIVHANI MULAUDZI

**Proposed Position:** Environmental Manager

**Name of Firm:** Plantago Lanceolata Pty Ltd

**Name of Staff:** Divhani Mulaudzi

**Nationality:** South African

**Total Years of Experience:** 6

**SACNASP Reg:** 100122/13

### Education:

Qualification	Institution	Date obtained
B Sc BDC	University of Venda	22-05-2010
BscHons Botany	University of Limpopo	15-June 2011

Environmental Law Certificate	Eskom Academy	16 January 2012
Cert. Rehabilitation Planning and Management	Lapalala Wilderness School	08 August 2008
Certificate in Risk Assessment and management	DEKRA	January 2015
Certificate in Accident and incident investigation	DEKRA	January 2015

**Membership of Professional Associations:**

<b>Membership</b>	<b>Professional Associations</b>
Professional 100122/13	SACNASP

**Other Training:** Certificate in vegetation survey; Lapalala Wilderness School and Environmental Law Eskom

**Countries of Work Experience & Key Qualifications:** South Africa

**Languages:**

Language	Speaking	Reading	Writing
English	Well	Well	Well
Afrikaans	Poor	Poor	Poor
Tshivenda	Excellent	Excellent	Excellent

**Employment Record:**

From: 02 April 2010 To: 28 February 2014  
Employer: Shumani SHE Specialists, Polokwane Head Office  
Positions held: Environmental manager on development projects

From: 03 March 2014 To: Date  
Employer: Plantago Lanceolata Pty Ltd  
Positions held: Director Ecology Resource Management and Environmental

- 2016** Environmental Management Plans for 5 proposed business hives Ekurhuleni Region Gauteng province (Coordinator environmental)
- 2015** Water Use Licensing for Smit mine Ermelo Mpumalanga province (EAP/project manager)
- 2015** Rehabilitation plan Paulshof powerline Paulshof in Gauteng (Rehab specialists)
- 2015** Rehabilitation plan Ivory park powerline Ivory park in Gauteng (Rehab specialists)
- 2015** EIA Retail, shopping complex and skills development centre in Limpopo Mohodi Ga Manthata (EAP and Project manager)
- 2015** Rehabilitation plan Klippoortjie pump station, Ekurhuleni Municipality Germiston (Rehab specialists)
- 2015** IWWMP and Section 27 motivations development for Smit mine in Ermelo (Project coordinator)
- 2015** Aquatic study Smit mine in Ermelo (Ecologist)

- 2015** Wetland study Paulshof powerline in Gauteng (Ecologist)
- 2015** Aquatic study Ivory Park 11kv powerline in Ivory park (Ecologist)
- 2014** Biodiversity and Impact Assessment for a mining project Piet Retief (Environmental Manager)
- 2012** Ecological Impact Assessment De Hoop Dam Groblersdal (Ecologist)
- 2013** Environmental Monitoring and Legal Compliance Thohoyandou-Sibasa (ECO)
- 2012** Environmental Baseline Assessment and Report for solar development project/Phalaborwa (EAP)
- 2015** Environmental Management Plan for a license testing ground North West (EAP)
- 2014** Environmental Management Plan for a Mankweng sports facility Mankweng, Limpopo Province (EAP)
- 2011-2014** Various EIA and EMP for Eskom 132kv powerlines North West, Limpopo, Gauteng, and Mpumalanga Province (EAP)
- 2013** Water Use License for a greater Tubatse Municipality Burgersfort, Mpumalanga (EAP)
- 2011-2015** Various Environmental Management Plans for roads Limpopo and Mpumalanga province (EAP)
- 2011-2015** Various Environmental Management Plan and EIA for town developments Limpopo, North West and Mpumalanga Province (Environmental Assessment Practitioner)
- 2011** Mining permit for various borrow pits Limpopo, North West, Mpumalanga Province (Environmental Assessment Practitioner)
- 2014** Mining permits and prospecting Rights for mines in Limpopo Province (Environmental Assessment Practitioner)
- 2014** EIA for Town Establishments, Oil, petrol, Diesel and Petrol depot Matoks, Makgato Limpopo Province (Environmental Assessment Practitioner)
- 2012-2013** Environmental Management Plan for water Reticulation project Mankweng, Limpopo Province (Environmental Assessment Practitioner)
- 2015** Water Use License and Water Registrations for De Hoop Dam Project Mpumalanga/Limpopo Province (Environmental Assessment Practitioner)

**References:**

**Name: Mr Given Maedza**

Company: Beyond 2010

Tel: 084 5252982

Email : [given@beyond2010.co.za](mailto:given@beyond2010.co.za)

**Name: Mr Mahosi Martin**

Company: Rendeals 4 Consulting Engineers and project managers

Tel: 011 394 4358

**Name: Ms Kuaho Palesa**

Company: Eskom Mpumalanga Unit

Tel: 013 693 3146

Email : [kuahop@eskom.co.za](mailto:kuahop@eskom.co.za)

**3) Cv of Tenele Matsebula**

Name: Ms. Tenele Matsebula Pr.Sc.Nat.  
Years of Experience: 10 Years  
Profession: Hydrologist  
Registration: SACNASP: Water Resources Scientist  
Driver's license: Code B  
Identity Document Permanent Resident PRP 190988/ Passport Number 40415095  
Date of Birth: 29 March 1983  
Email address: teneletm@gmail.com  
Mobile Number: +2771 8798 555

Address: 6 Cumberland Avenue, Vandia Grove; Randburg

Miss Tenele Matsebula is a hydrologist with experience gathered from a number of projects in the Southern African region. She has experience in hydrological modelling, systems analysis of water resources as well as the application of Geographical Information Systems (GIS). Miss Matsebula has also been involved in environmental engineering studies where she focused on floodline modelling as well as mine water flood risk assessment studies. Her involvement in projects often encompassed the full process from proposal writing to project execution and report writing. Miss Matsebula also has experience in business management. Her dream is to get involved in projects where science brings social benefits to people while maintaining a sustainable environment.

## EDUCATION

2008-2007: MSc. Integrated Water Resources Management at University of Zimbabwe (Course work) University of KwaZulu-natal (thesis)  
2006-2003: BSc. Hydrology and Geography at University of KwaZulu-Natal

## EXPERIENCE

May 2015 to Date: **Hydrologist at** TGS Environmental and Engineering Consultants

- Hydrological Modelling and water resources studies
- Project Management
- Business Development

May 2014-October 2014: **Hydrologist Intermediate** level at GOLDER ASSOCIATES AFRICA

- Proposal Writing
- Mine water management studies
- Hydrological Impact Assessment studies for
- water use license applications & compliance
- Floodline Assessments
- Water Balance Assessments

April 2013-April 2014: **Business Development** and Sales at DHI

- Responsible for water resources modelling software sales and support and reporting
- directly on software activities to head office in Denmark
- Key account management and providing technical support to clients
- Proposal writing and business development for project work

2008-2012: **Hydrologist** at DHI

- Assessment studies focusing on modelling soil/water and rivers using modelling tools

- including ACRU, HECRAS, MIKE BASIN, MIKE 11, MIKE SHE and MIKE FLOOD
- Managing own projects and dealing with clients directly including budgeting
- Worked on large transboundary projects between South Africa, Swaziland and Mozambique where I was exposed to policy work, dam operations and management as well as flood forecasting
- Systems analysis projects commissioned by DWAS

2006: **Research Assistant** at University of Kwazulu Natal

- Extensive exposure to field work. Working with hydrological instruments; GIS and database management
- Coordinating project with local community

#### **OTHER TRAINING**

- System analysis (Water resources)
- Hydrological, Flood and Hydraulic modelling tools including Hec-RAS, Pitman, MIKE 11, MIKE SHE and ACRU
- Knowledge of ArcGIS
- Project Management Training
- IWRM Training which included transboundary water management, conflict resolution
- Knowledge of the South African National Water Act and the SADC Water Policy

#### **LANGUAGES**

- Fluent in Siswati
- Fluent in English
- Fluent in IsiZulu
- Basic in French

#### **SKILLS**

- Relational and good communication skills
- Strategic thinking
- Ability to work under pressure

#### **REFERENCES**

Names: Jason Hallows

Company: DHI

Position: Director

Tel; 011 704 7877

Email: jaha@dhigroup.com

## Appendix E: Public Participation



## Appendix E1 – Newspaper advert

602 GENERAL DISPLAY 602 GENERAL DISPLAY 602 GENERAL DISPLAY 602 GENERAL DISPLAY 602 GENERAL DISPLAY 602 GENERAL DISPLAY 602 GENERAL DISPLAY 602 GENERAL DISPLAY

### ELECTORAL COMMISSION

The Electoral Commission is inviting applications from suitably, qualified applicants to the following vacant position in its administration.

**REGIONAL ASSISTANT MANAGER**  
**NORTHERN CAPE: DC9 FRANCES BAARD DISTRICT [SOL PLAATJE - KIMBERLEY NC091]**  
 [R671,784 per annum]

Applications are invited from suitably qualified and experienced applicants to the above vacant post in the administration of the Electoral Commission, a state institution established in terms of Chapter 9 of the Constitution. It is the Electoral Commission's intention to promote equity through meeting its numerical targets as contained in its approved Employment Equity Plan. Preference will be given to male applicants and disabled persons.

To view the comprehensive advertisement, application requirements and response details, please visit our website: [www.elections.org.za](http://www.elections.org.za)



**A leading Market Research Company seeks to employ the services of**

### FIELD RESEARCHERS

**in KIMBERLEY to work on a project-to-project basis.**

**Applicants need to possess interviewing skills, numeracy at Matric or equivalent level, computer literacy, and at least 5 Matric passes.**

**All applicants must be fluent in at least two languages (including English).**

**CVs to [funeka@plus94.co.za](mailto:funeka@plus94.co.za)**

### SECRETARY/RECEPTIONIST REQUIRED

A competent person with the following skills is required to start at short notice; fast typing, record management, punctuality and good communications skills. English is the primary language of record used but knowledge of other local languages is an advantage.

**SALARY NEGOTIABLE**

Interested persons may send their CVs to [lulama.lobi@yahoo.com](mailto:lulama.lobi@yahoo.com)

**ON OR BEFORE 31 JANUARY 2023**

# DFA

**For all your Classifieds Adverts namely:**

Anniversaries, death notices, funeral notices, property rentals and sales.  
 Legals, Vacancies, Tenders etc

**Please give us a call on (053) 832 6261**

to assist you or E-mail us on [elzeri.hough@acm.co.za](mailto:elzeri.hough@acm.co.za)  
[sally.howes@acm.co.za](mailto:sally.howes@acm.co.za)

Please note the booking deadline for a Friday is Wednesday at 10.30 prior to publication

PLACING A CLASSIFIED AD HAS NEVER BEEN EASIER!  
**Please call 053 832 6261**



**Bogged down in paperwork?**

**Recruit new staff**  
 To advertise a position call

## workplace

053 832 6261

<p><b>700 LEGALS</b></p> <p><b>704 CREDITORS/DEBTORS</b></p> <p>In die boedel van wyle ALETTA KATHERINA BRAND, identiteitsnommer 460414 0039 087, van Channer Close 23, Kimberley, Noord-Kaap, wie oorlede is op 28 November 2022.</p> <p><b>BOEDELNR: 003888/2022</b></p> <p>Krediteure en debiteure in bogemelde Boedel word hiermee versoek om hul rekekeninge in te dien en hul rekeninge te betaal by ondergetekende binne 30 dae gereken vanaf 27 Januarie 2023.</p> <p>VAN ZYL PROKUREURS          Prokureur vir die Eksekuteur          Vergelegen 1 Kimberley 8301</p>	<p><b>704 CREDITORS/DEBTORS</b></p> <p>In the estate late HENRY ERNEST RICHARDS          Identity number 460907 5055 081 a widow of 03 Stanley Street Beaconsfield Kimberley 8301.</p> <p><b>ESTATE NUMBER 001941/2022.</b></p> <p>DEBIT AND CREDITORS having claims against the above-mentioned estate must lodge it with the executor concerned within 30 days from date of publication hereof.</p> <p>Althea Le Roux          Attorneys          09 Neale Street Beaconsfield Kimberley          073 647 3921          Email: <a href="mailto:althea.mongala@gmail.com">althea.mongala@gmail.com</a></p>
---	---

workplace

Expanding? Need Staff?

053 832 6261

### NOTICE OF SCOPING REPORT FOR THE PROPOSED RIVER VIEW AT THE REMAINING EXTENT OF PORTION 3 OF THE FARM RIETPUTS 15, KIMBERLY RD, WITHIN MAGARENG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, NORTHERN CAPE PROVINCE. ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION AND WATER USE LICENCE APPLICATION. PUBLIC REVIEW NOTICE DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENT AND NATURE CONSERVATION REF: NC/EIA/02/FB/MAG/WAR1/2023

Notice is hereby given in terms of Chapter 6, Regulation 41 of the National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998 (as amended), EIA Regulations 2014, as amended of an application for intent to conduct a Scoping/EIA Report pursuant the environmental authorization for the proposed activity. Additionally, a Water Use Licence application for Section 21 (a) (c) and (i), water uses in terms of the National Water Act 36 of 1998.

**Project Description:** Tholoana Environmental Consulting has been appointed by Ikomkhulu Solar (Pty) Ltd to act as Independent Environmental practitioners for the proposed River View Solar Plant, at the remaining extent portion 3 of Farm Rietputs 15, Kimberly RD. The preferred site for the development is approximately 300 hectares, however the footprint of the solar farm is approximately 182 hectares. The proposed project entails construction of a Solar Photovoltaic System plant, wherein the energy received from the sun is transferred to DC energy and converted to AC energy, then transferred to the national grid.

**Location:** The site for the proposed project activities is at the remaining extent portion 3 of Farm Rietputs 15, Kimberly RD, GPS coordinates as follows: 28°20'15.22"S, 24°44'31.29"E.

- Legislation:** The proposed project triggers the following legal requirements:
- National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998, as amended, Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations 2014, as amended:
    - o Listing Notice 2 - GN R.325 - Activity 1 : "The development of facilities or infrastructure for the generation of electricity from a renewable resource where the electricity output is 20 megawatts or more" Listing Notice 2 – GN R.325; Activity 15 : "The clearance of an area of 20 hectares or more of indigenous vegetation, excluding where such clearance of indigenous vegetation is required for— the undertaking of a linear activity; or maintenance purposes undertaken in accordance with a maintenance management plan"
  - National Water Act 36 of 1998, water uses
    - o Section 21 (a) – "Taking Water from a water resource", Section 21 (c) – "impeding or diverting the flow of water in a watercourse", Section 21 (i) - "altering the bed, banks, course or characteristics of a watercourse"

**PUBLIC PARTICIPATION PROCESS:**

Interested and Affected Parties (I&AP's) are invited to comment on the Draft Scoping Report and Draft Environmental Management Report for the proposed River View Solar Plant. The report can be accessed on request from [vusi@tholoanaconsulting.co.za](mailto:vusi@tholoanaconsulting.co.za), alternatively at the Kimberley Library, Magareng Local Municipality Library and the ward councilor for ward 5 under Magareng Local Municipality. Comments for the report can be sent to Tholoana Environmental Consulting from the publication of this advert or before **Monday 27 February 2023**, email or post to the below mentioned Environmental Assessment Practitioners (EAP). For other alternatives kindly contact the EAP, details provided below:

Further detail/information on the proposed River View Solar Plant project can be obtained from the Environmental Assessment Practitioners (EAP) indicated below.

**Tholoana Environmental Consulting:** P. O Box 1549, HONEYDEW, 2040 - PHONE: 011 704 5071; Cell - 078 6390 199, CONTACT PERSON: Mr. Vusmuzi Hlatshwayo, E-MAIL: [vusi@tholoanaconsulting.co.za](mailto:vusi@tholoanaconsulting.co.za)

Are you bored with your career & keen to change direction?

# workplace

Offers a fine selection of employment opportunities

Call 053 832 6261



## Appendix F: Impact Assessment

## Appendix G: Environmental Management Programme (EMPr)

**DRAFT ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME REPORT**  
**FOR**  
**THE PROPOSED RIVER VIEW SOLAR PLANT**

---

Prepared for

**IKOMKHULU SOLAR (PTY) LTD**

Prepared by



**Tholoana Environmental Consulting CC**

Physical Address: Unit 9, Building 1b.

Northgate Office Park

Aureole Ave, Northworld

Johannesburg

2162

Postal Address: PO Box 1549, HONEYDEW, 2040

Contact: Mr Vusmuzi Hlatshwayo: Tel: +27 11 704 5071; Fax: +27 11 704 5130

Email: [vusi@tholoanaconsulting.co.za](mailto:vusi@tholoanaconsulting.co.za) ; URL: [www.tholoanaconsulting.co.za](http://www.tholoanaconsulting.co.za)

**JANUARY 2023**

## DOCUMENT CONTROL

<b>Document Version</b>	: 1
<b>Document title</b>	: Draft EMPr: The Proposed Ikomkhulu Solar Plant
<b>Author</b>	: <b>Name and Surname</b> - Mr Vusmuzi Hlatshwayo – National Diploma – Environmental Sciences, Tshwane University of Technology.  : <b>Professional registration</b> - Environmental Assessment Practitioners Association of South Africa (EAPASA) Registration No: 2020/350  : <b>Contact</b> - 011 704 5071; Cell No : 078 6390 199;  : <b>E-mail</b> - <a href="mailto:vusi@tholoanaconsulting.co.za">vusi@tholoanaconsulting.co.za</a>
<b>Reviewer</b>	: <b>Name and Surname</b> - Ms Snowy Makhudu - (National Higher Diploma in Meteorology, Tshwane University of Technology (1991), National Diploma in Meteorology, Tshwane University of Technology (1989), Certificate in Local Government and Development Management, Technikon SA (1997).  : <b>Professional registration</b> - Environmental Assessment Practitioners Association of South Africa (EAPASA) Registration No: 2016/008  : <b>Contact</b> - 011 704 5071; Cell No : 083 640 8070;  : <b>E-mail</b> - <a href="mailto:snowy@tholoanaconsulting.co.za">snowy@tholoanaconsulting.co.za</a>



## EXPERTISE OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT PRACTITIONER

Tholoana Environmental Consulting CC (TEC) brings together a team of dedicated professional scientists, environmental managers and practitioners who have many years of combined experience in environmental services, including services not limited alternative energy sources i.e. Msibi Bio-Plant (tyre pyrolysis) and Environmental Management Plans. TEC provides comprehensive Integrated Environmental Management (IEM) services to a broad range of clients throughout the African continent and other international countries.

TEC has no interest in the aforementioned project or any component that may emerge from the processes of the proposed project.

Details of the Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP) who compiled the Draft Environmental Management Programme Report (EMPr) for the proposed Ikomkhulu Solar Plant are outlined below:

- **Mr Vusmuzi Hlatshwayo:** Mr Vusmuzi Hlatshwayo has a National Diploma in Environmental Sciences obtained from Tshwane University of Technology (TUT) in Pretoria. He is also a full member of the International Association for Impact Assessment (South Africa) (IAIASa) and the Environmental Assessment Practitioners Association of South Africa (EAPASA) and is an EAP within Tholoana Environmental Consulting. Mr Vusmuzi Hlatshwayo was involved in the following projects: Evaton Estate (Housing Development), Krugersdorp Station Upgrade and Intermodal Facilities, Madiba Heights (mixed-use development), Msibi Bio-Plant (waste management application, and a Basic Environmental Assessment), Maluti-A-Phofung Landfill Site (waste management license application) and Refilwe Hostel Development (EMP), Barry Marais Storm Water and Road Upgrade and Ridge Road Storm Water and Road Upgrade.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

DOCUMENT CONTROL .....	I
EXPERTISE OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT PRACTITIONER .....	II
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS .....	IV
DEFINITIONS.....	VI
1. INTRODUCTION .....	5
2. PURPOSE OF EMPr.....	6
2.1. OBJECTIVES OF THE DRAFT EMP.....	11
2.1.1. <i>The Planning and Design Phase</i> .....	11
2.1.2. <i>The Construction Phase</i> .....	12
2.1.3. <i>Post Construction Phase</i> .....	13
2.1.4. <i>The Operational Phase</i> .....	13
2.2. FINANCIAL PROVISION OR BUDGET FOR IMPLEMENTATION OF THE DRAFT EMP .....	13
2.3. GENERAL ENVIRONMENTAL GUIDELINES .....	13
3. ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES .....	15
4. KEY ENVIRONMENTAL ISSUES .....	17
5. ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME.....	18
5. CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS .....	39

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 1: Legislation, policies or guidelines are applicable to the proposed project: .....	7
Table 2: Incident Identification .....	12
Table 3: Impact mitigation measures Planning, Design and Pre-Construction .....	19
Table 4: Impact mitigation measures Construction Phase .....	21
Table 5: Impact mitigation measures Post Construction Phase .....	35
Table 6: Impact mitigation measures Operational Phase .....	36

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1: River View solar plant .....	5
Figure 2: Waste management hierarchy .....	9

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

Abbreviation	Expansion
AIA	Archaeological Impact Assessment
BAR	Basic Assessment Report
CLO	Community Liaison Officer
C-PLAN	Conservation Plan
CBA	Critical Biodiversity Area
DENC	Department of Environment and Nature Conservation
DFFE	Department of Forestry, Fisheries and Environment
DWS	Department of Water Sanitation
EAP	Environmental Assessment Practitioner
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
ESA	Ecological Support Areas
EMF	Environmental Management Framework
EMPr	Environmental Management Programme as per the EIA Regulations, 2014
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
I&AP	Interested and Affected Party
NFEPA	National Freshwater Priority Area
NCPHA	Northern Cape Provincial Heritage Agency
GHG	Greenhouse Gas
Ha	Hectare
HGM	Hydro-geomorphic
kWh	kilowatt hours

<b>Abbreviation</b>	<b>Expansion</b>
<b>NWA</b>	<b>National Water Act 36 of 1998</b>
<b>PIA</b>	<b>Palaeontological Impact Assessment</b>
<b>PPP</b>	<b>Public Participation Process</b>
<b>PV</b>	<b>Photovoltaic</b>
<b>Rd</b>	<b>Road</b>
<b>SAHRA</b>	<b>South African Heritage Agency</b>
<b>SUDS</b>	<b>Sustainable Urban Drainage Systems</b>
<b>TEC</b>	<b>Tholoana Environmental Consulting CC</b>

## DEFINITIONS

Term	Explanation
<b>Chemical Waste</b>	means solid, liquid and gaseous products that are to be discarded and that contain dangerous or polluting chemicals that pose a threat to humans, animals or the environment, when improperly disposed of
<b>Collection</b>	means accumulation of wastes from intermediate storage sites for movement to a primary waste holding area or from several primary waste holding areas to the treatment or final disposal site or both.
<b>Contractor</b>	The principal person or company undertaking the construction of the development. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Appointed by the developer, including subcontractors appointed by the contractor.</li> </ul>
<b>Disposal</b>	means the burial, deposit, discharge, abandoning, dumping, placing or release of any waste into, or onto land.
<b>Engineer</b>	A person representing the Developer on site and who is responsible for the technical and contractual implementation of the works to be undertaken. This is usually the engineer, but may be any other person, such as an architect or project manager, authorized by the Developer to fulfil this role.
<b>Environment</b>	The surroundings within which humans exist and that are made up of the land, water and atmosphere of the earth: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ micro-organisms, plant and animal life;</li> <li>➤ any part or combination of the above and the inter-relationships among and between them; and</li> <li>➤ the physical, chemical, aesthetic and cultural properties and conditions of the foregoing that influence human health and well-being.</li> </ul>
<b>Environmental Control Officer</b>	The individual or company appointed by the Developer to ensure the implementation of the EMP and suitable environmental management practices on site for the duration of the construction phase of the Project.
<b>General Waste</b>	means waste that does not pose an immediate hazard or threat to health or

Term	Explanation
	to the environment, and includes - domestic waste; building and demolition waste; business waste; and inert waste.
<b>Ground Water</b>	subsurface water that fills voids between highly permeable ground strata comprised of sand, gravel, broken rocks, porous rocks, etc. and move under the influence of gravitation.
<b>Hazardous Waste</b>	means any waste that contains organic or inorganic elements or compounds that may, owing to the inherent physical, chemical or toxicological characteristics of that waste, have a detrimental impact on health and the environment.
<b>Heritage Resources</b>	means any place or object of cultural significance, including all human-made phenomena and intangible products that are the result of the human mind. Natural, technological or industrial features may also be part of heritage resources, as places that have made an outstanding contribution to the cultures, traditions and lifestyles of the people or groups of people of South Africa.
<b>Impact</b>	Refers to a description of the potential effect or consequence of an aspect of the development on a specified component of the biophysical, social or economic environment within a defined time and space.
<b>Incident</b>	An undesired event which may result in a significant environmental impact but can be managed through an internal response.
<b>Mitigation</b>	Measures designed to avoid, reduce or remedy adverse impacts.
<b>Pollution</b>	any change in the environment caused by – substances; radioactive or other waves; or noise, odours, dust or heat emitted from any activity, including the storage or treatment of waste or substances, construction and the provision of services, whether engaged in by any person or an organ of state, where that change has an adverse effect on human health or well-being or on the composition, resilience and productivity of natural or managed ecosystems, or on materials useful to people, or will have such an effect in the future.



Term	Explanation
<b>Recycle</b>	A process where waste is reclaimed for further use, this involves the separation of waste from a waste stream for further use and the processing of that separated material as a product or raw material.
<b>Rehabilitation</b>	Rehabilitation is defined as the return of a disturbed area to a state which approximates the state (wherever possible) which it was before disruption.
<b>Safety, Health and Environmental Officer</b>	The SHE officer is a Contractor representative, responsible for the safety, health and environmental aspects on the construction site. The SHE officer will be responsible for the day-to-day monitoring of the EMP and Health and Safety Plan as per the OHSA.
<b>Segregation</b>	means systematic separation of health care waste into designated categories.
<b>Waste</b>	<p>means any substance, whether or not that substance can be reduced, re-used, recycled and recovered –</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ that is surplus, unwanted, rejected, discarded, abandoned or disposed of;</li> <li>➤ which the generator has no further use of for the purposes of production;</li> <li>➤ that must be treated or disposed of; or</li> <li>➤ that is identified as a waste by the relevant Minister by notice in the Gazette, and includes waste generated by the mining, medical or other sector, but— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ a by-product is not considered waste; and</li> <li>▪ any portion of waste, once re-used, recycled and recovered, ceases to be waste</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Waste Disposal Facility</b>	means any site or premise used for the accumulation of waste with the purpose of disposing of that waste at that site or on that premises.
<b>Water Pollution</b>	As defined in the National Water Act, 36 of 1998, water pollution refers to the direct or indirect alteration of the physical, chemical or biological properties of a water resource so as to make it – less fit for any beneficial

Term	Explanation
	<p>purpose for which it may reasonably be expected to be used; or harmful or potentially harmful</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. to the welfare, health or safety of human beings;</li><li>b. to any aquatic or non-aquatic organisms;</li><li>c. to the resource quality; or</li><li>d. to property.</li></ul>

Draft

## IMPLEMENTATION OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME (EMP)- UDERTAKING BY THE PROJECT MANAGER-

The Project Manager \_\_\_\_\_ is responsible for the following issues during the Construction Phase of the Proposed River View Solar Plant (herein referred to as the proposed project):

- Ensuring that the contractor is aware of all the specifications, legal constraints pertaining to the project specifically with regard to environmental management.
- Any damage to property or the environment must immediately be reported to project manager and the landowners. The damage must be repaired immediately to the owner's written satisfaction.
- No wandering around adjacent properties. Access is limited to the site only.
- The public and all property are to be treated with respect at all times.
- To ensure that all stipulations within the EMP are communicated and adhered to by the contractor.
- To ensure that all clean up and rehabilitation or any remedial actions that are required are completed prior to the issuing of a project completion certificate.

### UNDERTAKING:

I, \_\_\_\_\_, the undersigned and duly authorized thereto by Ikomkhulu Solar (Pty) Ltd hereby undertake to give effect to all aspects as contained in the attached EMP and accept all responsibility therefore.

Signed at \_\_\_\_\_ on this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ 2023.

\_\_\_\_\_  
SIGNATURE

Witnesses: \_\_\_\_\_;

## IMPLEMENTATION OF THE EMP-UNDERTAKING -BY THE CONTRACTOR-

The appointed contractor \_\_\_\_\_ for the Construction of the Proposed River View Solar Plant is responsible for the following:

- Ensure that the affected landowners are informed about your (the contractors) presence on their property.
- Immediately report any damage to property or the environment to the project manager and the landowner. The damage must be repaired immediately to the owner's written satisfaction.
- No wandering around adjacent properties. Access is limited to the site only.
- The public and all property are to be treated with respect at all times.
- Ensure that all stipulations within the attached EMP are communicated to and adhered to by the employees.
- Monitor the EMP throughout the project by means of site visits and meetings. This should be documented as part of the site meetings minutes.
- Ensure that all clean up and rehabilitation or any remedial actions that are required are completed prior to the issuing of a completion certificate.

### UNDERTAKING:

I, \_\_\_\_\_, the undersigned and duly authorized thereto by Ikomkhulu Solar (Pty) Ltd hereby undertake to give effect to all aspects as contained in the attached EMP and accept all responsibility therefore.

Signed at \_\_\_\_\_ on this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ 2023.

\_\_\_\_\_  
SIGNATURE

Witnesses: \_\_\_\_\_;

# 1. INTRODUCTION

**PROJECT OUTLINE:** The proposed River View Solar Plant project entails the construction of Solar Photovoltaic (PV) power plant to feed into the National Grid (Eskom), at the Remaining Extent of Portion 3 of the Farm Rietputs 15 Kimberly Rd, where the size of the property is approximately 300 Ha, however the footprint for the plant is approximately 182Ha (Section A-107Ha and Section B-75Ha, refer to figure 1 below). The site area falls within ward 4, Magareng Local Municipality, Frances Baard District Municipality in the Northern Cape Province, country South Africa. Refer to Figure 1, below.



Figure 1: River View solar plant

The anticipated construction period for the proposed activities is approximately 10 months, whereas in terms of operation the anticipated energy output is approximately 90.5 million kilowatt hours per year over a 20-year period. The energy is capable of supplying 16 500 households. Once the project is complete, it is anticipated that the energy from the plant will be supplied to another stakeholder (ESKOM), which will then undertake its own distribution to its clients.

**SOLAR PLANT SETUP:** Solar PV panels receive radiation energy from the sun, from which the Direct Current (DC) energy goes through a combiner box, which combines the outputs of the different strings of PV modules to the inverter. Batteries are used for the storage of energy before the conversion takes place using the inverter to Alternating Current (AC). The operations and maintenance centre which forms part of the solar plant acts as the energy control room, to transfer energy to the grid line (ESKOM pylons).

## 2. PURPOSE OF EMP.

The Draft EMP is compiled as per the requirements detailed in Appendix 4 of the EIA regulations 2014 (as amended) promulgated in terms of the NEMA Act No 107 of 1998 (as amended). The Applicant and the appointed Contractor must ensure that the conditions set out in this document are implemented to ensure sound management of the environmental impacts during the lifecycle of the proposed project activities. In terms of the provisions of the EIA Regulations 2014 (as amended); this document must also be read as a living document that must be amended or updated periodically as and when required.

The draft EMP aims to prevent, reduce or mitigate the negative occupational safety hazards and environmental impacts, while enhancing the beneficial aspects of the project.

It further outlines measures to be followed in order to reduce the social impacts of the project on local residents and adjacent properties. This document specifies environmental management activities for the different parties responsible for various mitigation tasks during the project implementation phases.

The purpose of this document is to outline a programme of action to mitigate and manage the impacts of the proposed project activities on the existing and surrounding environment and ensure that such impacts do not compromise the environment and people working on or around the site.

The draft EMP aims to assist the responsible parties to comply with various legislative provisions pertaining to environmental management. It is a requirement that this draft EMP be viewed as an extension to the Contractual Documentation issued to the Applicant's agents – Contractors, subcontractors, Consulting Engineers for implementation and compliance during various phases of the project.

The draft EMP contains mitigation measures specific to the planning and design, construction, post construction and operational phases of the proposed project.

In summary, the purpose of this draft EMP is to:

- Sketch the background for the project.
- Introduce the structure of the draft EMP, particularly in terms of the contractual application of the environmental specifications.
- Highlight the salient features of the draft EMP.
- Detail the roles of the various parties with respect to the implementation and monitoring of the draft EMP.
- Clarify and streamline the implementation of the Draft EMP; and
- Outline procedures for proactive environmental management and environmental control, in the event of pollution or similar incidents.




The draft EMP considers similar project activities, in line with known environmental impacts associated with the planning and design, construction, pre-construction, operational phases of the proposed development; most importantly the other consideration is given to the receiving environment.

**Table 1: Legislation, policies or guidelines are applicable to the proposed project:**

<b>Title of legislation, policy or guideline:</b>	<b>Administering authority:</b>	<b>Promulgation Date:</b>
Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act No. 43 of 1983 as amended in 2001)	National and Provincial	27 April 1983
The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (Act No. 108 of 1996, as amended).	National	18 December 1996
National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998 as amended).	National & Provincial	27 November 1998
National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act 59 of 2008, as amended)	National & Provincial	10 March 2009
National Heritage Resources, 1999 (Act No. 25 of 1999)	National & Provincial	28 April 1999
National Water Act, 1989 (Act No. 36 of 1998, as amended)	National & Provincial	26 August 1998
National Environmental Biodiversity, 2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004)	National & Provincial	7 June 2004
Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act No. 85 of 1993)	National & Provincial	23 June 1993
National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act No. 39 of 2004)	National & Provincial	24 February 2005
Hazardous Substances amendment Act, 1992 (Act No.53 of 1992) (as amended)	National	4 April 1973
Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000 (Act No. 2 of 2000)	National	2 February 2000
Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014 (as amended)	National & Provincial	7 April 2017
National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act: Alien and Invasive Species Regulations R 598 of 2014	National	1 August 2014
Northern Cape Nature Conservation Act (Act No. 9 of 2009)	Provincial	21 January 2010

**Description of compliance with the relevant legislation, policy or guideline:**

Legislation, policy of guideline	Description of compliance
Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act No. 43 of 1983 as amended in 2001)	As specified in the Act, is the list of invasive weed and plant species, including prescribed actions to combat the spread thereof. Applicable to the study area, is category 1b invasive plant species, which requires control by an invasive species management programme.
The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (Act No. 108 of 1996, as amended).	<p>Section 24 of the constitution stipulates that everyone has the right —</p> <p>to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being; and to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that —</p> <p>prevent pollution and ecological degradation; promote conservation; and</p> <p>secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development.</p> <p>The developer has the responsibility to ensure that project activities are undertaken in a manner that doesn't cause environmental degradation, whilst ensuring the principle of sustainable development is adhered to. This should be achieved through implementation and adherence to the EMP at all phases of the proposed activities.</p>
National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998 as amended).	Section 28 of the act applies to the activities to be undertaken by the developer. The developer has a duty to ensure that any activities that cause or may cause environmental degradation are assessed and measures for prevention, avoidance or minimization of such impacts from occurring are in place for all phases of the proposed project activities.

Legislation, policy of guideline	Description of compliance
<p>National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act 59 of 2008, as amended)</p>	<p>The Applicant should adhere to the following waste management practices:</p>  <p><i>Figure 2: Waste management hierarchy</i></p> <p>The waste management mitigation measures as provided within the draft EMP should be adhered to in order to achieve compliance with the requirements of this act.</p>
<p>National Heritage Resources, 1999 (Act No. 25 of 1999)</p>	<p>The Applicant should ensure compliance to Section 38 of this Act, thus ensuring that the Heritage Resources Agency is notified and provides comments on the proposed activities. Based on the conducted Phase 1 Archaeological Impact Assessment by Millenium Heritage Group (Pty) Ltd, no heritage resources have been identified on site.</p>
<p>National Water Act, 1989 (Act No. 36 of 1998, as amended)</p>	<p>In line with this act, the proposed project activities should ensure compliance to section 19 of the NWA, thus putting in place measures that prevent pollution and/degradation on water resources. Additionally, a Water Use License is required for Section 21 (a) – Taking water from a water-resource (in this instance, the abstraction of water from the borehole). In addition to the Section 21 (a), the Wetland Assessment and Delineation by Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty), identified 1 HGM (flat wetland) unit on the western boundary of the site.</p>
<p>National Environmental Biodiversity, 2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004)</p>	<p>This Act requires that any red data and sensitive species within the site development should be conserved during the project implementation phases. Although no Threatened species were encountered during the field survey, recommendation in the draft EMP and ecological assessment should be adhered to on implementation of the proposed project activities.</p>
<p>Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act No. 85 of 1993)</p>	<p>All persons at work are entitled to a healthy and safe working environment while undertaking their respective activities. The</p>

Legislation, policy of guideline	Description of compliance
	developer has a responsibility to ensure that this requirement is adhered to.
National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act No. 39 of 2004)	Project activities should be undertaken in manner which doesn't cause air pollution/change in the ambient air quality (dust), through implementation of mitigation measures as per the EMP on air quality related impacts.
Hazardous Substances amendment Act, 1992 (Act No.53 of 1992) (as amended)	The disposal of hazardous substances should be done in accordance with the waste management hierarchy and in an acceptable manner (Use of leak proof receptacles), separated from general waste. The use and handling of hazardous substances should be done in accordance with the hazardous substances handling and usage procedures to prevent any incidents from occurring.
Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000 (Act No. 2 of 2000)	All documents relating to the project should be accessible to the Public, or authorized personnel where required (i.e. officials exercising their duties).
Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014 (as amended)	The proposed project activities does not require an environmental authorization, however the conditions as stipulated in this EMP with mitigation measures should be complied with and implemented.
National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act: Alien and Invasive Species Regulations R 598 of 2014	Regulations should be complied with for the removal and controlling of alien and invasive species within the proposed project area.
Northern Cape Nature Conservation Act (Act No. 9 of 2009)	The act provides for the conservation of indigenous, red-data listed plant and animals, including the control for sustainable use where applicable. In relation to the proposed project, any red data listed plant and animal species protected in terms of this act, including aquatic habitats may be damaged and/or destroyed.

The draft EMP should be viewed as a stand-alone document, which must be used on site during the life-cycle of the project.

## 2.1.Objectives of the Draft EMP.

The stated objectives of the draft EMP are to ensure that:

- a. All project activities are managed in a manner that reduces or avoids negative social and environmental impacts, while enhancing positive impacts.
- b. Timely precautions are taken to forestall damage and claims arising from damages.
- c. Communication between the developer, project manager, contractors and affected parties is optimised to ensure that all role-players are aware of their specific responsibilities.
- d. The known risk and hazards are actively managed and monitored according to guidelines laid down in this draft EMP.
- e. The completion date of the contract is not delayed due to problems arising from neighbours' concerns with the project.
- f. Accurate records of environmental and/or social incidents, including accidents or objections and complaints are kept, so that the responsible parties are accountable in the event of claims against the developer.
- g. Any improvements made in the mitigation of the draft EMP due to on-going monitoring of its effectiveness are documented, and then made available for future reference.
- h. In order to meet the preceding objectives, the contractor should have a Safety, Health and Environmental Officer (SHE) representative to ensure that specifications of this draft EMP are adhered to, where required, advice should be sort from an independent service provider.

The draft EMP addresses the following three phases of the project:

### 2.1.1. The Planning and Design Phase

The draft EMP provides an ideal opportunity to incorporate pro-active environmental management and occupation health and safety measures to ensure that the project occurs in a safe, environmentally friendly and sustainable manner.

Pro-active safety and environmental measures minimise the risks of major incidents. The possibility of accidental incidents taking place still exists; however, through the incorporation of contingency plans during the planning phase, the necessary corrective action can be taken to further limit detrimental impacts arising from unforeseen/foreseen incidents. An unforeseeable event could be the lack of commitment of key role players to implement mitigation measures as proposed in this draft EMP, thus a practical solution to the problem has to be sought. The emphases is on viewing this draft EMP as a dynamic working tool that needs to be modified as and when necessary.

**2.1.2. The Construction Phase**

The majority of impacts identified during this phase will have immediate effect (e.g. noise, ambient air, water resource pollution and loss of both Flora and Fauna).

The other associated impact could be visual impacts as a result of construction activities. The draft EMP provides precautionary measures to be implemented in line with designs for the project.

The monitoring of the Draft EMP a continual basis during the construction phase, it is possible to identify and mitigate impacts to ensure proper safety and environmental management practices. Possible impacts include:

- Removal and/or destruction of natural vegetation.
- Groundwater pollution by chemical spills and leakages or caused by i.e. cements mixed on impervious surfaces.
- Soil contamination from oil and/or other chemicals from construction vehicles and equipment.
- Visual disturbances due to lack of proper house-keeping and the location of the construction site camp.
- Land disturbances as a result of earthworks and excavation activities.

Table 2, below explains briefly how incidents are identified and handled throughout the different phases of the project.

**Table 2: Incident Identification**

Activate and Communicate	Bring Incident Under Control	Audit	Recovery
			
Contractor	Safety, Health & Environmental Committee	Safety, Health & Environmental Audit Team	Incident Recovery Team



### **2.1.3. Post Construction Phase**

The post construction phase outlines as far as possible measures to rehabilitate the environment affected by the project activities. The aim is to landscape all affected footprints/servitudes. Indigenous vegetation must be used for the landscaping. The areas to be landscaped must be incorporated in the designs of the development.

### **2.1.4. The Operational Phase**

By taking pro-active measures during the planning and design, construction and post construction phases potential environmental impacts emanating from the operational phase may be minimised, and where possible, avoided.

Monitoring of certain critical aspects such as waste management, occupational health and safety, environmental pollution holistically will still be required. The Applicant will play a major role in the implementation of measures of the Draft EMP during the operational phase.

## **2.2. Financial Provision or Budget for Implementation of the Draft EMP**

The developer will be required to provide means and resources to implement all aspects of the draft EMP for the construction and post construction. The manner in which compliance tasks with the draft EMP conditions is financed will depend on available in-house resources. As a result cost calculations should be based on any external consultations which may be required from time to time.

## **2.3. General Environmental Guidelines**

This section provides environmental guidelines applicable to the project phases. The draft EMP provides specifications and regulations that must in all instances be adhered to. It is however the responsibility of all people involved, in committing themselves with the implementation of the draft EMP in all phases of the project. The developer or designated representative, which may be the project manager will be responsible for ensuring compliance of the contractors with the draft EMP and will rely on the Safety, Health and Environmental (SHE) Representative or Officer for compliance monitoring. As a result, the Contractor must monitor his/her employees through the SHE to ensure the adherence of the provisions of the draft EMP.

The contractor shall receive a copy of the draft EMP on which he/she will be given an opportunity to clear any misconceptions and uncertainties. The draft EMP will form part of the contract and will therefore be a legally binding document. In the event of discrepancy with regard to environmental matters or environmental specifications this document shall take precedence.

- **Failure to comply with Environmental Considerations**

All rules and regulations pertaining to the site and municipal bylaws must be adhered to. All outdoor advertising must be below the thresholds stipulated in the EIA Regulations 2014 (as amended). An official (Competent Authority) may order the contractor to suspend part of or all operations if the contractor causes damage to the environment by not adhering to the specifications set below. Any environmental degradation/damage must be mitigated/managed within a timeframe stipulated by any notices as provided by an official (Competent Authority).

- **Environmental Training Programme**

The responsibility to communicate all aspects of the Draft EMP to the site staff (i.e. sites agents and labourers) lies with the contractor. The developer may additionally appoint an external service provider for compliance monitoring and training purposes. The communications and/or training should be done prior and during the construction phase (where required, based on an identified need from compliance monitoring). Basic environmental awareness training should be included with the safety training, toolbox talks and induction programs. A copy of the draft EMP must always be made available on site.

- **Progress/Site Meetings**

Environmental management shall be a standing agenda point during site meetings. The SHE representative or officer designated for environmental management compliance monitoring on the project shall attend the progress and on-site meetings on a regular basis to provide feedback on any outstanding or continuous environmental matters, including any lessons learned with a focus on any negative and positive outputs.

### 3. ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

The various roles and responsibilities for individuals involved in the proposed project are as follows:

- **The Developer :** The Developer is required to adhere to the following:
  - All relevant approvals and permits are attained prior to the start of construction activities on site.
  - Ensure that the contractor is aware of the specific conditions to be adhered to in line with activities to be undertaken during the construction phase.
  - Ensure that any recommendations emanating from the concept design, design, through construction and post construction are implemented.
  - Ensure that a suitably qualified Safety, Health and Environmental representative forms part of the contractor's staff.
- **The Engineer :** The engineer appointed for the proposed development has the following responsibilities:
  - Play a role in the decision-making process with the contractor and SHE representative or officer to address any environmental problems that may occur during the construction phase.
  - Ensure that the requirements as set out in this draft EMP and any other conditions stipulated by the relevant Authorities are implemented.
  - Monitor compliance with consultation with the SHE representative on the contractor's obligations on construction activities.
  - Consult the Contractors SHE representative on the review of the construction method statements.
  - Exercise and take actions on compliance of specifications by the SHE representative on site.
  - Play a role on internal reviews, SHE representative draft EMP review.
- **The Contractor:** In line with the implementation of this draft EMP, the contractor refers to the organisation or individual that has been appointed to carry out the work as required by the developer. The contractor is required to adhere to the following in terms of this draft EMP:
  - Ensure that the affected landowners are informed about your (the contractors) presence on their property.
  - Immediately report any damage to property or the environment to the project manager and the landowner. The damage must be repaired immediately to the owner's written satisfaction.
  - No wandering around adjacent properties. Access is limited to the site only.
  - The public and all property are to be treated with respect at all times.
  - Ensure that all stipulations within the draft EMP are communicated to and adhered to by the employees.
  - Monitor the draft EMP throughout the project by means of site visits, pictorial evidence and meetings to be documented as part of the site meeting minutes and compliance reports.

- Ensure that all clean up and rehabilitation or any remedial actions that are required are completed prior to the issuing of a completion certificate.
- **Safety, Health and Environmental Representative/Officer:** The SHE representative/officer will oversee all the environmental aspects relating to the project during the construction and post construction phase. The SHE Representative/Officer will form part of the contractor's employees. She/he must attend monthly project meetings, compile periodic Environmental Compliance Reports (ECRs) to evaluate compliance with the draft EMP and be responsible for providing feedback on potential environmental issues associated with the project. The ECR must contain information on the implementation and compliance of the draft EMP.
  - Liaison with relevant authorities, i.e. the South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA) and the local authority (Magareng Local Municipality) and the competent authority (DENC), where required.
  - Liaison with contractor regarding environmental compliance and
  - Undertaking routine monitoring and appointing a competent person/institution to be responsible for specialist monitoring, whenever necessary.
  - Compile periodic health and safety compliance reports.

The SHE representative will be responsible for monitoring compliance, rather than enforcing it. Enforcement such as suspension of activities can however be implemented by the Project Manager, an external environmental and/or safety officer or an Official (Competent Authority).

## 4. KEY ENVIRONMENTAL ISSUES

The applicable environmental themes to the proposed project are outlined below:

- **Key issue 1: Biophysical impacts:** During the project phase cycle, there are a number of potential impacts on the biophysical environment. Such impacts must be mitigated by following the guidelines set forth in this draft EMP. The Safety, Health and Environmental Representative/Officer is responsible for monitoring, however may enforce the mitigation measures, where there is non-compliance with suggested corrective actions and must compile regular compliance reports concerning compliance of contractor to the draft EMP. Key issues to be considered are the following:
  - Vegetation clearing and topsoil management
  - Poor stockpiling of soil.
  - Soil erosion caused by run-off.
  - Loss of floral and faunal species of conservation concern.
  - Destruction of water resources (wetlands)
- **Key issue 2: The social environment:** It must be emphasised that whilst there are a number of impacts relating to the Occupational Health and Safety, fire risk and groundwater/surface water contamination, the project will be of major significance on the lives and means of livelihood of the surrounding community. Therefore, a major focus of the draft EMP is on reducing/mitigating the negative social impacts, while enhancing the expected positive benefits and spin-offs of the project. The groups of people identified as affected parties: employees of the construction company involved in the project, the road users and the community in close proximity to the site.

The following social issues can be linked to safety hazards.

- Negative Impacts
  - Change in air quality due to increased dust during construction activities. This may result in respiratory disorders for both employees and nearby residents.
  - Movement of vehicles due to construction activities.
  - Temporary visual impacts due to construction activities.
  - Increased noise as a result of construction activities.
- Positive Impacts
  - Temporary employment opportunities during construction.
  - Improved aesthetics (post-construction rehabilitation).
  - Cumulative economic opportunities for both the local community and the municipal area.

- **Key issue 3: Safety Hazards and Risks:** The key issues and impacts that must be managed pertain to safety hazards and risks that could arise due to human error or negligence leading to a major or minor incident. If the incident is a major one, with a severe impact, it is considered as a Disaster. Key negative impacts that this draft EMP addresses are:
- Uncontrolled fire risks.
  - Operation of dangerous construction equipment by unqualified personnel.
  - Safety and health risks due to potential hazards on site such as vehicles, equipment/machinery.
  - Incidents due to less visual for road users (dust).
  - Working on heights, confined spaces by medically unfit personnel.

## 5. ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME

The intention of this section of the draft EMP is that it forms a stand-alone document, which can be used as an integrated environmental, health and safety management tool during the various phases of the project.

The following table forms the core of this draft EMP for the planning and design, construction and post construction of the project. Table 3, below must be used as a checklist on site during each phase of the development. Compliance with this draft EMP must be audited monthly during the construction phase and once immediately following the completion of construction.



Table 3: Impact mitigation measures Planning, Design and Pre-Construction

Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Planning, Design and Pre-Construction</b>				
1	<b>General compliance reporting</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The draft EMP is binding on the Developer, professional team, Contractors and Subcontractors working within the construction site.</li> <li>➤ The special conditions of the contract must include provision for the strict adherence to and compliance with this draft EMP as well as the general and specific conditions from both the Competent and Local Authority.</li> <li>➤ The site layout plan (SDP), should be compliant with all safety, health, environmental (conditional environment) requirements.</li> </ul>	Applicant	Once-off
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The following compliance documents and/or files should be in place               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Environmental Compliance file.</li> <li>○ Occupational Health and Safety file.</li> <li>○ Construction work permits.</li> </ul> </li> <li>➤ All applicable permits prior to construction should be in place :               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Environmental Authorisation.</li> <li>○ Construction work permit.</li> <li>○ Water Use Licence.</li> <li>○ Approved Site Development plan.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Developer/Project Manager	Once off

Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Planning, Design and Pre-Construction</b>				
2	Planning	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The planning phase should incorporate all legislative requirements including conditions from Competent Authority (DENC), the Local Authority (by-law requirements), including other service providers i.e. Eskom, where applicable.</li> <li>➤ Resources should be made available to ensure the planning of the proposed project process meets the requirements of all applicable legislative frameworks.</li> </ul>	Developer/Project Manager	Once-Off
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The location of the site offices and construction camp should be agreed on by the contractor and Safety, Health and Environmental Representative/Officer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ The activity area should be delineated and cordoned off, all no-go areas, within and outside of the boundary should be indicated and the personnel on site should be made aware of such areas. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Conduct a walk-through survey on the working servitude to establish any indigenous vegetation (species) to be protected or relocated.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Contractor	Once-Off

Table 4: Impact mitigation measures Construction Phase

Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Construction Phase</b>				
1	<b>Compliance</b>	➤ A qualified/trained, Safety, Health and Environmental Representative or Officer should be available on site, to monitor compliance with the specifications of this draft EMP.	Contractor	Bi-weekly
		➤ The developer may appoint an external Environmental Control Officer and Occupation, Health and Safety Officer. In other instances this can be a Safety, Health and Environmental Officer to monitor both environmental and safety compliance aspects.	Applicant	Monthly
2	<b>Employment</b>	➤ The contractor shall ensure that local labour is used as far as possible in order to improve the local economy of the area.	Contractor	Once off/or as and when required.
3	<b>Site Establishment</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The construction camp must be clearly demarcated and fenced off. The material that can be used can be is wired fence with shade cloth. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Applicable Safety, Environmental and Health warning signs should be displayed at the construction camp.</li> </ul> </li> <li>➤ Appropriate signage must be placed within the study area for the public to be aware of the construction activities. The sign should include details of the main contractor, engineer and other applicable responsible professional team, with contact details.</li> </ul>	Contractor	Once-Off

Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Construction Phase</b>				
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The site camp should not be located anywhere near identified sensitive areas, the position should be agreed on by the Safety, Health and Environmental Representative, the contractor and Engineer.</li> <li>➤ The construction camp should have waste storage areas. Waste separation should be implemented on site.</li> <li>➤ Sufficient space to accommodate all other equipment's required or to be used for the construction activities should be available.</li> </ul>		
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ No maintenance of construction vehicles should take place anywhere near identified sensitive areas. The parking area for construction vehicles should be on impermeable surface area, which should be inspected regularly for spillages. The area should have necessary storm water control, where oil and fuel spillages are highly likely to occur.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Drip trays can be used for standing vehicles with oil or hydrocarbon leaks.</li> </ul> </li> <li>➤ A suitable area should be allocated where personnel should take their breaks, the construction site camp be used.</li> <li>➤ Access control measures should be implemented and adhered to on site.</li> <li>➤ The contractor should provide portable toilets and implement a scheduled maintenance plan (weekly).               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Disposing of waste from the portable toilets on the environment is</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Contractor	On-Going

Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Construction Phase</b>				
		prohibited.		
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Vehicular speeds (recommended 30Km/h) should be regulated on detour routes, signage should be placed along routes.</li> </ul>	Contractor	Once-Off
<b>4</b>	<b>Waste Management</b>	<p><b>General Waste</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ An agreement should be reached with the Magareng Local Municipality on the general waste collection schedule. Waste skips can be used collection purposes (rubble), alternatively, where applicable wheelie bins can be used for the normal domestic waste.</li> <li>➤ Where collection by the municipality is not applicable, a licenced waste collector can be hired for waste collection services.</li> <li>➤ In order to ensure that littering is avoided or minimised on site sufficient general waste containers should be made available.</li> </ul>	Contractor	Once- Off
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ No general waste should be mixed with hazardous waste.</li> <li>➤ Waste separation should be implemented on site, thus waste containers for different waste streams should be provided.</li> <li>➤ A designated area for disposal of general waste and sorting must be provided on site.</li> </ul>		

Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Construction Phase</b>				
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ All the generated general waste should be removed on a daily basis within the construction areas and disposed off at designated areas.</li> <li>➤ On a weekly basis, the waste discarded on site at designated areas should be collected for disposal at a licensed waste management facility (Windsorton Landfill site).</li> <li>➤ No waste should be burnt on site.</li> </ul>	Contractor	On-going



Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Construction Phase</b>				
		<p><b>Hazardous Waste</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ All hazardous waste should be separated from general waste and disposed of at a licensed disposal facility or collected by a licensed service provider.</li> <li>➤ A designated area for hazardous waste with an impermeable surface should be provided. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Containers for hazardous waste should be clearly labelled and be leak proof.</li> </ul> </li> <li>➤ Any hydrocarbon spillages that occur should be contained and treated immediately, or disposed of at designated areas using appropriate disposal container for further disposal at the licensed facility.</li> <li>➤ A spill kit should be on site for immediate clean-up and containment of accidental spills.</li> </ul>	Contractor	Once-Off

Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Construction Phase</b>				
5	<b>Impact on Geology, Erosion and Soil Sedimentation.</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Erosion control measures must be implemented in areas sensitive to erosion such as edges of slopes and/or exposed soil. The measures include but are not limited to               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- the use of sand bags, hessian sheets, silt fences, retention or replacement of vegetation and geotextiles such as soil cells which are used in the protection of slopes.</li> <li>○ Exposed soils should be rehabilitated in order to limit the risk of erosion.</li> </ul> </li> <li>➤ A sustainable urban drainage system must be implemented; this includes the use of open and/or grass-lined channels/swales.</li> <li>➤ Soil stockpiles should be protected from storm water run-off.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Stockpiling of materials should not occur adjacent to watercourses.</li> </ul> </li> <li>➤ Surface water or storm water concentration or flow into cut or fill slopes without erosion protection measures is prohibited.</li> <li>➤ Construction activities should be limited to dry season.</li> <li>➤ Mining of soil is prohibited.</li> <li>➤ Vegetation should be removed in a phased manner (working areas), to avoid exposed loose soil.</li> <li>➤ Rehabilitation of exposed areas should be done concurrently with construction activities to avoid run off.</li> </ul>	Contractor	Once-Off

Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Construction Phase</b>				
6	<b>Water Resources</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ No water should be abstracted from any water resource for the purpose of construction activities without a water use license.</li> <li>➤ Areas for maintenance and washing of construction equipment should be designated not anywhere near watercourses.</li> <li>➤ Stockpiling of any material should be done at designated areas as agreed by the contractor and SHE representative away from watercourses.</li> <li>➤ Soil erosion control measures should be in place, to avoid silt built up on water ways.</li> <li>➤ The release of any substance i.e. cements, bitumen, waste into watercourse is prohibited.</li> <li>➤ Construction camp should not be located within 50m of any watercourse. Mixing of cement must take place on impervious surfaces.</li> <li>➤ Regular construction vehicle's checks prior to being used or during their standing period should be done in order to limit or avoid soil contamination.</li> <li>➤ Sensitive riparian areas and delineated wetlands should be marked as no-go areas. A 50 m buffer area should be maintained.</li> <li>➤ Cut-off trenches can be constructed to prevent any harmful substances from entering any watercourses. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Litter traps should be installed at all storm water outlets. Silt traps or silt barriers should be placed adjacent to the wetland to prohibit discharge of silt into watercourses or delineated wetlands.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Contractor	On going

Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Construction Phase</b>				
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Hydrocarbon spillages should be avoided, where such occurs immediate clean up should be done and disposal should be at appropriate allocated disposal areas, using appropriate disposal containments for further disposal at appropriated licensed disposal facility. Maintenance can be done on impervious surfaces where required, with proper drainage for containment of accidental spills.</li> <li>➤ Chemical portable toilets provided by contractors must be maintained for the duration of the construction phase. No portable toilet should be located within any watercourse; these should be atleast 50m away from any watercourse.</li> <li>➤ Environmental awareness and education programmes must form part of tool box talks for good pollution prevention practices, these programmes should include information on material handling and spill prevention.</li> <li>➤ An alien invasive management plan should be in place and implemented.</li> <li>➤ No herbicides should be used within or near any water-resource.</li> </ul>	Contractor	On going
7	<b>Air Quality Dust and Odour</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Chemical toilets should be cleaned and serviced weekly depending on usage or as required.</li> <li>➤ Fires should not be allowed on site to avoid emissions into the surrounding ambient air.</li> <li>➤ Any rubble generated during construction shouldn't be left on site for more than two weeks.</li> <li>➤ Vehicles that will be transporting building materials such as sand or rubble need to be covered or wet down to avoid the material being blown by air during windy conditions.</li> <li>➤ The topsoil removal must be done in a phased manner so that large areas of</li> </ul>	Contractor	On-going

Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Construction Phase</b>				
		<p>unconsolidated soils are avoided.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ A register must be made available for recording any dust complaints.</li> <li>➤ Any remedial action taken in relation to a complaint must be communicated to the complainant.</li> <li>➤ Vehicle speed limits on diversion routes should be adhered to limit (30 Km/h).</li> </ul>		
8	<b>Flora and Fauna</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Movement of vehicles and construction machinery should be restricted to road surfaced areas and the working servitude.</li> <li>➤ The disposal of vegetation on neighbouring properties is prohibited.</li> <li>➤ Good housekeeping principles should be adhered to, thus all waste generated during the construction should be disposed off at designated areas on site, then further disposed off at appropriate licensed disposal facility (Windsorton landfill site) or collected by the municipal waste collection services as agreed on.</li> <li>➤ No wild animals may under any circumstance be handled, removed or be interfered with by construction workers – only by suitably trained staff.</li> <li>➤ Hunting or collection of fauna is prohibited.</li> <li>➤ Any snares or traps found on or adjacent to the site must be removed and disposed of.</li> <li>➤ Any faunal species located on the site during the construction phase, which cannot relocate themselves (e.g. burrowing or hibernating animals) or may pose a risk to workers (e.g. snakes), must be moved to a more suitable location. This should be undertaken by a suitable qualified staff member.</li> <li>➤ As part of rehabilitation of the non-paved road reserve, all stockpiled materials must be entirely removed, and the area landscaped to merge into the surroundings.</li> </ul>	Contractor	On-going.

Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Construction Phase</b>				
9	<b>Alien Vegetation</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ An alien vegetation management plan should be in place and adhered to.</li> <li>➤ No introduction of new invasive plant species should be allowed.</li> </ul>	Contractor	On-going.
10	<b>Noise Management</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ All operations during the construction phase must be compliant with the requirements of the Occupational Health and Safety Act (Act No 85 of 1993).</li> <li>➤ Activities which involve excessive noise, levels above 85dBA must be prohibited at certain times during construction.</li> <li>➤ On site personnel working on areas where the threshold exceeds the ambient 8-hour noise levels (75dBA) should be provided with PPE to assist in reducing noise level impacts.</li> <li>➤ Construction activities must be limited to working hours (from 7am to 5p.m) during the week, not including public holidays.</li> </ul>	Contractor SHE representative/Officer is responsible for the monitoring.	On-going
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Signage informing the public of construction activities should be erected on site</li> </ul>	Contractor	Once-off
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Shall it happen that construction will take place after working hours the neighbours/I&amp;APs needs to be notified.</li> <li>➤ When required, the Community Liaison Officer (CLO) must inform the community of any planned noise disturbances outside of normal working hours.</li> </ul>		



Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Construction Phase</b>				
11	<b>Visual Aesthetics</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The site must be screened off by use of wired fence with shade cloth.</li> <li>➤ Construction camps and stockyards should be located out of the visual field of highly sensitive visual receptors.</li> <li>➤ The construction sites and camps should be kept neat, clean and organised in order to portray a general tidy appearance.</li> <li>➤ Rubble and other building litter should be removed off site as soon as possible or placed in a container in order to keep the construction site free from additional unsightly elements.</li> <li>➤ Use lighting for security and other activities only where required, with the preferred options of Yellow Sodium lights.</li> </ul>	Contractor	On-going

Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Construction Phase</b>				
12	<b>Safety and Security</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The contractor must provide the health and safety plan for approval by the Project manager or the appointed external Occupational, Health and Safety Officer.</li> <li>➤ Safety signs must be erected on site with required PPE.</li> <li>➤ Trenches which have been excavated must be cordoned off to prevent injury to people who are not aware of their existence.</li> <li>➤ Emergency contact information should be provided and displayed at the contractor's office and site entrance</li> <li>➤ The use of PPE should be enforced on site at all times, including visitors.</li> <li>➤ The construction site must be adequately fenced off or access must be restricted to prevent unauthorised persons from entering the construction site.</li> </ul>	Contractor	On-Going
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ An HIV/AIDS policy should be placed and implemented by the contractor.</li> <li>➤ The appropriate number of staff members must be adequately trained in first-aid in accordance with the Health and Safety Regulations.</li> <li>➤ Appropriate medical equipment must be placed on onsite and made accessible at all times.</li> <li>➤ 24 Hour security must be provided at the construction site.</li> <li>➤ Suitable barricades must be erected to secure the site and to avoid unrestricted access to the site during construction activities.</li> </ul>		

Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Construction Phase</b>				
		➤ Appropriate signage board/s must be placed on site informing the public on construction activities taking place on site		
		➤ Compliance reports must be compiled regularly by the Safety, Health and Environmental representative or Officer, to ensure full compliance with the EMP.	SHE ECO	Bi-Weekly Monthly
13	<b>Heritage Resources</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Any heritage resources encountered during the construction phase should be reported to PHRAG.</li> <li>➤ On account of any Heritage Resources discovered activities should stop for further indication in terms of commencement from PHRAG after investigations have been commissioned and concluded with recommendations.</li> </ul>	Contractor	On-Going

Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Construction Phase</b>				
14	<b>Social Impacts</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Appropriate signage board/s must be placed on site informing the public on construction activities taking place on site</li> <li>➤ A suitable candidate to assist with the employment of local labour and resolving any community disputes should be appointed.</li> <li>➤ Construction activities must be limited to working hours (from 7am to 5p.m) during the week, not including public holidays.</li> <li>➤ An HIV/AIDS policy should be placed at the construction site office and implemented by the contractor.</li> </ul>	Contractor	Once off
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ The complaints and environmental incident register should be on site.</li> </ul>	ECO (compliance monitoring compliance)	On-going

Table 5: Impact mitigation measures Post Construction Phase

Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Post-Construction Phase</b>				
1	<b>General Requirements</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Rehabilitate and revegetate all areas that will not be sealed as soon as practically possible.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ It is recommended that a dense low grass layer be established, and in such a manner that it can be mowed regularly to discourage the establishment of alien invasive species, as well as use of these areas by fauna – the latter in an effort to prevent loss of fauna due to collisions with road users.</li> </ul> </li> <li>➤ Landscaping should make use of the indigenous vegetation to the study area.</li> <li>➤ A sustainable urban drainage system must be implemented; this includes the use of open, grass-lined channels/swales.</li> </ul>	Contractor	On-going

Table 6: Impact mitigation measures Operational Phase

Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Operational Phase</b>				
1	<b>Increased of alien invasive species.</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Access roads and paved areas should be kept free of alien vegetation through routine maintenance.</li> <li>➤ Herbicides should be carefully applied (in accordance with the Alien Invasive Programme) Spraying of herbicides within or near to any watercourses is strictly forbidden.</li> </ul>	Applicant	On-going
2	<b>Increased sediment loads on watercourses (deterioration of watercourses/wetlan ds).  Deterioration of aquatic ecosystems.</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Culverts and storm water drains should be monitored for blockages and other possible obstacles.</li> <li>➤ Maintenance plant during the operational phase should be in place.</li> </ul>	Applicant	On-going
3	<b>Loss of Fauna</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Vehicle speeds limits should be maintained on access roads.</li> <li>➤ Induction on environmental awareness should be undertaken for employees.</li> <li>➤ Illegal trapping, hunting and collection of faunal species is prohibited on site.</li> <li>➤ Use lighting for security and other activities only where required, with the preferred options of Yellow Sodium lights.</li> </ul>	Applicant	On-going



Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Operational Phase</b>				
4	Loss of Flora	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Illegal harvesting of plant species on site is prohibited.</li> <li>➤ Landscaping of disturbed areas should make use of indigenous vegetation.</li> <li>➤ Maintenance Plan should be in place and implemented.</li> </ul>	Applicant	On-going
5	Pollution on water resources.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Clean up of large-scale hydrocarbons spillages due to incidents should be executed rapidly.</li> <li>➤ On-going water quality monitoring measures should be implemented.</li> <li>➤ Appropriate measures to dissipate flow velocity below structure must be considered and designed during pre-construction phase.</li> </ul>	Applicant	On-going
6	Employment opportunities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Employment opportunities for the operational part of the plant should be provided to local residents.</li> </ul>	Applicant	Once-Off
7	Increased electricity supply to the grid.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Regular service maintenance for the added infrastructure to sustain the life of the solar plant.</li> </ul>	Applicant	On-going
8	Increased Water Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Monitor water infrastructure (i.e. taps, pipes, pump station) for leaks and malfunctions.</li> <li>➤ Procedure for reporting infrastructure faults should be in place.</li> <li>➤ Landscape only with indigenous vegetation.</li> <li>➤ Implementation of Grey water systems.</li> </ul>	Applicant	On-going
9	Safety, incidents and/or Fire outbreaks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Fire fighting equipment should be in place: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Flame arresters</li> <li>○ Water sprinklers</li> <li>○ Gas/ Fire detection equipment</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Applicant	On-going

Item	Aspect Impact/Issues	Mitigation Measures/Actions	Responsible party	Frequency of Action
<b>Operational Phase</b>				
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Nitrogen and carbon dioxide blanketing equipment</li> <li>○ Foam spraying</li> <li>➤ Staff and management must undergo basic fire fighting training on an annual basis. Regular fire drills must be undertaken.</li> <li>➤ Maintenance on fire fighting equipment should be carried out as required.</li> <li>➤ Building control: safety and warning signs should be in place, this includes but not limited to emergency exit signs and hazard tapes where applicable.</li> </ul>		

## 5. CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

The draft Environmental Management Programme (EMP) must be used as an on-site reference document during all phases of the project, and compliance monitoring should be done to avoid adverse environmental impacts associated with the project activities. Parties involved in the transgression of this draft EMP must be held liable for any rehabilitation that may be required. Parties found liable for environmental degradation through irresponsible behaviour, negligence and/ or non-compliance with the draft EMP must receive penalties such as an order to cease activities and/or fines where applicable. During the operational phase, warning (yellow), red-card systems can be another form of a penalty system for transgression of any integrated management system to be adopted for the proposed development. The draft EMP has been compiled using the knowledge of known environmental impacts associated with the construction and operational aspects of a solar plant, with consideration of the current state of the receiving environment. Additionally, well-recognised integrated environmental management principles and relevant occupational health and safety principles were applied in developing the draft EMP.

**Note:** The basis of this document is on the strengths of the information available at the time of assessment. It must therefore be a living document that is updated and revised based on challenges which may arise on site during monitoring. If there are any queries please address them to:

**Environmental Assessment Practitioner:** Mr Simon Vusmuzi Hlatshwayo

**Consulting Firm:** Tholoana Environmental Consulting CC

**Email:** [vusi@tholoanaconsulting.co.za](mailto:vusi@tholoanaconsulting.co.za)

PO Box 1549, HONEYDEW

2040

## Appendix I: Specialist's declaration of interest

# Wetland and Ecological Assessment Declaration



the denc

Department:  
Environment & Nature Conservation  
NORTHERN CAPE PROVINCE  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Private Bag X6102, Kimberley, 8300, Metlife Towers, T-Floor, Tel: 053 807 7300, Fax: 053 807 7328

## DETAILS OF SPECIALIST AND DECLARATION OF INTEREST

Application for authorization in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998), as amended and the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014 as amended.

	(For official use only)
File Reference Number:	
NEAS Reference Number:	
Date Received:	

### 1. Project title:

Proposed Moa Solar Plant

### 2. Details of the specialist:

<b>Project Specialist:</b>	Maanakana Projects and Consulting (Pty) Ltd		
<b>Trading name (if any):</b>			
<b>Business reg. no./ID. no.:</b>	2012/1132123107		
<b>Contact person:</b>	Milambo Freddy Tshiala		
<b>Physical address:</b>	1062 Embankment Road 307 Lougardia Building, Centurion-Highveld, 0157		
<b>Postal address:</b>	PO Box 99615, Garsfontein 0060, Pretoria East		
<b>Postal code:</b>	0060	<b>Cell:</b>	0836691702
<b>Telephone:</b>	0813120002	<b>Fax:</b>	0864653066
<b>E-mail:</b>	<a href="mailto:mftshiala@maanakana.co.za">mftshiala@maanakana.co.za</a>		
<b>Qualifications:</b>	PhD, MSc, (BSc Honours)		
<b>Professional affiliation (s) (if any)</b>	SACNASP (Pr.Nat.Sci. 400021/18)		

### 3. Details of the consultant

<b>Project consultant/firm:</b>	Tholoana Environmental Consulting CC		
<b>Business reg. no./ID. no.:</b>	2006/186236/23		
<b>Contact person:</b>	Vusmuzi Hlatshwayo		
<b>Postal address:</b>	PO Box 1549, Honeydew		
<b>Postal code:</b>	2040	<b>Cell:</b>	0786390199
<b>Telephone:</b>	0117045071	<b>Fax:</b>	N/A
<b>E-mail:</b>	<a href="mailto:vusi@tholoanaconsulting.co.za">vusi@tholoanaconsulting.co.za</a>		



4. Declaration by the specialist appointed in terms of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014 as amended.

I, Milambo Freddy Tshiala, declare that --

- I act as the independent specialist in this application
- I will perform the work relating to the application in an objective manner, even if this results in views and findings that are not favourable to the applicant
- I declare that there are no circumstances that may compromise my objectivity in performing such work;
- I have expertise in conducting the specialist report relevant to this application, including knowledge of the Act, regulations and any guidelines that have relevance to the proposed activity;
- I will comply with the Act, regulations and all other applicable legislation;
- I have no, and will not engage in, conflicting interests in the undertaking of the activity;
- I undertake to disclose to the applicant and the competent authority all material information in my possession that reasonably has or may have the potential of influencing - any decision to be taken with respect to the application by the competent authority; and - the objectivity of any report, plan or document to be prepared by myself for submission to the competent authority;
- all the particulars furnished by me in this form are true and correct; and
- I realise that a false declaration is an offence in terms of Regulation 48 and is punishable in terms of section 24F of the Act.

Signature of the specialist: *Milambo Freddy Tshiala*

Name of company (if applicable): MAANAKANA PROJECTS AND CONSULTING

Date: 27-01-2023

Signature of the Commissioner of Oaths: *[Signature]*

Date: 2023-01-27

Designation: *[Signature]*

Official stamp (below):



# Heritage Impact Assessment



the denc

Department:  
Environment & Nature Conservation  
NORTHERN CAPE PROVINCE  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Private Bag X6102, Kimberley, 8300, Metlife Towers, T-Floor, Tel: 053 807 7300, Fax: 053 807 7328

## DETAILS OF SPECIALIST AND DECLARATION OF INTEREST

Application for authorization in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998), as amended and the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014 as amended.

File Reference Number:	(For official use only)
NEAS Reference Number:	
Date Received:	

### 1. Project title:

Proposed River View Solar Plant

### 2. Details of the specialist:

<b>Project Specialist:</b>	Heritage and Archaeological Specialist		
<b>Trading name (if any):</b>	Millenium Heritage Group (Pty) Ltd		
<b>Business reg. no./ID. no.:</b>	2015/134094/07		
<b>Contact person:</b>	Dr. Eric N. Mathoho		
<b>Physical address:</b>	30 Breda street, No 7 Silver sands Building		
<b>Postal address:</b>	PO Box 404 Paledi Mall, Sovenga Polokwane		
<b>Postal code:</b>	0892	<b>Cell:</b>	071 870 6947
<b>Telephone:</b>	071 870 6947	<b>Fax:</b>	N/A
<b>E-mail:</b>	<a href="mailto:mathohoe@gmail.com">mathohoe@gmail.com</a>		
<b>Qualifications:</b>	PhD in Archaeology		
<b>Professional affiliation (s) (if any)</b>	ASAPA#312		

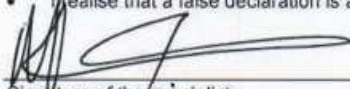
### 3. Details of the consultant

<b>Project consultant/firm:</b>	Tholoana Environmental Consulting CC		
<b>Business reg. no./ID. no.:</b>	2006/186236/23		
<b>Contact person:</b>	Vusmuzi Hlatshwayo		
<b>Postal address:</b>	PO Box 1549, Honeydew		
<b>Postal code:</b>	2040	<b>Cell:</b>	0786390199
<b>Telephone:</b>	0117045071	<b>Fax:</b>	N/A
<b>E-mail:</b>	<a href="mailto:vusi@tholoanaconsulting.co.za">vusi@tholoanaconsulting.co.za</a>		

4. Declaration by the specialist appointed in terms of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014 as amended.

I, Dr. Eric Ndivhuho Mathoho, declare that --

- I act as the independent specialist in this application
- I will perform the work relating to the application in an objective manner, even if this results in views and findings that are not favourable to the applicant
- I declare that there are no circumstances that may compromise my objectivity in performing such work;
- I have expertise in conducting the specialist report relevant to this application, including knowledge of the Act, regulations and any guidelines that have relevance to the proposed activity;
- I will comply with the Act, regulations and all other applicable legislation;
- I have no, and will not engage in, conflicting interests in the undertaking of the activity;
- I undertake to disclose to the applicant and the competent authority all material information in my possession that reasonably has or may have the potential of influencing - any decision to be taken with respect to the application by the competent authority; and - the objectivity of any report, plan or document to be prepared by myself for submission to the competent authority;
- all the particulars furnished by me in this form are true and correct; and
- I realise that a false declaration is an offence in terms of Regulation 46 and is punishable in terms of section 24F of the Act.



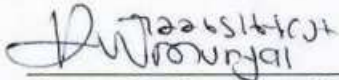
Signature of the specialist:

Millenium Heritage Group (PTY) LTD

Name of company (if applicable):

23 January 2023

Date:



Signature of the Commissioner of Oaths:

2023.01.24

Date:

Commissioner of Oaths

Designation:

Official stamp (below):



## Appendix J: Additional Information